COPYRIGHT 1897.

"THE ROCK OF CHICKAMAUGA"

# THE HISTORY OF OUR COUNTRY

## FROM THE DISCOVERY OF . . . . AMERICA TO THE PRESENT TIME

INCLUDING A COMPREHENSIVE HISTORICAL INTRODUCTION, COPIOUS ANNOTATIONS, A LIST OF AUTHORITIES AND REFERENCES, ETC.

PROFUSELY AND BEAUTIFULLY ILLUSTRATED, MAPS, CHARTS, PORTRAITS, FAMOUS HISTORIC SCENES AND EVENTS, AND A SERIES OF BEAUTIFUL POLYCHROMATIC PLATES

By EDWARD S. ELLIS, A. M.

AUTHOR OF "THE STANDARD HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES," "YOUNG PEOPLE'S HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES," "THE ECLECTIC PRIMARY HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES," ETC.

ILLUSTRATORS

C. M. Relyea, H. A. Ogden, J. Steeple Davis, Warren Sheppard, W. H. Lippincott, A. B. Doggett, De Cost Smith, W. P. Snyder, Gilbert Gaul, W. C. Fitler, C. Kendrick, Joseph Gleeson, and others.

INDIANAPOLIS, IND.

J. H. WOOLLING & COMPANY

## The Édition de Luxe

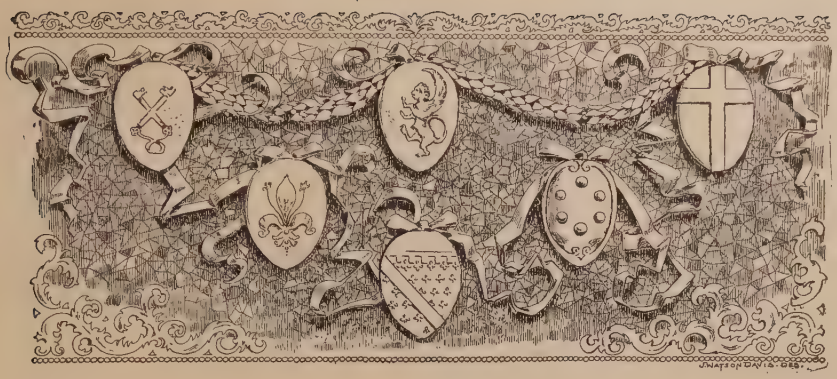
is limited to five hundred copies, of which this is

Copy No. _____

COPYRIGHT, 1895, 1896, 1897, 1898, 1899, 1900,
BY HENRY W. KNIGHT.

COPYRIGHT, 1899, BY FRANK E. WRIGHT.
COPYRIGHT, 1900, BY MALLORY & HOOD.
COPYRIGHT, 1904, BY MALLORY & CO.
COPYRIGHT, 1905, BY THE JONES BROS. PUB. CO.

SPECIAL NOTICE.—The illustrations in this volume are protected by copyright, and they must not be reproduced or copied without written permission from the publishers. Disregard of this warning will subject the offender to the penalty provided by law.



# TABLE OF CONTENTS, VOLUME II.


| | | | PAGE |
|---|---|---|---|
| Chapter | XXI. | The Colonial History of Georgia, 1733–1758 | 280 |
| Chapter | XXII. | French Colonization in America, 1604–1759 | 297 |
| Chapter | XXIII. | Young Washington's Journey Through the Wilderness | 313 |
| Chapter | XXIV. | Campaign of 1755 (DuQuesne, Louisburgh and Lake George) | 321 |
| Chapter | XXV. | Campaigns of 1756–1757 (Oswego and Fort William Henry) | 340 |
| Chapter | XXVI. | Campaigns of 1758–1760 (Crown Point, Ticonderoga and Quebec) | 350 |
| Chapter | XXVII. | Pontiac's War, 1763–1764 | 372 |
| Chapter | XXVIII. | The Colonies and Resisted Taxation in 177c. | 393 |
| Chapter | XXIX. | The Mutterings of War | 404 |
| Chapter | XXX. | Events of 1775—Lexington and Concord | 420 |
| Chapter | XXXI. | Events of 1775 (Concluded)—Bunker Hill, etc. | 434 |
| Chapter | XXXII. | Events of 1776—Declaration of Independence | 458 |
| Chapter | XXXIII. | Events of 1777—Burgoyne's Campaign | 479 |
| Chapter | XXXIV. | Events of 1778—Wyoming and Cherry Valley | 504 |
| Chapter | XXXV. | Events of 1779—On Land and Sea | 522 |
| Chapter | XXXVI. | Events of 1780—Campaign of the South | 548 |
| Chapter | XXXVII. | Events of 1781 and Close of the War | 557 |

# LIST OF FULL PAGE ILLUSTRATIONS, VOLUME II.

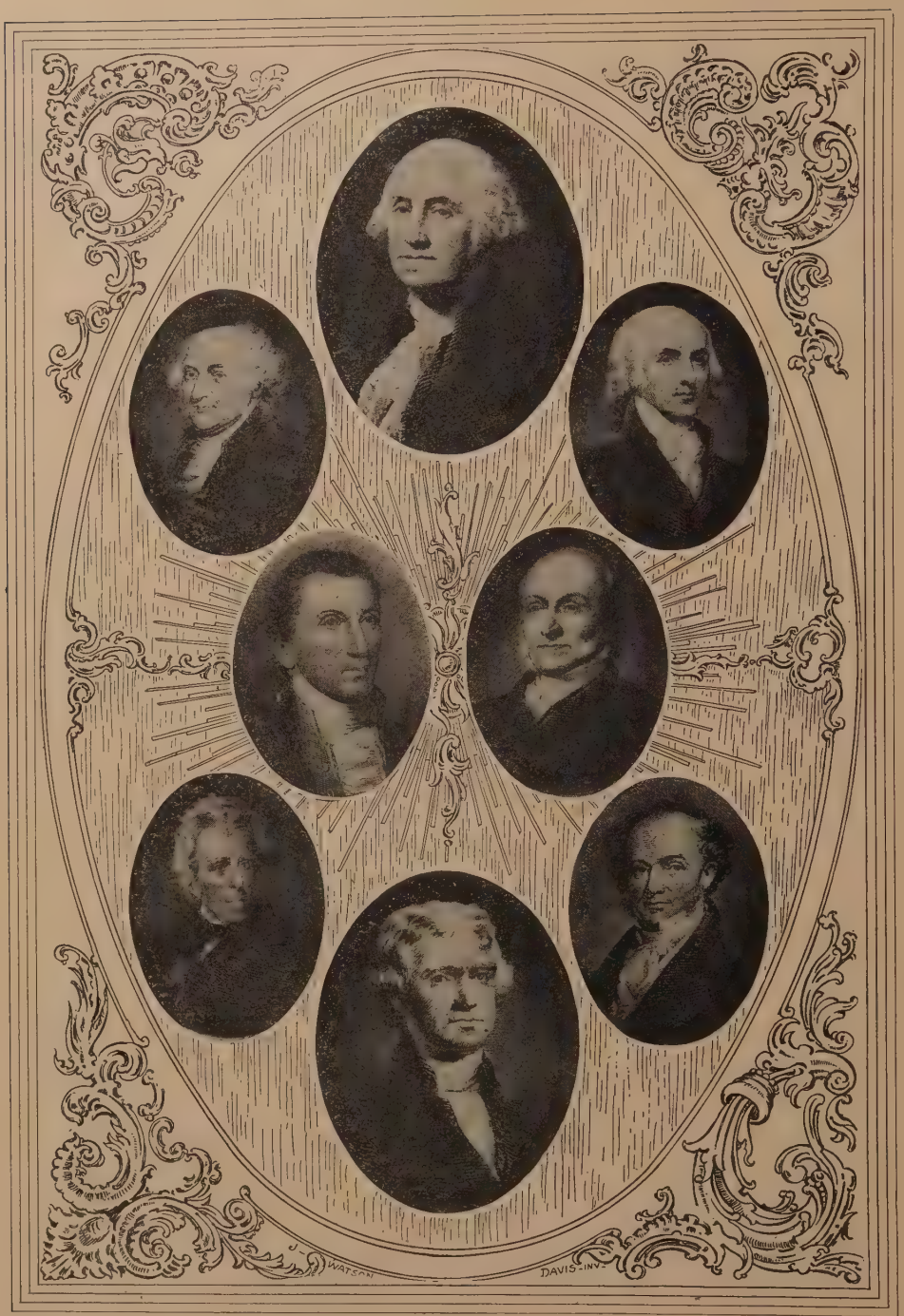

| | PAGE |
|---|---|
| The Rock of Chickamauga | Frontispiece |
| The Presidents of the United States from 1789–1841 | 281 |
| Oglethorpe's Interview with Tomo-Chichi | 287 |
| The Settlement of Ebenezer | 290 |
| LaSalle Takes Possession of the Mississippi Valley for France | 305 |
| The Murder of LaSalle | 308 |
| Washington and Governor Dinwiddie | 318 |
| Washington's First Victory | 325 |
| Washington Attacking the French in the Ravine | 328 |
| The Braddock Massacre | 333 |
| Montcalm on the March | 346 |
| Abercrombie's Expedition Against Fort Ticonderoga | 355 |
| Red-hot Shot | 379 |
| United States, East (Map) | 384 |
| Indian Strategy—The Game of LaCrosse | 387 |
| Pontiac Delivering the Wampum Belt | 392 |
| Alamance the First Battle of the Revolution | 413 |
| Delegates Leaving Carpenter's Hall after a Session | 415 |
| Paul Revere's Ride | 422 |
| The British Retreat to Boston | 429 |
| Flags, Uniforms, etc., of the Revolution | 434 |
| The Battle of Bunker Hill | 443 |
| Signing the Declaration of Independence | 449 |
| The Death of Montgomery | 457 |
| Boston, with its Environs, in 1775–1776 | 459 |
| The Victory at Trenton | 470 |
| The Wyoming Massacre | 510 |
| Battle of Lake Champlain | 529 |
| The Bonhomme Richard and the Serapis | 536 |
| Capture of Andre | 552 |
| Revolt of the Pennsylvania Line | 559 |
| The Surrender of Yorktown | 566 |
| The Hyder Ally and the General Monk | 573 |

# CHAPTER XXI

## *THE COLONIAL HISTORY OF GEORGIA*

[*Authorities:* Georgia, the last of the thirteen English colonies to be settled, was founded in 1733 by an English army officer, named Oglethorpe, who had fought in his youth in the East, under Prince Eugene, the colleague of Marlborough. The Colony was at first founded on a semi-military basis, with the view partly of establishing a barrier between the English colonists in the Carolinas and the Spanish and Indians in Florida. With Oglethorpe was early associated the philanthropist preachers, Whitefield and the two Wesleys, and in concert with them he sought to create homes in the New World for poor imprisoned debtors in England, and for the friendless and destitute classes generally. Savannah was settled at the inception of the colony, and its growth was much helped by the arrival, in 1734, of a number of Protestant exiles from Salzburg, Germany, as well as by contingents of Moravians and Scotch Highlanders. The progress of the settlement was on the whole, however, slow. It had to contend against troubles arising out of the undefined boundary between the Carolinas and the Spanish possessions to the south, which during the war between England and Spain led Oglethorpe to fit out a fruitless expedition against St. Augustine, and to equally fruitless reprisals on the part of the Spaniards of Florida. It had also the drawbacks incident to slave labor and free traffic in rum. Georgia became a royal province in 1752. The chief authorities on the colony are Oglethorpe's contemporary account, the lives of Oglethorpe, by Wright and by Bruce; and the histories of the State by Jones and by Stephens.]

THE reader will by this time have learned the most important facts concerning the settlement of each of the thirteen original colonies, save the last—Georgia. He will have noticed that many of the people who came across the Atlantic and found homes in the New World did so to escape persecution in Europe. The Puritans went to Massachusetts to separate themselves from English Churchmen, or, more strictly speaking, from the obnoxious ritual and ceremonies of the Established Church. Roger Williams and his friends went to




COPYRIGHT 1898.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| John Adams | George Washington | James Madison |
| James Monroe | Thomas Jefferson | John Q. Adams |
| Andrew Jackson | | Martin Van Buren |

PRESIDENTS OF THE UNITED STATES—1789 TO 1841

Rhode Island to get away from the Puritans. The Roman Catholics found shelter and safety for a time in Maryland; and the Friends, or Quakers, located in Pennsylvania because they were persecuted and imprisoned in their native land. And so when we study the last of those colonies, the fact must be noted that it was meant to be an asylum for those who found little or no religious freedom and tranquillity at home. What a system of government it

GOVERNOR OGLETHORPE IN LATER LIFE

was that drove Catholics, Protestants, and Quakers alike out of the country before they could find peace for their minds and safety for their bodies!

Imprisonment for Debt in England

One of the most oppressive laws ever enforced in any country was that which permitted one man to put another in prison for debt, and keep him there until the debt was paid. More often it was the debt of Nature that was paid. Robert Morris, the man who furnished Congress and Washington with the money to carry on the

PERIOD II
COLONIZATION AND SETTLEMENT
1602 TO 1758

Revolution, and without whose help England would probably have conquered, and who gave up all he had to buy food and clothing for the starving and freezing soldiers, was thrown into prison for debt. Before the breaking out of the Revolution, however, the working of this law attracted increasing interest in England. Thousands of people were in the jails, for no crime, but because perhaps sickness or misfortune had compelled them to run into debt. It was not the mere imprisonment, but the horrible suffering of the prisoners, which shocked all right-thinking people. They were treated like mere beasts, and disease often carried off scores. Their condition was a reproach to any people claiming to be Christian or civilized. The hearts of the benevolent everywhere were stirred to help the miserable beings, and a wealthy and humane man left his large fortune to be used in liberating the most worthy insolvent debtors from imprisonment.

**Colonel James Edward Oglethorpe**

Finally, Parliament appointed a committee to inquire into the sad condition of things. The prime mover in this matter was Colonel James Edward Oglethorpe,* who was one of the most admirable men connected with the early history of our country. He was an undergraduate at the University of Oxford when quite a youth, but, in 1714, he left his college to take military service under Prince Eugene of Savoy, the Continental colleague of Marlborough in the war in Flanders. He belonged to an excellent family, and proved himself a soldier of exceeding bravery and skill, serving with distinction in

* General Oglethorpe [*b.* 1698 (?); *d.* 1785] was, in his day, not only the founder of the philanthropic colony of Georgia, but a notable figure in parliamentary, military, and social circles in London. His early career in the army, and the part he took with Prince Eugene in the Austrian campaign against the Turks in Eastern Europe, gave him prestige and influence when he founded Georgia, and maintained it as a bulwark against Spanish aggression upon it and its more prosperous northern neighbor, South Carolina. After his return to England, in 1743, he took part, two years later, in suppressing the Jacobite insurrection in Scotland, though his hereditary associations were with the Stuart cause. Subsequently, he became a free-lance in Parliament, and maintained an attitude of sturdy independence towards the Pelham ministry of the Hanoverian king, George II. He was the friend of Walpole, Goldsmith, Boswell, and Burke, and kept to the last, we are told, his "boyish vivacity and diversity of interests, his keen sense of personal dignity, his sympathy with the problems of life, and his earnestness of moral conviction." Pope, in one of his satires, speaks of this distinguished soldier and philanthropist as being "driven by strong benevolence of soul, to fly from pole to pole," in the interest of oppressed humanity. In an illustrative note to the allusion to General Oglethorpe in the poem, it is said that "the benevolence which induced him to found and settle the colony in Georgia gives greater lustre than military exploits to his character," great as these exploits were.

the campaign against the Turks, which had its decisive close in the siege and capture, in 1717, of the Servian town of Belgrade, on the Danube.

Just here a fact may be mentioned which is not generally known. When the Revolution broke out, Oglethorpe was considered to be one of the most skilful generals in the British Islands, and the feeling was universal that he was the best fitted to assume chief com-

HORRORS OF ENGLISH PRISON LIFE

mand of all the English forces in America. Such command would have been his, except that the authorities feared that his disposition was too humane to allow him to wage war against the "rebels" as King George resolved it should be waged. When our independence was secured, and we sent a minister to represent us at the Court of St. James, the first one to take him by the hand and give him welcome was General Oglethorpe, who was glad in his heart that we had won our freedom. He was a man in the truest sense of the word.

**Oglethorpe's Chivalry**

The parliamentary committee, to which reference has been made,

was named in 1728, with Oglethorpe as chairman. He went to work with vigor, and the revelations which he made of prison life horrified the nation. Few believed that such misery, degradation, wretchedness, and despair could exist. Everybody shuddered, for they knew that the scenes which he described were true. Many of the jailors were indescribably brutal to the unfortunates, and Oglethorpe rightly pursued the most cruel of these felons until he lodged them in jail. The people demanded that the outrage should cease, and Oglethorpe vowed before heaven that he would never rest until he had done his utmost to wipe away the reproach.

**Revelations of Prison Life**

Now it will be readily seen that while it was a blessed charity to release the worthy insolvent debtors, such remedy could never be effectual if the relief stopped there, for those same people were liable to fall into debt again, and undergo the punishment from which they had partially escaped. Something of a wholly different nature was needed, and Oglethorpe proposed to send the best class of debtors to the unoccupied territory to the south of the Carolinas. The other members of the committee agreed with him, and a plan was submitted to Parliament, which was so well set forth that George II., who was then king, as well as the Parliament, favored it. A liberal grant of money was made, and on June 9th, 1732, the sovereign issued a charter for founding the colony of Georgia, so named in compliment to the king. The charter provided for a province extending from the Savannah River on the north, to the Altamaha (*awl'-tă-mă-hăw'*) River on the south, and from the sources of those streams westward to the Pacific. It will be noted that even at that late day everybody was ignorant of the immense area of our country, else a grant of such an extent would never have been made.

**A Charter for the Province of Georgia, 1732**

The management of the colony was entrusted for a term of twenty-one years to a like number of noblemen and gentlemen. At the end of the period named, a permanent government was to be established by the king or his successors, agreeably with British law and usage. Among the directors were Oglethorpe and Anthony Ashley Cooper, fourth Earl of Shaftesbury. Oglethorpe, unlike other founders of colonies, offered to go with the first emigrants, and aid them in establishing a settlement. Every feature of the new enterprise commended itself to the British people, and the managers were deluged, it may almost be said, with donations. A generous sum of money came from the Bank of England; the king presented

**Colonization Schemes**

seventy-four cannon and a supply of ammunition to the emigrants; and the grants of Parliament soon amounted to more than thirty thousand pounds. Strange as it may seem, the Georgia scheme suffered because of its excessive popularity. We all know that a boy or girl is easily spoiled by unwise indulgence, and so it was, as the reader will learn, that too many favors were done for Georgia in its infancy.

Many circumstances awakened high hopes for the scheme. Grapes grew in wonderful profusion in the province, so that the production of wine promised to be a profitable industry. Piedmont received more than two million dollars annually from England for unmanufactured silk, which it was believed could be diverted to Georgia; while the climate was known to be favorable to the growth of the olive, for which dependence was mainly had upon Italy.

A careful selection was made from the hundreds of applicants, and one hundred and twenty men, women, and children, representing thirty-five families, sailed in the ship *Anne*, of two hundred tons, from Gravesend, November 6th, 1732. Among them were a number of Piedmontese silk-workers, with a quantity of silkworms' eggs. Nearly every man was a skilled mechanic or artisan, and they prudently took enough provisions to last them until they could raise crops of their own. The voyage of the *Anne* was wearisome, but she reached Charleston in January, 1733, and Oglethorpe and his emigrants received a cordial welcome. At the governor's request, the assembly of South Carolina voted their neighbors a number of breeding cattle and other supplies. Pilots and a convoy were furnished to the *Anne*, which sailed for Port Royal Sound, near Beaufort Island, whence the immigrants were conveyed to the Savannah River in small boats. From that point, Oglethorpe, accompanied by Mr. Bull, of Charleston, afterwards governor of South Carolina, proceeded up the river to select a site for the settlement, which was that of the present city of Savannah. The town was laid out, and, returning to Beaufort, the immigrants arrived and began the settlement, February 1st, 1733.

**Founding of Savannah, 1733**

In his report to the trustees, Oglethorpe wrote: "Upon the river side, at the centre of this plain, I have laid out a town, opposite to which is an island of very rich pasturage, which I think should be kept for the trustees' cattle. The river is pretty wide, the water fresh, and from the key of the town you see its whole course to the

PERIOD II
COLONIZATION AND SETTLEMENT 1602 TO 1758

sea, with the island of Tybee, which forms the mouth of the river. For about six miles up into the country the landscape is very agreeable, the stream being wide, and bordered with high woods."

It will be remembered that Oglethorpe possessed a fine military training. While the comfortable dwellings were in course of erection, he put up a strong fort, and mounted the cannon presented to him by the king. He knew, moreover, that his Spanish neighbors on the south were not to be trusted. The men were formed into a military company, officers appointed, and frequent drills had, all of which made a desirable impression upon the wondering Indians who gathered around. But the wise and humane founder of Georgia relied upon other means to win the good-will of the dusky inhabitants of the country, which was claimed by the powerful tribe of Creeks, while near-by was the seat of a tribe made up of Yamacraws and Savannahs, whose chief was Tomo-chichi, more than ninety years old. The latter was held in great respect as a wise sachem and counsellor by all the surrounding tribes, and Oglethorpe lost no time in seeking an interview with him.

**Oglethorpe's Interview with Tomo-chichi**

In this delicate and important step the founder of the colony received much aid from Mary Musgrove, the half-breed wife of a South Carolina trader. She acted as interpreter, and dispelled all the fears of the venerable sachem. When the group gathered under the green pines and spreading live-oaks on Yamacraw Bluff, Tomo-chichi walked forward, and handed to the founder a bison-skin on the under side of which was painted the figure of an eagle.

"Here," said he, "is a buffalo-skin, adorned with the head and feathers of an eagle. The eagle means speed, and the buffalo strength. The English are as swift as the eagle, and strong as the buffalo. Like the eagle, they flew hither over great waters, and, like the buffalo, nothing can withstand them. But the feathers of the eagle are soft, and signify kindness; and the skin of the buffalo is covering, and signifies protection. Let these, then, remind them to be kind and protect us."

The scene recalls that of Penn and the Delaware Indians a half century before, under the old elm at Shackamaxon. Oglethorpe made so pleasant and tactful a reply to Tomo-chichi that his full confidence and friendship were won, and through his aid a convention was brought about with the heads of the Creek confederacy, in May, 1733. A treaty was made by which all unoccupied lands

COPYRIGHT 1895.

OGLETHORPE'S INTERVIEW WITH TOMO-CHICHI

FROM THE ORIGINAL DRAWING BY W. P. SNYDER

within certain named boundaries were assigned to the English, and this treaty was ratified by the trustees in the following October. At the conclusion of the treaty, Tomo-chichi, as host, invited all parties to his town, near at hand, where Oglethorpe distributed a large number of valuable presents. Strong spirits were used so freely that some not very creditable scenes took place, which caused the trustees to pass a resolution prohibiting the use or sale of rum anywhere in the province.

When the first crop of Indian corn was raised, it measured a thousand bushels. Everything was promising, and the people were satisfied and hopeful. More immigrants arriving in the course of the year, the town of Augusta was now founded. Just then it looked to Oglethorpe that he could be well spared, at least for a time, and so in the spring of 1734 he sailed for England. Convinced that it was well to impress the red men with the strength and resources of the English nation, he persuaded Tomo-chichi, his wife, their son, and several chiefs, to go with him as his guests.

**Augusta Founded, 1733**

The vessel reached England in June, and the Creeks were received with as hearty a cordiality as welcomed Pocahontas more than a hundred years before. On the first of August, the king granted them an interview, which was held in Kensington Palace, and was marked on both sides with much state and ceremony. Presenting some eagle's feathers to the monarch, the aged Tomo-chichi said:

**The Creek Indians at the English Court**

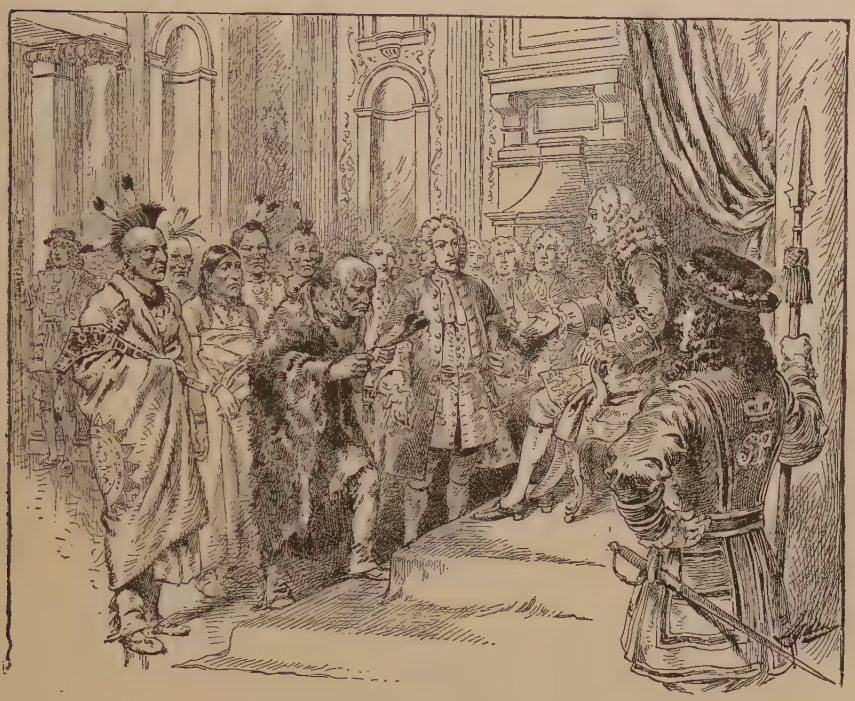
"This day I see the majesty of your face, the greatness of your house, and the number of your people. I am come for the good of the whole nation, called the Creeks, to renew the peace which was long ago had with the English. I am come over in my old days, although I cannot live to see any advantage to myself. I am come for the good of the children of the nations of the Upper and Lower Creeks, that they may be instructed in the knowledge of English.

"These are the feathers of the eagle, which is the swiftest of birds, and who flieth all around our nations. These feathers are a sign of peace in our land, and have been carried from town to town there, and we have brought them over to leave with you, O great king! as a sign of everlasting peace. O great king! whatsoever words you shall say to me, I will tell them faithfully to all the kings of the Creek nations."

His Majesty listened with attentive courtesy to these words, and replied in the following terms:

"I am glad of the opportunity of assuring you of my regard for the people from whom you have come. I am extremely well pleased with the assurances you have brought me from them, and accept very gratefully the present, as an indication of their good disposition to me and my people. I shall always be ready to cultivate a good understanding between them and my own subjects, and shall be glad of any occasion to show you a mark of my friendship and esteem."

When the words were interpreted to Tomo-chichi, then in his



IN KENSINGTON PALACE

ninety-third year, he turned to the queen, and said with touching simplicity: "I am glad to see this day, and to have the opportunity of seeing the mother of this great people. As our people are joined with your majesty's, we humbly hope to find you the common mother and protectoress of us and all our children."

**Reception of Creek Indians by the King**

Oglethorpe was the "father" of the delegation during the stay of the Indians in England. They looked up to him with the trusting confidence of children, and did everything he wished. At the interview with the king and queen, Tomo-chichi and his wife appeared in a

costume of scarlet and gold. One of the chiefs had set his heart upon a *début* in war costume, which consisted mostly of paint with a bit of cloth around the loins, but Oglethorpe convinced the ambitious visitor that it was hardly the right thing to do.

The brother-in-law of Tomo-chichi was stricken with smallpox, and though he received the best of attention, he died, and was buried as nearly as possible according to the custom in America. After this, Oglethorpe took the Indians to his estate, and waited upon them there with open-handed hospitality. The stay of the Creeks lasted four months, during which they received so much attention that their health was threatened. When they sailed, they took with them scores of valuable presents, and arrived at Savannah at the close of the year 1734.

**Coming of the Salzburgers**

About this time a company of Salzburgers reached Charleston. They had been driven by religious persecution from their homes in the province of Salzburg, at the base of the Noric Alps. These Protestant Salzburgers were so different in their manners and customs from the English that they were formed into a colony by themselves. They named the little stream and town where they found a safe refuge at last "Ebenezer," as expressive of their gratitude to Heaven for its mercy and goodness. It formed one of the most delightful and charming settlements of colonial times.

Oglethorpe did not return to Georgia until 1736. He was received with gladness alike by the colonists and the red men, all of whom regarded him with reverence and love. He took with him one hundred and fifty Scotch Highlanders, who were excellently drilled soldiers, and may be regarded as the first regular troops in Georgia. They were well armed, and brought with them a number of cannon.

**The Wesley Brothers**

Two notable passengers accompanied Oglethorpe. They were the brothers, John and Charles Wesley, the founders of Methodism, whose names will doubtless be revered for all time. Charles, the younger, was Oglethorpe's secretary, while John was a missionary to the Indians. With the emigrants were a number of Moravians, and so superior were all as a class that their arrival in the colony is often referred to as the "Grand Embarkation."

The Wesleys at that time were young in years, and the earnestness of their convictions led them to a course of action which did not always result in the good intended. John disagreed with Oglethorpe, who advised him to temper his zeal with discretion. Charles stayed but

COPYRIGHT 1886

THE SETTLEMENT OF EBENEZER

a short time, when he returned to England, and John followed him in 1737, under the conviction that, although he was a minister of the Church of England, he had never been converted to God.

It is somewhat singular that the man who was sent to take the place of John Wesley became one of the greatest preachers of the eighteenth century. He was George Whitefield (*whit'-field*), who possessed a sweet, penetrating voice, and an eloquence that swayed his hearers with resistless power. He did a work for his divine Master the extent of which is beyond measurement by human standards. Although Whitefield was also a young man, he was more practical than the Wesleys, and was popular from the first. He founded an asylum for orphans at Savannah, and supported it by voluntary subscriptions, obtained mostly in England; and his broad, catholic spirit enabled him to join hands with the Moravians and all who had the good of mankind at heart.

**The Preacher Whitefield**

Oglethorpe brought with him from England two acts of Parliament intended to have an important bearing upon the moral welfare and material progress of the colony. One forbade the holding of slaves, and the other prohibited the bringing of spirituous liquors into the province. He had been instrumental in the passage of these laws, but it was well-nigh impossible to enforce them. Just over the border, in South Carolina, the chief traffic was that in rum. The people there were anxious to sell to the Georgians, and the Georgians were just as anxious to buy, and so the vile business went on.

**Slavery and the Rum-traffic**

As to slave labor, no place could have been better adapted to it than Georgia, and while it existed in the Carolinas it was impossible to keep it out of the neighboring province. A pretence of obeying the law was made by hiring gangs of slaves from South Carolina, but soon that pretext was flung aside, and slavery flourished as much on one side of the boundary line as on the other. While these two laws were morally right, though impossible of enforcement, there were others that were unwise. Thus the trustees had ordered that every grant of land should be in such form that widows and daughters were debarred from all interest in the property of husband and father. Hence, if any owner died without a son, the whole property went back to the trustees, who could dispose of it as they pleased. This law was not changed until it had done much mischief in the province.

The high estimation in which Oglethorpe was held in England

gave him great influence, and he obtained almost anything in reason for which he asked. Parliament voted more money to the Georgia colony, and showed it so many favors that, as has already been intimated, it was a question whether too much indulgence was not shown to the colonists, who would have done better if left to work out their own well-being as did the sturdy emigrants in Massachusetts and other places. Still, whatever errors were committed by the founder of Georgia, he had at bottom the influencing motive of love for his kind.

With a number of his Highland soldiers, Oglethorpe made an exploratory voyage among the islands and along the coast. Frederica was founded on St. Simon's Island, where a fort was erected. The Highlanders had been assigned to a tract of land on the Altamaha, which England affirmed was the true boundary between her possessions and those of Spain. The town was named New Inverness, and the fort, Darien. The Highlanders were joined by other emigrants from Scotland, and formed a community by themselves, in which the customs and the picturesque dress of their native country were preserved. Oglethorpe paid this settlement a friendly call, and as a compliment to the people he presented himself in Highland costume. He was received with the lively tunes of the national pipes, and made welcome by the hospitable people.

**Scottish Immigration**

The towns outside of Savannah were Darien, Ebenezer, and Augusta. Never forgetful of the Spaniards in the south, Oglethorpe took special interest in Frederica, on St. Simon's Island. He erected excellent fortifications on St. Simon's and Cumberland islands, which served their purpose as a bulwark against Spanish encroachments.

The Salzburgers thrived wonderfully. They would not permit any slave labor among them, and, by and by, exported five tons of raw silk annually. Indigo was largely cultivated, and it may be said that the prosperity of this portion of Georgia surpassed all expectations.

**Southern Limits of Georgia defined**

Oglethorpe now took a bold step. With a number of his favorite Highlanders, he made a journey to the south, and marked St. John's River as the southern limits of Georgia. His argument for going beyond the claims of the trustees was that the domain thus placed in dispute was in possession of Indian subjects of Britain in 1713, when the war between that country on the one hand, and Spain and

France on the other, was concluded by treaty. True to the national love of conquest, Great Britain backed him up in this position.

Oglethorpe sent an embassy to St. Augustine with a notification of his claim, but modified it by making St. Mary's the southern boundary. He knew that the Spaniards would not assent to this until compelled by force of arms, and hence the military preparations he then carefully made. A fort was built which commanded the mouth of the St. Mary's, and Fort St. George, at the mouth of the St. John's River, was completed.

The Spaniards were so angered by the course of the governor that, when his messengers reached St. Augustine, they were held as prisoners, and war was threatened. As soon as Tomo-chichi learned of this, he came at the head of a large company of warriors to offer aid to Oglethorpe. So did other chiefs. The powerful Chickasaws formed an alliance with the governor, who felt increased confidence in his strength. The governor of St. Augustine had tried to tamper with these Indians, and, when he learned what they had done, he released Oglethorpe's messengers, and a satisfactory treaty was made. The Georgians were withdrawn from Fort St. George, and all would have been well, had not the Spanish government rejected the agreement, and sent a commission from Cuba to meet Oglethorpe at Frederica. The meeting took place in the latter part of 1736. When it is stated that the commission would listen to no settlement except that of the abandonment of all of Georgia and a part of South Carolina by the English, it need not be added that the interview did not end satisfactorily on either side.

**Difficulties with the Spanish in Florida**

The situation was so perilous that Oglethorpe proceeded to England to consult with the trustees. He reported that Spain was moving soldiers into Florida, and undoubtedly meant to enforce her claims by going to war. Oglethorpe was commissioned a brigadier-general, given command of all the military in South Carolina and Georgia, and authorized to raise troops in England. He did this, and arrived in Georgia, in the autumn of 1738, with a trained military force of six hundred men, backed by a grant from Parliament of one hundred thousand dollars.

He found much discontent in the province. Georgia and South Carolina were at swords'-points over the law about traffic in rum; and while the Moravians and Salzburgers would not permit slave labor among themselves, the remainder of the people insisted that it was

as much a necessity as in South Carolina. Oglethorpe declared that he would resign and abandon the province if slavery were permitted. The ill-feeling became so general that a good many settlers removed to South Carolina.

During the governor's absence in England, the Spaniards strove to win his Indian allies from him, but they could not influence them. Then they tampered with his own soldiers, and succeeded to such an extent that an attempt was made upon Oglethorpe's life. A speedy court-martial and several hangings followed, when all danger from that source disappeared.

England, then under the administration of Walpole, declared war against Spain in 1739. Oglethorpe received early notice of what was coming, and moved with characteristic energy and skill. He knew the Spaniards were strengthening St. Augustine, and his design was to strike it before their plans were completed. He urged South Carolina to join him; but, without waiting for her help, he marched into Florida early in 1740, with four hundred soldiers and a strong force of Indians. On the march he dressed like a common soldier, and shared in all the privations.

**Oglethorpe's Invasion of Florida, 1740**

Oglethorpe invested Diego, a small fort twenty-five miles from the town. It held out but a short time, and placing a garrison in possession, he pushed on to Fort Moosa, two miles from St. Augustine, only to find that it had been abandoned by the Spaniards, who were gathered in the larger fortification.

The governor's force was too weak to hope for success, so he proceeded to Charleston to hasten the coming of the troops from that province. He came back with sufficient North and South Carolinians and Virginians to swell the attacking force, including Indians, to two thousand. He appeared before the fort in June, and summoned it to surrender. The demand was refused, and he invested it, a small squadron blockading the harbor, but the blockade was so weak that the enemy easily broke it whenever necessary. The English had no cannon of sufficient range to do effective work, and the sickly season was at hand. Among those stricken down by fever was the governor himself, who was compelled to abandon the siege.

No military events of moment took place in Georgia for a couple of years; but in May, 1742, two thousand troops, under Don Antonio de Rodondo, arrived at St. Augustine from Cuba.

Oglethorpe asked South Carolina to help him to repel the invasion that this foreshadowed, but the aid was withheld, and the governor prepared to do the best he could with the weak force at his command.

The captain-general of Florida arrived at St. Simon's Island, in July, with a fleet of thirty-six vessels, and a force of probably five thousand men. All the governor could muster of Highlanders, Indians, and negroes, was barely eight hundred. But the undaunted general said to his men: "We must protect Carolina and the rest of the colonies from destruction, or die in the attempt. For myself, I am prepared for all dangers. I know the enemy are far more numerous than we, but I rely on the valor of our men, and by God's help, I believe we shall be victorious."

St. Simon's was untenable, and, ordering his vessels to run up to Frederica, Oglethorpe spiked his guns and followed. The position taken was almost invulnerable, and he repulsed every attack made upon him. At Bloody Marsh, a body of Spanish troops was not only routed, but almost destroyed by an impetuous charge of the Highlanders. Then Oglethorpe assumed the offensive, encouraged by the knowledge that the quarrels between the forces from St. Augustine and Cuba were so bitter that they did not occupy the same encampments. He reached a point within a few miles of the Spanish position at night, and halted, intending to make the attack at daybreak. While the situation was thus delicate, one of Oglethorpe's men suddenly fired his gun, and dashed out of the encampment. He was a spy, and was gone before any one could shoot him. The report of his musket was a signal to the enemy, and the governor saved himself from the crushing attack that he knew would be made, as soon as his weakness was known, by falling back upon Frederica.

**An Ingenious Scheme and its Success**

Oglethorpe now put into execution a clever scheme to defeat the mischief threatened by the action of the deserter. He wrote a letter of instructions to him, as if he were really a British spy. He told him to impress upon the Spanish commander that Frederica was so weak that, if an immediate attack were made, its fall was certain. If the spy were unable to bring about the assault, he must manage to hold the Spanish forces where they were for three days more, during which time the Georgia troops would be reinforced by two thousand soldiers, escorted by six ships-of-war. Mention was also made of an attack soon to be made upon St. Augustine by Admiral Vernon, the English commander. The deserter was promised

a large sum in gold if he succeeded in carrying out these several instructions.

Now, of course, the greater portion of these "tall stories were the identical ones which Oglethorpe knew the deserter would relate to the Spanish commander, and the aim of the governor was to throw discredit upon them. The letter was sealed and given to a Spanish prisoner, who was promised a large reward on condition that he de-

THE DESERTER

livered it privately to the deserter. Upon the arrival of the Spaniard in the enemy's camp, since he was not known, he was taken before the Spanish commander, searched, and the letter found on him.

This was just what Oglethorpe planned should take place. The real deserter was brought before the general, and ordered to give an account of himself. He told the truth, but that only placed him in a more suspicious position. In doubt what it all meant, the commander had the man put in irons until he could investigate more fully. He saw that, after all, the whole thing might be a stratagem of the English commander, who he did not intend should overreach him.

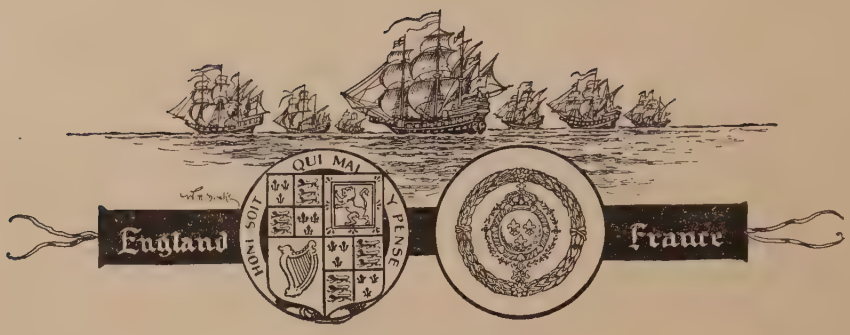
At this critical juncture, several ships with reinforcements from Charleston arrived. Nothing could have been more providential. The commander hanged the spy, and hurried back to St. Augustine to defend it from Admiral Vernon and the English fleet. By this singular chance were Georgia and Carolina saved from capture and probable destruction. The Spanish leader was dismissed in disgrace from the service, and the military fame of Oglethorpe was greatly increased. Whitefield pronounced the salvation of the provinces equal to any of the marvellous deliverances recorded in Holy Writ.

**Oglethorpe's return to England**

Having founded, colonized, defended, and firmly established the province of Georgia, Oglethorpe returned to England in 1743, and did valiant military service for his king. He was eighty years old when he was urged to take command of the military forces in America at the breaking out of the Revolution, but, as we have seen, was deemed too humane by the British ministry for the work. He lived to be nearly a hundred years old, with the brightness of his eyes undimmed, his form unbowed, and his faculties unimpaired. He was pronounced the handsomest old man of his time, and died universally revered for his brave, unselfish spirit, his commanding ability, and his many Christian virtues.

**Georgia becomes A Royal Province**

Rest and peace came for a time to Georgia, but the province nevertheless languished. The restrictive laws did not work well. The gifts received from the parent land, from time to time, amounted to three quarters of a million of dollars. The inhabitants became in consequence thriftless, and in 1752 there was not a town, but only three small villages, in the whole province. The white population numbered barely two thousand, and the exports of the colony amounted to little more than three thousand dollars annually. In June, 1752, just twenty years after the issuance of its charter, the trustees surrendered the patent to the Crown, and it became a royal province, and so remained until the Revolution. As a Crown colony an impetus was given to immigration and industry, and, in 1758, Georgia was divided into eight parishes, and the Church of England was by law established. Its progress continued with its prosperity, and not many years elapsed ere it earned the proud title of "the Empire State of the South."




## PERIOD III.—ENGLAND AND FRANCE IN AMERICA

### CHAPTER XXII

### *FRENCH COLONIZATION IN AMERICA*

[*Authorities:* The sources are many and important that throw light upon the interesting events related in the present chapter. They cover a period not only of heroic French exploration in the region of the Great Lakes, and southward, by the valley of the Mississippi, to the Gulf of Mexico, but of vital moment to the English colonies on the seaboard, in the daring aggressions of France in the Ohio Valley, which were presently to be checkmated by the combined action of Virginia and Maryland in the region west of the Alleghanies. The chief authorities on the period, in addition to the general histories, are Vols. IV. and V. of Winsor's "Narrative and Critical History of America," Winsor's "Cartier to Frontenac," Parkman's "Count Frontenac and New France under Louis XIV.," and the same writer's "La Salle, and the Discovery of the Great West," Sparks's "Life of La Salle," Shea's "Discovery and Exploration in the Mississippi Valley," together with Garneau's, Ferland's, and Kingsford's histories of Canada. For additional accounts of the Jesuit missions in New France, see "*Relations des Jesuites*" (Paris and Quebec), Le Clercq's "*L'Etablissement de la Foi*" (Dr. J. Gilmary Shea's translation), and Abbé Faillon's "*Histoire de la Colonie Française en Canada.*"

GREAT BRITAIN and France have for hundreds of years ranked among the greatest nations in the world, and during most of this period they have been rivals of each other. Their mutual wars have been almost innumerable; but it is to be hoped that their advance in Christian civilization, their enlightenment, and the growing favor of international arbitration, will avert forever the appalling consequences of further conflict between them.

We have completed the early study of what is known as the "thirteen original colonies," and learned the principal facts in the annals of each, down to the middle of the eighteenth century. It may seem that since our aim is to become acquainted with the his-

tory of our own country, and since all of those colonies were either settled by the English, or came into their possession before the opening of the Revolution, we have no concern with the doings of other European nations. The time has come, however, when we must glance at the work of the French in the way of colonization, for that work intruded upon the English field, and a tremendous struggle for supremacy between those mighty powers was soon to be fought out on the soil of the New World.

While the English settlements were fast spreading along the Atlantic coast from Maine to Florida, France was engaged with fitful vigor in colonizing Canada and pushing her conquest of the wilderness westward to the fur-bearing plains beyond the Red River, and southward through the Mississippi valley, where she aimed to establish an empire of such grandeur that it would overshadow the possessions of all other nations and make her mistress of the American continent. In this enterprise, the French displayed a wisdom which gave them an immense advantage over the English; they succeeded in winning the good will of the Indian tribes with which they chiefly came in contact and with whom they engaged in the pursuit of the fur trade. The most powerful agency in the accomplishment of this work was first the Récollets, then the Jesuits, who cheerfully underwent every hardship, privation, suffering, and peril in the hope of securing the conversion of the red men. These missionaries of the Cross took their lives in their hands, and many lost them in the depths of the dismal solitude, where the blinding snow, the resistless cyclone, the smothering heat, the arctic cold, starvation, and the fierce hostility of the savages, drove back every one else.

**Jesuit Missionaries in New France**

As long ago as the time of Champlain, the Jesuits helped him to cement an alliance with the Ottawas and the Hurons on the Georgian Bay, to the westward. Three of the priests of this order, Brebœuf, Daniel, and Davost, excited the wonder even of the savages by their sacrificing work and the cheerfulness with which they endured every trial of whatever nature, and even death, at the hands of the Iroquois, the inveterate enemies of their once kinsmen, the Hurons. These men tramped through the desolate woods with the Indians to the shores of distant Lake Huron, where they erected the first mission house of the Jesuits among the natives of the Huron country. The devotion of these priests brought its fruit in the conversion of scores, hundreds, and in some instances whole tribes of Indians who

bowed at the rude altar shrines in the wilderness and became nominal Christians. The missionary work was steadily pushed, since it helped in every way the interests of France, for that nation, in addition to the moral aspect of the question, saw the almost inestimable gain in a political sense to her. By the middle of the seventeenth century, the conquest of the Jesuits had been carried from the gates of Quebec to the farthest post on the shores of Lake Superior. In 1656, two French traders and a company of Indians arrived at Quebec from a two years' absence in the west. The stories which they told of the wonderful country they had seen stirred the interest of every one in the colony, and both the church and the state resolved to take possession of the land. Father Allouez (*ăl'-loo-ā*) advanced without hesitation into the region, built mission houses, preached to the Chippewas and Sioux and proclaimed the king of France sovereign of the dusky people.

**French Priests and Traders in the West**

While among the Sioux, Father Allouez heard of a mighty river, called by the Indians the Father of Waters. The news which he sent back to Quebec caused Fathers Marquette (*mar-ket'*) and Dablon to set out with the resolve to rear the cross in the very heart of the distant solitudes. These two men labored with much success among the Chippewas and aided the political designs of Joliet, who followed them thither. Marquette's interest in the Mississippi was deepened by the many accounts he heard from the Indians regarding it, and he and Joliet ascended the Fox River to the watershed between the immense streams and the Lakes. They used light birch canoes, which were carried across to the Wisconsin, down which they floated to the main river itself, called by the Indians "Mississippi," meaning The Great Water. Marquette and his companions descended the chief stream, past the turbid Missouri and the clearer waters of the Ohio and other rivers, stopping at many points to hold friendly meetings with the natives. They continued their course down the stream until, satisfied that it did not flow into the Atlantic or the Pacific oceans, the little party turned about and reached Green Bay, in Lake Michigan, early in the autumn. They used light sails over their canoes and found their help valuable. Marquette labored for two years more among the Indians in the country surrounding the present city of Chicago. Then, worn out by toil and suffering, he lay down and peacefully died, surrounded by his loving companions, who laid him tenderly in the earth and marked the grave with a large

**Father Marquette**

cross. Father Marquette was one of the several discoverers of the Mississippi whose memory will always be cherished by those that come after him.

Let us now go back to the latter part of the seventeenth century. It was an important period in our history. New England was in a prosperous condition and had just brought King Philip's War to a close; Bacon's Rebellion had been subdued in Virginia; New York had passed from under Dutch to English rule, and William Penn was turning his attention to America as a land of refuge for the persecuted of his sect. It was at this time that the most remarkable of all explorations of the Mississippi was made by the Frenchman, René Robert Cavalier, known in American history from an estate of his family in France, as the Sieur de la Salle *(lăh-sâl)*.

MARQUETTE AND HIS COMPANIONS

**La Salle**

It has been already shown that the Spaniards were the real discoverers of the Mississippi. In 1519, Pineda described a great river flowing from the north, which must have been the Father of Waters, seen twenty-two years later by De Soto, who reached the stream about the middle of its course. La Salle* belonged to an old

* The Sieur de la Salle [1643–1687], was in early life a member of the Society of Jesus, but, renouncing the church, came to Canada in 1666, during Count Frontenac's

and rich burgher family at Rouen. He was educated for the priesthood, but his ardent temperament and independent bearing led him to adopt a secular life. Having a brother a member of the Sulpician order in Canada, he joined him at the age of twenty-three years. Young La Salle obtained a grant of territory at the head of the rapids of the St. Lawrence, and, by the close of 1668, had begun a palisaded post, subsequently known as Fort Frontenac, and had a considerable tract of land under cultivation. His intention seemed to have been to spend his life there as a landed gentleman; but he soon became so fascinated with visions of exploration that nothing else possessed any charm for him. One day, in the winter of 1668–69, a party of Seneca Indians visited the post, and in their picturesque way described the course of a river, rising in their country and flowing southward for so great a distance that it would take a canoe, as they said, eight or nine months to follow it to the sea. Since this represented more miles than belonged to the Mississippi, mighty as it is, they must have included with it the course of the Alleghany and the Ohio rivers. In this great stream, La Salle saw the waterway which had been searched for in vain ever since the time of Cartier, and which he believed must have its outlet in the Gulf of California. If such were the fact, it would give to France a water highway to the South Sea, and a route to China, as convenient as that which the Spaniards followed from Acapulco (*ä-kä-pōōl′-kō*).

**The Mississippi**

Fired by the resolve to explore this great stream, La Salle applied to the authorities of Quebec for help. Count Frontenac, then gov-

administration, and acquired a seigniory on the St. Lawrence, near the site of the present Canadian city of Kingston, Ont. Fond of adventure, he brought himself to the notice of Governor Frontenac, by his activity in extending the outposts and influence of the French among the Western tribes, and Frontenac made him commandant of the fort at the foot of Lake Ontario and aided him materially in prosecuting his explorations. In 1674, he visited France to report upon his discoveries, and there received important grants from the crown, and was also ennobled. He returned to Canada in 1678 and traversed the Great Lakes, founding outposts of France on the site of what is now the city of Detroit, and at Michilimackinac, on the Straits of Mackinaw. Entering Lake Michigan, he sailed across to Green Bay, from which he proceeded southward to the St. Joseph River, on the banks of which he established Fort Miamis, and also founded a trading-post on the site of modern Chicago. In 1682, he descended the Illinois and the Mississippi to the Gulf of Mexico and named the region Louisiana. In the following year, he returned to France, and, in 1684, proceeded once more to the mouth of the Mississippi, with the design of founding a colony. Failing to reach his destination he spent a couple of years in Texas, and in 1687 lost his life, as we shall presently see, in a fruitless attempt to reach the Mississippi—the goal of his hopes.

ernor of New France, gave him letters patent, authorizing him to make discoveries, and commended him to the rulers in Virginia and Florida, should his researches take him into their dominions. Thus armed, as may be said, La Salle returned to Cataraqui, at the foot of Lake Ontario, where, as has been related, he erected a fort, and in July, 1669, sold all his landed property, and, on the day that the deed was signed, his little flotilla left the post at the head of the St. Lawrence and steered westward. His party numbered twenty, most of whom he had selected, the rest being furnished by the Sulpicians, who wished to establish an agency of their order in the western region. La Salle first went to the Seneca villages for guides. Passing into Lake Ontario, he followed the southern shore to Irondequoit Bay, and there made his way to the Jesuit mission, only to find that the missionaries had gone to Onondaga. They had left an interpreter behind who told them of a broad prairie land to the south, which stretched many miles, without trees, and of a people who lived in a warm and productive country, near a river whose flow was such that it must empty into the Mexican Gulf or the Vermilion Sea. The river thus referred to was the then undiscovered Ohio. Heading westward, the flotilla passed the Niagara River without entering, but heard the distant roar of the cataract, and in time reached the extreme western end of Lake Ontario. At that point the party divided, the Sulpicians taking the trail to Grand River and Lake Erie. The precise course of La Salle after parting with the Sulpicians is not known with certainty. The claim has been made that he discovered the Ohio in 1670, and by it reached the Mississippi, and that a year later he went by Lake Michigan to the Chicago portage, and reached the "Great Water" a second time by the channel of the Illinois. In Montreal, however, the expedition was considered as having wholly failed of its object.

**La Salle's Western Explorations, 1669–71**

Count Frontenac was appointed governor of New France, in 1672, and the following year he strengthened the fort named in honor of himself, at Cataraqui [now Kingston, Ontario], at the eastern end of Lake Ontario. He formed plans also at Niagara for another fort and for building a vessel on Lake Erie, his object being to shut out the Dutch and English from the waters of the upper lakes. He was a friend of La Salle, and in 1674 sent him to France to urge the favoring of his plans by the French government. La Salle did his duty so well that the king granted Fort Frontenac and the adjacent

lands to him as a seigniory, and in recognition of the services he proposed to render in New France gave to the explorer a patent of nobility. He was bound to an agreement to rebuild the fort of stone masonry,—apparently a trifling condition, but one which afterwards caused trouble. La Salle occupied himself for a time in increasing the efficiency of Frontenac as a trading-post. He did this work effectually, gathering settlers within the walls, and afterwards made his way, in company with a Franciscan missionary and explorer, named Father Hennepin, to the Falls of Niagara, which it is supposed they were the first white men to see. Passing on beyond the falls, La Salle built and launched a small vessel, called *The Griffin*, on Lake Erie. No doubt he had come to believe that it was easy to open communication with the Mississippi valley by way of the Maumee and Wabash, and to extend French trade beyond Niagara in that direction.

In 1677, La Salle again visited France, where he obtained authority from the king to establish, during a term of five years, other posts to the south and west of Fort Frontenac. His relatives advanced him the needed funds, and he secured the support of a remarkable man named the Chevalier Tonti. He was the son of an Italian refugee and stood loyally by the explorer to the end. It is worth while perhaps to know that the system of Tontine life insurance received its name from this person. La Salle sailed from Rochelle, France, in 1678, taking with him shipwrights and mechanics, including anchors, sails, and cordage, for the vessel he built on Lake Erie. Now came three years of severe trial to La Salle. The vessel built for Lake Erie foundered; another vessel begun on the banks of the Illinois River, had to be abandoned; efforts to establish fortified posts on the same river failed, and the explorer was repeatedly betrayed and deserted by friends whom he trusted. Finally, in August, 1681, he again faced westward with about fifty persons in his train, and in the course of three months reached Fort Miami, where he divided his party. The larger division, under Tonti and a French priest named Membré (*maum'brā*), passed around the head of Lake Michigan one hundred miles to the Chicago River, and then dragged their loads over nearly three hundred miles of frozen streams to the Illinois. Following the Kan Ka Kee route, La Salle joined them early in January, 1682. Open water was found for their canoes at Fort Crèvecœur (*krĕv-kuir*), La Salle's ruined

**Tonti Joins La Salle**

COPYRIGHT 1896.

LA SALLE TAKES POSSESSION OF THE MISSISSIPPI VALLEY FOR FRANCE

FROM THE ORIGINAL DRAWING BY W. H. LIPPINCOTT

PERIOD III
ENGLAND AND FRANCE IN AMERICA
1758 TO 1783

post on the Illinois, and February 6th they glided out upon the Mississippi, known at the time as the Colbert River.* The canoes floated past the mouth of the Osage (Missouri) and the Ohio, which La Salle it seems failed to identify as the stream discovered by him in 1669, probably because he supposed that river reached the sea through a basin east of the Mississippi.

In February, 1682, the explorers had penetrated southward to the third Chickasaw bluff, and the following month found them in the region of the Arkansas Indians. On the 14th of March, La Salle planted a post upon which he hung the arms of France, as notice to all that the whole Mississippi valley was claimed by that country. Entering the territory of the Natchez Indians, the Frenchmen were impressed by their ways and manner of worship. A peculiar religious caste was found among them, and one of their buildings was dignified with the name of a temple. La Salle slept in their village and again set up the emblem of French authority. The mouth of the Red River was passed in the latter part of March, and on April 6th they saw the Mississippi divide into three channels. The party separated into the same number of divisions, and La Salle led one of them down the western passage. Three days later, they came together again and an interesting ceremony was performed within one of the outlets. The usual column was set up, proclamation was made in the name of the king, and France assumed dominion over the whole watershed of the great stream. The *Voxilla Regis* and *Te Deum* were sung, a notary drew up the record, and the immense stretch took its name in history as Louisiana. A leaden plate, with the facts engraved upon it, was buried at the foot of the columns.

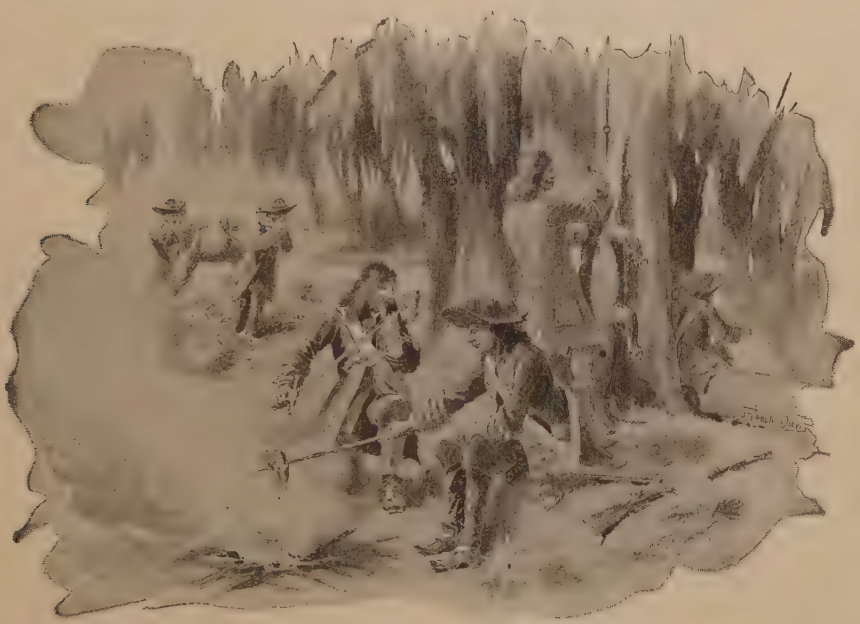
**Immense Area of Louisiana in 1684**

Now observe the enormous area of ancient Louisiana as contrasted with that of the present large State of that name. The boundaries, as fixed in 1684, were the Gulf of Mexico westward to the Rio Grande, thence northwesterly to the vague watershed of what is now known as the Rocky Mountains, with a shadowy line along the sources of the upper Mississippi and its higher tributaries, bounding on the height of land which shut off the valley of the great Lakes until the Appalachians were reached. The line followed these mountains south, kept to the northern limits of Spanish Florida, and then

* So named after the great French statesman, Jean Baptiste Colbert (*kol-bār'*), Louis XIV's minister of state and controller-general. Colbert died at Paris in 1683, in his sixty-fourth year.

turned to the Gulf. It is difficult to conceive the vast extent of this domain. The floods which coursed the great basin drained an area of more than twelve hundred thousand square miles. La Salle was the first Frenchman to reach the mouth of the Mississippi from the north.

The return was begun with gloomy prospects. Food was so scarce that they were glad to eat the flesh of alligators, and the Indians were hostile. Several fights took place, and La Salle was ill for six weeks, during which time no one believed he could recover. When



THE HARDSHIPS OF THE EXPLORERS

the journey was resumed, he was so weak that he could hardly walk. He was anxious to reach Quebec, but upon entering the Illinois country was obliged to stay for some time to protect the missionaries and traders. De la Barre was now governor of New France, and he rewarded La Salle for his discoveries by taking away his forts at Frontenac, on Lake Ontario, and at Starved Rock, on the Illinois River. When La Salle, as full of pluck as ever, landed in France, December 23, 1683, he was bankrupt. The importance of the work done by the intrepid explorer was partly recognized in his native land. When he submitted to the king his scheme for conducting an expe-

dition to the mouths of the Mississippi, it was accepted, and he was treated more liberally by his sovereign than he had asked. His commission authorized him to plant colonies in Louisiana, and to govern the enormous territory from Lake Michigan to the Gulf of Mexico. He was also furnished with one war-ship, the *Joly*, of thirty-six guns, another of six guns, and two smaller craft. He had a force of marines, a hundred soldiers, and nearly three hundred other persons, including women and children.

This little fleet sailed July 24th, but did not leave the island of San Domingo until November 25th. When land was sighted, a month later, it was believed to be Appalachee Bay, three hundred miles east of the Mississippi, when in fact the vessels were a hundred miles west of that river, and in the vicinity of Atchafalaya Bay. Here La Salle anchored and waited for the *Joly*, which he had outsailed. On January 6th, he discovered an opening, which it is believed was Galveston Bay, and landed a few days later on what was probably Matagorda Island. The *Joly* soon appeared, and her captain and La Salle mutually blamed each other, and finally separated. One of the ships was wrecked on a sand-bar, and, as another had been captured by the Spaniards, the *Joly* and a small messenger vessel were the only craft left. The company landed and intrenched a camp, which was a wise precaution, since the Indians attacked them, killed several of the French, and fired the prairie. Disease made ravages, too, and when the captain with the *Joly* sailed for France, March 12, 1685, the colony, which had lost itself, was left to its fate, whatever that might prove to be. Convinced, at last, that he had gone far astray, La Salle set out to search for the mouth of the Mississippi. Before doing so, he built, with the material of the wrecked vessel, Fort St. Louis, on a river a short distance from the head of the bay. The fort was finished in July, 1685, and during the following year and a half two unsuccessful attempts were made to reach the Mississippi by land expeditions eastward and northeastward. When La Salle returned from his second expedition, he found that death and desertion had reduced his company to forty-five souls.

**La Salle's Final Expedition, 1684**

The situation was now so desperate that twenty men were left at Fort St. Louis, while La Salle set out with the remainder on his final search for the Mississippi. Nothing was ever again heard of the garrison that remained behind. In the party under charge of La Salle were his nephew Moranget (*mō-ran-gé*), and a man named Du-

haut (*du-hō'*). Starting in January, 1687, they followed a course mainly northward. The rain fell almost incessantly, compelling them to spend much of their time in camp, where idleness and discontent set them to plotting, a fact of which La Salle seemed to have had no suspicion.

About the middle of March, the explorer found himself within a few miles of a spot on the southern branch of the Trinity River, where, on his previous visit, he had buried a quantity of corn. He sent some of the men to recover it, while he and the remainder of the party stayed behind. Those who went after the corn found it spoiled, but they killed a buffalo and sent back for the horses to take the meat into camp. The nephew of La Salle, while a division of the meat was under way, quarrelled with Duhaut, who shot him, and the company split into two bitter factions. The friends of Duhaut conspired to kill La Salle also, and the opportunity was not long in coming.

**La Salle's Tragic Fate**

The explorer feeling anxious over the delay in the return of the foraging party, set out with one companion to learn the cause. As he drew near the camp, he fired his gun to attract attention. This gave the conspirators time to prepare an ambuscade. When he came within close range, two shots from the tall brakes stretched him lifeless. The body was stripped and left a prey to the wolves. The murder of La Salle did not become known in France until October, 1688. Nothing was done to rescue the miserable remnants of the colony left on the shore of the Gulf. Finally an order was sent to the governor of Canada to arrest the assassins if they appeared in that province, but no one was ever punished for the crime.

The energy shown by La Salle in his explorations was typical of the vigor of the French nation in conquering the American wilderness. Within the half-century following his death, France had made permanent settlements on the Maumee, at Detroit, at the mouth of the St. Joseph, at Green Bay, at Vincennes (*vĭn-senz'*), on the Mississippi at the mouth of the Kaskaskia, on the site of Natchez, and at the head of Biloxi (*bĭl-ox'-ĭ*) Bay, on the Gulf of Mexico. By the middle of the eighteenth century, the French claimed dominion over all the American continent north of the Spanish possessions, excepting the strip along the Atlantic occupied by the English settlements. They were not content even with these possessions: they coveted the whole country and set about to obtain it. The cordon

of fortifications between Montreal and New Orleans were more than sixty in number, and, as the next step, France now prepared to occupy the Ohio Valley. This done, the English provinces would not have a foothold west of the Alleghanies. The steady intrusion of the French alarmed the English, and especially the inhabitants of Virginia and Maryland, who had proposed planting an English colony west of the Alleghanies. The king ordered the governor of Virginia to grant to a company of speculators half a million acres of land, lying to the north of Ohio, between the mouth of the Kanawha and the site of the present city of Pittsburg. The name of the association was The Ohio Land Company, against which no claim for quit-rent was to be made for a period of ten years. The company was required to settle at least one hundred families on the tract, and to build a fort. One of the proprietors was Robert Dinwiddie, of Scotland, surveyor-general for the southern colonies, and afterwards lieutenant-governor of Virginia. The English at that time in America numbered about a million and a half, and the French only one hundred thousand.

**The Ohio Land Company**

By her ancient charter, Virginia claimed all the country between her western borders and Lake Erie, and the formation of the Ohio Company was for the purpose of shutting out intruders. Thomas Lee, Augustine and Lawrence Washington, and other Virginia members of the company, ordered goods sent from London suitable for the Indian trade, and took measures to secure the friendship of the red men within the territory. In order to gain accurate information of the tract where it was evident the first collision would take place, Christopher Gist, one of the most famous scouts and woodmen of his time, was sent into the territory to make a thorough examination, learn all about the Indians, and prepare a chart of the territory. Gist set out from Alexandria, in October, 1750, travelling on horseback. He made his way across the Blue Ridge and the Shenandoah Valley, his horse at times floundering through the deep snow or swimming the icy streams, and finally reached Logstown, where it was intended to hold an Indian council. Gist said he was an ambassador from King George. The chief was cordial, but the warriors looked at their visitor askance. They told him plainly that he would never be allowed to settle on the lands in the Ohio Valley; but Gist was a brave man, and, instead of turning back, pushed forward to the Muskingum, where the Wyandots received him in a friendly spirit. At

MURDER OF LA SALLE IN TEXAS

their village, he found an agent of the Pennsylvanians, who were astir, through fear that the Ohio Company would get a monopoly of trade with the Indians of the northwest. In company with the agent and several traders, Gist visited the Delawares and Shawanoes, both of which tribes expressed good-will towards the English and promised to attend a general council at Logstown.

The next visit was to the powerful confederacy of the Miamis, who made a treaty of peace and alliance with the English. Gist was filled with admiration for the beautiful country and went on almost to the Falls of the Ohio, and into the blue-grass region of Kentucky. He had traversed an enormous extent of territory, and at the end of seven months went back with his information to Lawrence Washington, at Mount Vernon, who was the leading director of the Ohio Company. The great council of the western tribes was not held until June, 1752. Gist was present as the agent of the Ohio Company, and Virginia was represented by several commissioners. The Indians agreed to hold friendly relations with the English, but sturdily refused to recognize their title to lands west of the Alleghanies. They were equally determined with the French. One of the chiefs said: "You English claim all the land on one side of the river and the French all on the other side: where is *our* land?" Gist replied: "The red and white men are subjects of the British king, and all have the same right in taking up and occupying the land in accordance with the laws he has made."

**Council of the Western Tribes, 1752**

The Ohio Company pressed its work with vigor. Surveyors were sent into the country to prepare it for settlement, and the English traders penetrated further and further and built up a trade with the Indians. The French became alarmed, for they saw in this movement a proof of their waning influence with the tribes and a menace to their fortified line extending from the St. Lawrence to the Gulf of Mexico. So in 1753 they seized and imprisoned a number of English traders and surveyors and sent more than a thousand soldiers to build forts between Lake Erie and the headwaters of the Alleghany. It is worth noting that one of these stood on the present site of Erie, then known as Presque Isle (*pres-keel'*), on the southern shore of the lake of that name; another, now Waterford, was Le Bœuf (*leh-bŭf'*), and a third was at the junction of French Creek and the Alleghany River, where now is the town of Franklin. This action gave offence to the Ohio Company, and since its lands lay within the

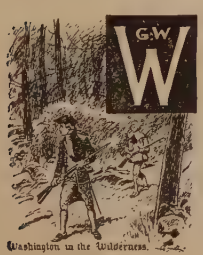
jurisdiction of Virginia, that province felt it to be her duty to defend the rights of the company. The governors of Virginia and Pennsylvania had been ordered from England to drive out the French intruders, by force of arms if necessary, for the feeling in both provinces, especially in Virginia, which was most directly interested, was deep. Dinwiddie, a leading director of the Ohio Company, was now governor of Virginia.* He was an able man, and decided, before taking extreme measures, to send a protest to the French commander, M. de St. Pierre (*săn pē-air'*), who was at Le Bœuf. So he prepared a strong remonstrance against the intrusion of the French into English or Virginian territory, and then, without hesitation, picked out the man to carry the letter, through the five hundred miles of wilderness, to the distant French post.

* Robert Dinwiddie (1690-1770), Crown Governor of Virginia from 1752 to 1758, figures interestingly in history from his friendly regard for the youthful Washington, at the outset of the latter's career, and whom he intrusted with his first mission, half military, half diplomatic, to the commander of the French posts on the Ohio. Dinwiddie, who was a Scotchman of rather irascible temper, was for a time a civil servant of the Crown in the West Indies, where he held a post in the Imperial Customs. In 1752, he was appointed Lieutenant-Governor of Virginia, and one of his earliest acts, after organizing the militia of the colony into districts, was to appoint Washington, then in his twenty-first year, to the command of one of them, with the rank of major. During his régime, he was active in inciting the colony to resist French encroachments on the western frontier, in which Washington conspicuously figured. When the troubles increased, he fell to wrangling with the Colonial Assembly, and when the latter retorted, and almost threatened impeachment, he returned to England in 1758, and died there twelve years later. Some years before his departure, the governor promoted Washington to the rank of lieutenant-colonel; but as the colonial levies were to be placed under royal officers, and no native officer was to hold a rank higher than that of captain, Washington resigned, though he afterwards served under Braddock as a volunteer aide-de-camp.

## CHAPTER XXIII

### *YOUNG WASHINGTON'S JOURNEY THROUGH THE WILDERNESS*

[*Authorities:* The present chapter brings us to the fateful era when, as it has been said, "the firing of a gun in the woods of North America brought on a conflict which drenched Europe in blood." The conflict is known as the "Seven Years' War."* Hostilities between the two nations were precipitated in the valley of the Ohio by the encroachment of the English. In the collision between the two races, the youthful Washington, it will be seen, figures and begins to play his great rôle in the history of the Anglo-American colonies. The expedition on which he now sets forth brought the young officer into collision with Jumonville, and a small French command, which he partly killed, and partly took captive, a proceeding so precipitate as to incite the French to further hostilities, and which led to a long and bitter controversy. In the encounter, Washington's personal bravery was early exemplified, though the consequences of the collision were more far-reaching than either he or the colonies at the time thought possible. The present and next following chapter will apprise the reader of what occurred. The authorities for the period, besides Bancroft's and Hildreth's histories, and Winsor's "Narrative and Critical History," are Hart's "Formation of the Union," Frothingham's "Rise of the Republic," Fiske's "The American Revolution," the Canadian histories of Garneau and Kingsford, the English histories of Green and Lecky, and the biographies of Washington, by Sparks, H. C. Lodge, and Washington Irving.]




WE have said that Governor Dinwiddie had no hesitation in selecting the right man to perform the delicate and dangerous duty he had in view. The person whom he had selected was about twenty-one years old, six feet two inches in height, and the swiftest runner, the longest thrower, the best wrestler, the most skilful horseman, the strongest swimmer, and the finest athlete in all the country round. Besides these striking physical traits, he was truthful, high-

* During the eight years' peace with France that followed the Treaty of Aix-la-Cha-

minded, a fine soldier and an experienced surveyor, and withal the soul of honor, a person, in short, who from his earliest boyhood lived in accordance with the Golden Rule.

Having related this much, there can hardly be any need of naming the person entrusted with the commission. His honored name, George Washington, stands on the bead-roll of his country. Washington was born in a large, old-fashioned house in Westmoreland county, Virginia, February 22, 1732. Sometimes the date is given as February 11, O. S. This is in accordance with the Old Style of reckoning. Towards the close of the last century, the astronomers saw that in order to record time as it should be recorded, it was necessary to add eleven days to the date then current, because we were drifting behindhand. This was done, the method being referred to as N. S. or New Style. Then perfectly to adjust matters it was decided that in every period of four hundred years, three leap years should be omitted. Thus A.D. 1900 is not a leap year; A.D. 2000 will be, and then the even centuries will not be leap years until A.D. 2400 comes round. All the even centuries that are divisible by 400 are leap years and the others are not.

**Old and New Styles of Computing Time**

Now, if any American youths happened to be born February 29,

pelle, there had been considerable ill-feeling, as is shown in the present chapter, between the English and French colonists in America, and in distant India, which led, in 1756, to a renewal of hostilities between the two countries, on England's taking the side of Prussia in the Seven Years' War. This war had broken out between Frederick the Great and a confederacy of European Powers, consisting mainly of Austria, Russia, Spain, and France, the object of the confederacy being to crush the growing power of Frederick and to partition Prussia. Between England and France, aside from European complications, there was cause enough for war, in the desire of both nations to settle who should be the masters of India and North America. On the latter continent, France, as we have seen, colonized Canada and Louisiana, while England, as we already know, had established colonies along that part of the Atlantic coast which separated the French settlements. To connect the latter and to exclude England from the great fur trade of the interior, France began to erect a series of military posts from the Niagara River to the mouth of the Mississippi. This action was naturally resented by Britain and her American colonies, and, in 1755, the conflict began, as we shall discover in the chapter following this, by an attack on the French forts in the Ohio Valley. The English, as we shall find, however, were at first not successful, and their general, Braddock, was in the following year mortally wounded and his troops defeated while marching to attack Fort Du Quesne. From the disastrous consequences of this defeat, the English and colonial troops were in large measure saved by the tactics of young Washington, who now comes upon the scene and enters upon his notable career. Subsequent successes in other parts of the Continent atoned for the disaster, and three years later came the fall of French dominion in the New World, and, within the same period, the supremacy of English arms was asserted in India.

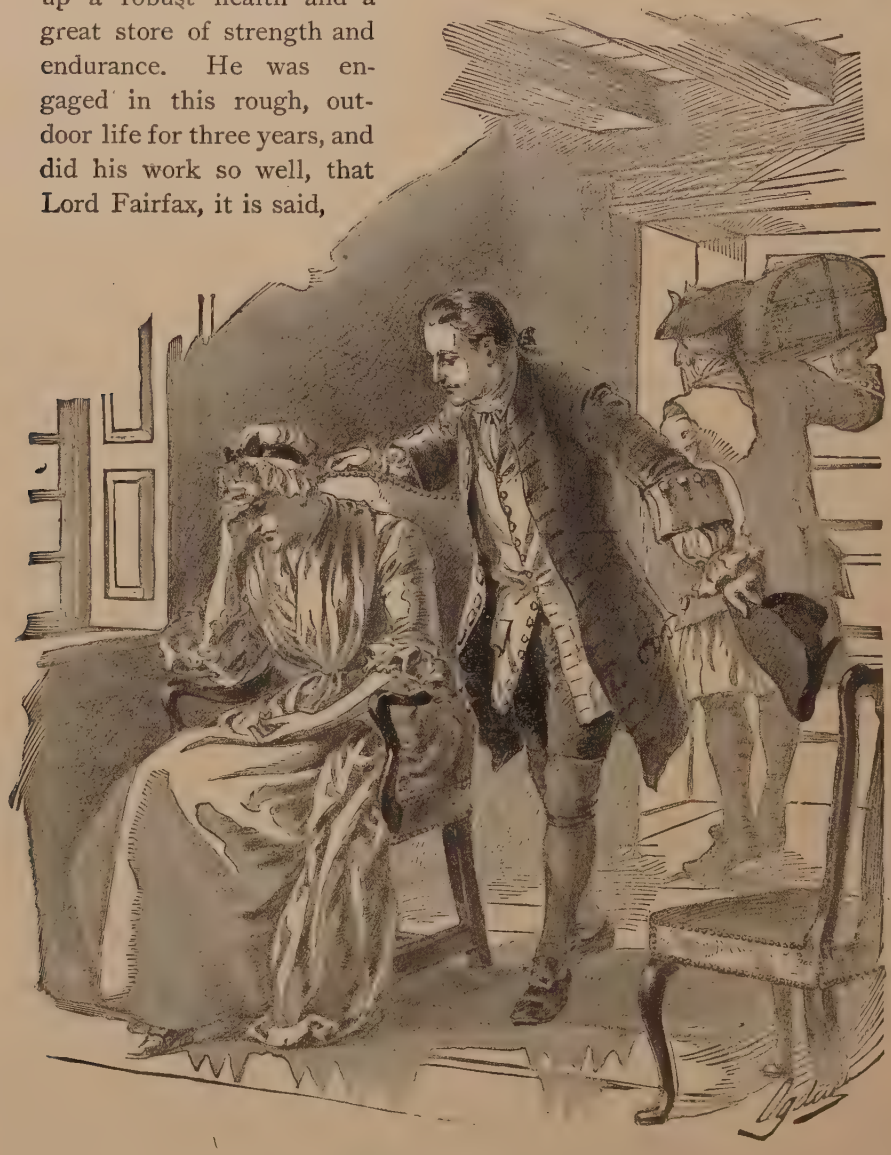
1896, they will have to wait eight years before reaching their second birthday, but no doubt their parents will see that they are not deprived for so long of a celebration of the anniversary of their birth. George Washington was a diligent student at school, though he never attended any college, and he cannot be said ever to have become a profound scholar. He was popular with his classmates, since he not only surpassed them all in athletic sports, but always "played fair." He never deceived another, or took a wrong or questionable advantage of any one. He was so honest in this respect, that when the other boys got into a dispute they appealed to him to decide it, and every one was satisfied, for whatever he said was right. The game of base-ball was unknown in those days, therefore one cannot be quite sure that there might not have been a situation in which the youth could be placed where his decisions would not always have given satisfaction.

**Washington's Boyhood**

Young Washington had a liking for military matters. His brother Lawrence, being the elder, was sent to England to be educated and became an officer in the British army. It kindled George's ardor when he looked at his handsome brother in his fine uniform, and he drilled his playmates, with their wooden guns, and fought many sham battles, with as much earnestness as if they were real soldiers. Lawrence was proud of George because he was manly and brave, and, moreover, was clean in his words and actions. He saw what a splendid midshipman he would make, and advised him to become one. Nothing could have suited the younger brother better, and he made ready to go to sea. The expression on his mother's face, however, told the son that something troubled her, and when he tenderly asked the cause she said she could not bear the thought of his leaving her. "Then I shall *not* go," said George, glad that it was in his power to bring back the sunshine to the face that was dearer to him than all the world beside. The reader may be sure that the mother was gratified at this evidence of filial consideration, for George's father had died when the boy was only eleven years old, and he was left in charge of the noble woman, who lived to see her son become the greatest man ever born in America. One cannot help thinking how different would have been the history of our country if Washington had not cared for his mother and had become a midshipman in the British navy. George was so skilful a surveyor that when he was but sixteen years old, Lord Fairfax, who was very

**His Dutifulness**

fond of the lad, hired him to survey an immense area of mountainous wilderness. The youth traversed tracts of the Virginia solitudes, climbing rugged hills, swimming his horse through turbid torrents, sleeping in the open woods beside his lonely camp-fire, shooting a wild turkey or deer when in need of food, and building up a robust health and a great store of strength and endurance. He was engaged in this rough, out-door life for three years, and did his work so well, that Lord Fairfax, it is said,



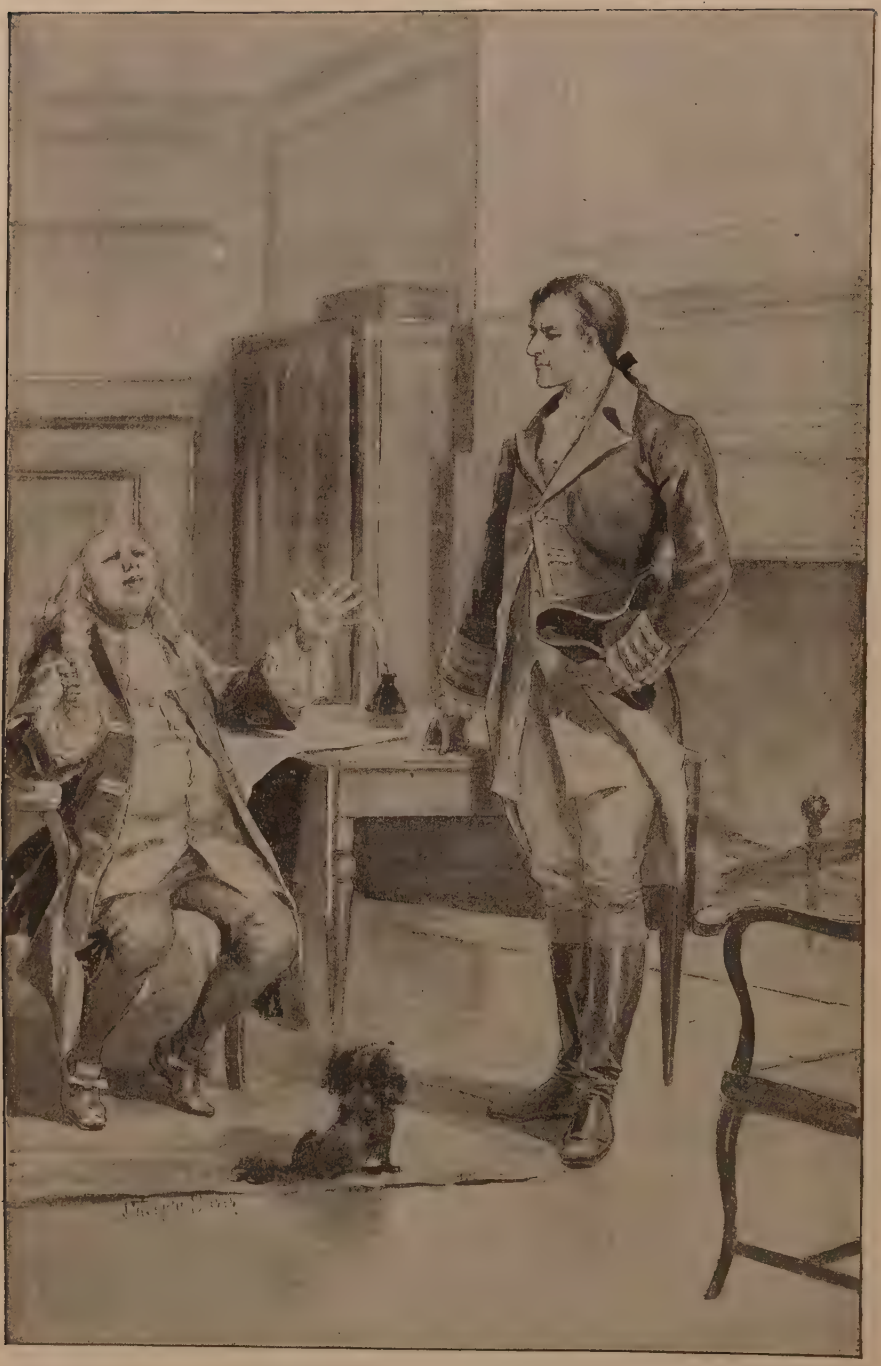
WASHINGTON AND HIS MOTHER

paid him very liberally for his services. In many cases the young man's pay amounted to twenty dollars a day.

At nineteen years of age Washington was made a major of militia. He received lessons in military drill from a veteran swordsman, and was so well liked that when the change in the militia organization of Virginia took place, and it became necessary to relieve most of the officers, Washington was kept in command of one of the military districts. So Governor Dinwiddie, one day in October, 1753, sent a request to Major Washington to call at his office, at Williamsburg, which was then the capital of Virginia. The young officer obeyed with alacrity. The meeting in the governor's plainly furnished office was an interesting one. Dinwiddie was more than three-score years old, short, stout, with a bald head, and very nervous and fidgety in his manner. He looked admiringly at the stalwart Virginian, towering above him, with his florid face, his noble mien, and fine physique, and explained the delicate mission which he wished to intrust to him. Washington replied that he would be ready to set out as soon as the letter to the French commander should be placed in his hands.

**His Early Mission**

Now the reader must not suppose that all Washington had to do was to carry the governor's letter to the French post, five hundred miles away, and bring back the officer's reply. That of itself was a great task, but much more was required of him. He was to proceed to Logstown, on the right bank of the Ohio, fourteen miles below the site of Pittsburg, bring together the leading Indian chiefs in that region, explain to them the purpose of his visit, and ask them to give him an escort to the headquarters of the French commander, to whom the governor's letter was to be handed, and from whom a reply was to be brought; learn, if possible, the number of French troops that had crossed the lake; the number and strength of the enemy's forts, their location, and, in brief, to gather all the information possible about the doings and intentions of the French in the region. Washington left Williamsburg, October 31st, 1753. His companions were John Davidson, Indian interpreter, Jacob Van Braam, who spoke French, Christopher Gist, the hunter, who acted as guide, and four other men, two of whom were Indian traders. They took with them extra horses, tents, and baggage. At the mouth of Will's Creek, now the Cumberland, Maryland, they bade good-by to civilization and climbed over the Alleghany Mountains, which, early as it was in the season, were already covered with snow.



COPYRIGHT 1896,

FROM THE ORIGINAL DRAWING BY J. STEEPLE DAVIS

WASHINGTON AND GOVERNOR DINWIDDIE

What might seem, during its early stages, a pleasant excursion was accompanied by the severest hardships. The valley streams were overflowing, and such as could not be waded, were crossed on treacherous rafts, which often broke apart and plunged the men into the chilling waters. The month of November was nearly gone when they arrived at the Forks of the Ohio, where Pittsburg now stands. There they rested a few days and then made their way to Logstown. They had now reached a point within one hundred and twenty miles of the headquarters of M. de St. Pierre, the French commander.

**Chief Half-King**

Among the Indians gathered at Logstown was a chief named Half-King, who had protested against the invasion of his country by the French, but was thrust aside. He was a strong friend of the English under the ingenuous belief that they came merely to establish trade, when in truth their purpose was the same as that of the French. Half-King, with two other chiefs and a trained warrior, agreed to escort the eight Virginians to the French headquarters. Still meeting all manner of hardships and perils, the party early in December reached Fort Venango (now Franklin), which was a French outpost in charge of M. Joncaire (*jon-kār'*). He received the white men with courtesy, but tried to persuade, without success, the Indians to desert them. Ascending the French Creek, the party reached Fort Le Bœuf, where the French commandant was found. He was a polite old soldier, who treated his visitors with courtesy, entertaining them for four days, at the end of which he handed his sealed reply to Washington. Meanwhile, the young Virginian had kept his eyes and ears open and obtained valuable information. Expressing his thanks to M. de St. Pierre for his hospitality, Washington and his companions set out on their return journey to Williamsburg.

**Meeting with the French Commander**

It was now the depth of winter, and the return was a great deal harder than had been the coming. The weather became intensely cold, and the snow in many places was several feet deep. When the party reached Venango, the pack-horses were so exhausted that they gave out. Washington and Gist dismounted, and turned over their animals to assist in carrying the baggage. Then each strapped a few articles on his back, and these two hardy fellows bade their friends good-by and pressed forward on foot through the sleet and snow and fearful cold. One needed to have rugged health and great endurance to undergo the experience that was theirs day after day and night after night. The soft, crunching snow often reached

above their knees, and the heavy boots were at times saturated with the rain and slush. The ice which bore them for some distance from shore sometimes gave away further out and let them sink to their armpits in the current rushing beneath. In the natural openings or clearings, the gale blinded them with the whirling snow. Many a time, on rising in the morning, their wet clothing was frozen to their bodies. Not one man in a thousand could have undergone what young Washington and the veteran Gist passed through. But they bravely pushed on until they stood on the bank of the Alleghany River, whose swollen current was filled with masses of rushing ice. There was only one way of crossing the stream, which was by means of a raft. They spent the day in putting it together, and shoved out from shore as the wintry night was closing in. They were instantly in danger of having the structure knocked to fragments. Washington was plying a pole with all his strength, when the action of the ice flung him into water a dozen feet deep. On his back was his pack, with his rifle strapped to it, and his clothing was thick and cumbrous, so that, despite his great power and skill, he might have been drowned had he not seized one of the logs of the raft that was knocked apart by the force of the current. The men were flung upon a small island, where they lay all night, without an ember of fire, or a particle of food, and half-frozen to death. Washington suffered no injury, but most of Gist's fingers and toes were frozen. This island, near Lawrenceville, Pennsylvania, is still known as Washington's Island. In the morning the surface of the river was solid, and the two walked on it to the mainland.

**The Return Journey**

Encountering an Indian, they pressed him into their service as guide. He was a treacherous rogue, who was so very friendly at first that the white men became suspicious of him. He asked Washington to allow him to carry his gun, but the young Virginian was prudent enough to keep it in his own hands. One afternoon the Indian deliberately raised his rifle and fired at Washington, when barely fifty feet distant, but missed him. Gist leaped upon the savage, flung him to the earth, and would have killed him had not Washington interfered. He was allowed to go, and, fearful that he would lead a party in pursuit, the two travelled all night. Nothing more, however, was seen or heard of the fellow. On the 16th of January, 1754, Washington and Gist reached Williamsburg, and the reply of St. Pierre was placed in the hands of Governor Dinwiddie

# CHAPTER XXIV

## *CAMPAIGN OF 1755*

[*Authorities:* The collision between the Virginia frontiersmen and the intruding French in the Ohio Valley led to the despatch of European troops by the mother nations of both belligerents, and to a more serious test of strength, first of all in the region west of the Alleghanies. In 1754, England sent out a couple of regiments, under General Braddock, to co-operate with the Colonial forces in occupying the debatable territory, and in keeping the French in check. Military reinforcements were also sent out by France, under Baron Dieskau, a Dutch general in the French service, accompanied by a new governor, the Marquis de Vaudreuil. At a meeting of the English Colonial governors, it was decided to attack the French posts on the Ohio, on the Niagara River, on Lake Champlain, and at Beauséjour, in Acadia. The present chapter relates the incidents connected with the various projects, together with some account of the expulsion of the French neutrals from Acadia—a lamentable war necessity of the period. Besides the authorities quoted at the head of the previous chapter, the reader will do well to refer to the following supplementary works as throwing further light upon the military operations of the year, and the tragedy in Nova Scotia: Parkman's "Wolfe and Montcalm," Hannay's "Acadia," Richard's "Acadia," Murdoch's, and Judge Haliburton's "Nova Scotia."]

THE reply of St. Pierre was what might have been expected. Being a soldier, who knew his duty, he wrote that it did not become him to discuss civil matters; that Dinwiddie's letter should have been sent to the Marquis Du Quesne (*dōō-kāne'*), governor of Canada, under whose orders St. Pierre was acting, and which required him to remain where he was and follow his instructions. Dinwiddie laid this letter before his council, and it was decided not to wait for the legislature to meet, the members of which gave little thought to the impending danger. The instructions sent from England authorized

PERIOD III
ENGLAND AND FRANCE IN AMERICA 1758 TO 1783

the governor to call for the enlistment of two hundred men to proceed to the Ohio River and build two forts, before the French could forestall them. Washington was commissioned a lieutenant-colonel and given command of the troops to be raised.

While the enlistment was under way, the legislature came together and issued an appeal to the other colonies to assist Virginia in the work she had begun. All save North Carolina were backward in answering the appeal, for there was much disputation between the royal governors and colonial assemblies over the respective rights of the Americans and of parliament. The Virginia House of Burgesses voted £10,000 towards fitting out an expedition and authorized the raising of a regiment of six companies. Joshua Fry, a gentleman of English birth, was appointed colonel, with Washington as his assistant. A bounty was offered of two hundred thousand acres of land on the Ohio, to be divided among the soldiers who enlisted, and Alexandria was fixed upon as the rallying-place of the volunteers. It was on the recommendation of Washington that the Forks of the Ohio (the site of Pittsburg) were selected as a point for the fort to be erected. His recent visit had shown him the natural strength of the place.

**Virginia's Aggressive Measures**

The precious days were passing, and Washington was ordered to march from Alexandria with the advance of the military force and aid Captain Trent, who had already gone thither, to complete the fortification, and "drive away, capture, or kill" all who interfered with the English settlement of the country. Washington left Alexandria in April and arrived at Will's Creek (now known as the Cumberland) on the 20th. While on the road a strange message reached him. It was from his old friend, Chief Half-King, who notified him that the French had lately embarked at Venango, on the Alleghany, and the Indians were in a state of consternation. "Come to our help as soon as you can," besought Half-King, "or we are lost." Washington sent back word by the messenger that he was on his way to help him and would lose no time in doing so. Before reaching Will's Creek, another Indian runner met Washington with the news that the French were at the Forks. The report was confirmed the following day in a startling manner, when one of Trent's men brought word that a thousand French soldiers, with eighteen cannon, three hundred canoes, and sixty bateaux, had descended the Alleghany and taken possession of the partly finished fort. There was some

**Chief Half-King's Message**

exaggeration in this report, but there was no doubt that the French had occupied the commanding position at the Forks of the Ohio. They speedily completed the fort and

THE MESSAGE FROM CHIEF HALF-KING

named it Du Quesne, in compliment to the then governor of Canada.

Without waiting for Colonel Fry, Washington pressed on with

his small force, and, after much labor, arrived late in May within forty miles of Du Quesne, at which point a warning came from Half-King that the French had prepared an ambush for the destruction of the Virginians. The rain was falling in torrents and the night was intensely dark; but with forty picked men, Washington tramped six miles through the forest to Half-King's camp, where he formed a plan with the friendly Mingo to surprise the French. The Indians and Virginians advanced in single file, along parallel lines, until at daybreak they discovered the ambuscade. Washington was at the head of his men, with a musket in his grasp. The instant he saw the Frenchmen, he discharged his gun at them and gave the order to his men to fire. Hence, it came about that the first hostile shot in the French and Indian War was fired by Washington.

**First Conflict in the French and Indian War**

Although the attack was a surprise to the French, they fought with great spirit. When Jumonville (*zhōō-mon-veel'*), their commander, and about a dozen of his men were killed, the conflict was ended. Only one Virginian lost his life, and twenty-two Frenchmen were taken prisoners. The news of the fight made a deep impression throughout the colonies as well as in England and France. Few failed to see, despite its slight nature, the great struggle which it made inevitable and which would never cease until either France or England became master of the New World. Washington fell back to the stockaded fort he had hastily thrown together under the name of Fort Necessity; Colonel Fry died at Will's Creek, and Washington took the chief command. Reinforcements had been promised and were said to be on the way, but only a few soldiers from South Carolina arrived. Half-King and forty other Indians brought their families to the fort, and the care of them became a great burden to Washington. His force, in all, numbered barely four hundred, but weak as it was he marched with it against Fort Du Quesne. On the road he received news that M. de Villiers, brother of Jumonville, was advancing against him with six hundred soldiers and a thousand Indians. Washington thereupon fell back on Fort Necessity, which was attacked July 3d. Though a severe rain-storm prevailed, the assault was maintained without cessation for ten hours, and the loss of life on both sides was considerable.

The French had so far gained the advantage, but despite that fact De Villiers proposed a parley. Washington's force was so much in-

COPYRIGHT 1898.

WASHINGTON'S FIRST VICTORY

FROM THE ORIGINAL DRAWING BY J. STEEPLE DAVIS

ferior that he saw he was certain to be defeated; hence, when the Frenchmen offered honorable terms they were accepted. The Virginian agreed to surrender the fort, on the condition that he and his men should withdraw from the stockade with the honors of war. He also agreed to restore the prisoners taken in the engagement with Jumonville, and to give a pledge not to erect any fort or post west of the mountains for the space of one year. It is noteworthy that this surrender took place on the 4th of July. All its terms were observed by both parties, and Fort Necessity was destroyed.

**Surrender of Fort Necessity**

Before this time, the need for joint action on the part of the colonies was so evident that a convention was called at Albany on the 19th of June, 1754. Twenty-five delegates, representing every colony north of the Potomac, appeared, including representatives also from the Iroquois Confederacy or Six Nation Indians. The last-named step was a wise one, for those Indians were growing restless through the intrigues of French agents, and there was danger of their becoming enemies of the English. The Colonial governors explained to the British government its action in inviting the various Colonial assemblies and the leaders of the Six Nations to the convention which assembled in Albany.

The management of the Six Nations was a delicate task. They were at this time inclined to support the French, and made no secret of their preference. James De Lancey, acting-governor of New York, was chairman, and was authorized to represent Virginia, while the famous philosopher, Benjamin Franklin, was the most prominent member of the convention. By the exercise of great tact, the Iroquois chiefs were won over, and, with some reluctance, they signed a treaty pledging themselves to support the English in the impending war with the French. A far-reaching step was taken by this convention—one that foreshadowed the great struggle that was to come twenty years later. The Massachusetts delegation went to Albany with the question of a union of the thirteen colonies for mutual defence. It was favorably received, and a committee, consisting of one delegate from each colony represented, was named to prepare a draft of a Federal Constitution. Franklin was the member from Pennsylvania, and when the committee met, that wise man had his scheme ready, for he saw, more clearly than any other person, the urgent and increasing need of the country.

**The Albany Congress, 1754**

Franklin's plan made Philadelphia the capital of the colonial

league, with a governor-general appointed and supported by the crown of England, while the legislative authority was vested in Congress, whose members were to be chosen every three years by the general assemblies of the respective provinces. The ratio of representation was to be proportioned to the contribution of each colony to the general government, no one colony being allowed more than seven or less than two representatives. The governor was to appoint all military officers, and to have the power of vetoing objectionable legislation. To Congress was given the appointment of all civil officers, the raising of troops, the levying of taxes, the superintendence of affairs, the regulation of commerce, and the general duties of government. Congress was to meet annually, choose its own officers, and remain in session not longer than six weeks.

**The Plan of Union**

It will give the reader an idea of the relative strength of the colonies at this time to name the number of representatives to which each was entitled by Franklin's scheme. They were: Massachussetts Bay, 7; Virginia, 7; Pennsylvania, 6; Connecticut, 5; Maryland, North Carolina, South Carolina, and New York, each 4; New Jersey, 3; New Hampshire and Rhode Island, each 2; Georgia, at this time was so in significant a province that she was not included in the scheme. "The Plan of Union," after earnest debate, was adopted by the Congress at Albany, the Connecticut delegates alone opposing its adoption. It was then submitted to the Lords of Trades and Plantations in England. That body disapproved of the measure, and declined to lay it before the king. The colonies objected to the veto feature. So it turned out that the attempt to please the king and the people resulted in a failure to please either.

**General Braddock**

England, however, saw that she must recover the ground already lost and maintain her honor against her old and aggressive rival. France was sending reinforcements to America, and strengthening her defences at Crown Point and Fort Niagara. She was exultant over her success in western Pennsylvania, and England decided to create a new colony in that section. There was as yet no declaration of war between the two nations, who were continually assuring each other of their pacific intentions and their profound esteem, while making vigorous preparations the while for the conflict that all saw was coming. General Edward Braddock,* a distinguished officer,

* Major-General Edward Braddock [1695–1755], son of a general in the British army, was born in Perthshire, Scotland, and in 1710 became an ensign in the Coldstream

PERIOD III
ENGLAND AND FRANCE IN AMERICA 1758 TO 1783

was recalled from Ireland, appointed commander-in-chief of the British forces in America and was sent to Virginia with two regiments of regular troops. France at the same time despatched three thousand soldiers to Canada.

In obedience to orders, Braddock, on arriving, called a council of colonial governors, who met him at Alexandria, April 14, 1755. The decision reached was that since there had been no declaration of war, Canada should not be invaded, but three separate plans of campaign were agreed upon.

General Braddock, the commander-in-chief, was to proceed against Fort Du Quesne, capture the place, and expel the French from the Ohio valley. Governor Shirley, of Massachusetts, was to equip a regiment and attack Fort Niagara, at the mouth of the Niagara River, and Fort Frontenac at the foot of Lake Ontario. Colonel William Johnson, the government superintendent of Indian affairs among the Six Nations, was to enroll a force of volunteers and Mohawks, and with them capture Crown Point, on Lake Champlain.

---

Guards. Thirty-five years later, while on duty at Gibraltar, he attained to a lieutenant-colonelcy, and for a time saw active service in Holland. In 1754 he became a major-general, and through the interest of the Duke of Cumberland he was appointed to a command in America. Arriving in Virginia with Commodore Keppel's fleet, in February of the following year, he set out against Fort Du Quesne with a large force, Colonel George Washington accompanying him as one of his aides-de-camp. After many delays, the expedition reached Little Meadows, whence Braddock pushed on with twelve hundred picked troops, regulars and provincials, for the Monongahela River, which was reached on the 8th of July. On the following day, heedless of Washington's caution against too precipitate a movement and an exposed order of march, the head of the column encountered an ambuscade of French and Indians in the dense woods within eight miles of Fort Du Quesne. Familiar with Indian fighting, the Virginian levies discreetly sought shelter, but Braddock unwisely marshalled his men in platoons and thus exposed them to so hot a fire that, after a time, they broke and fled. Braddock strove bravely to re-form his men, but without success, while he himself was struck down by a bullet and was carried off the field. Disorder now became a rout, and the whole column fell back upon Great Meadows, nearly sixty miles in the rear. Here, on Sunday the 13th, Braddock died and was hastily interred, the small remnant of the expedition returning to Virginia, covered in its retreat by Washington. The failure and rout of the expedition naturally provoked much comment, of a deprecatory kind, on Braddock's manner and methods. There was no impeachment of his courage, but only of inexperience of military tactics in the backwoods, and an overweening confidence in his "regulars" and in himself. Franklin rightly says of him: "He was, I think, a brave man, and might have made a good figure in some European war, but he had too much self-confidence, and had too high an idea of the validity of European troops, and too low an one of Americans and Indians." See Winthrop Sargent's monograph on Braddock, Vol. V., "Memoirs of Historical Society of Pennsylvania (Philadelphia, 1856), Montcalm's "Wolfe and Montcalm," and an illustrated article on Colonel Washington, by Woodrow Wilson, in *Harper's Magazine*, March, 1896.

WASHINGTON'S ATTACK ON THE FRENCH IN THE RAVINE.

GENERAL EDWARD BRADDOCK

**The Campaign in Nova Scotia**

A fourth campaign was in progress at that time in Nova Scotia, which it was agreed should be pressed, until the French were driven from the province. Time was important, and none of it was lost in pushing on these varied and aggressive schemes. Three thousand New England troops sailed from Boston, May 20, 1755, under command of General John Winslow, a great-grandson of Edward Winslow, who came over in the *Mayflower*. Landing near the head of the Bay of Fundy, they were joined by Colonel Monckton and a force of regulars. There were only two fortified French posts in the province, both on the neck of land uniting Nova Scotia and New Brunswick. Beauséjour (*bō'-zay-joor*), the principal one, stood at the head of Chignecto Bay, while the other, Gaspereaux, was on the north side of the neck. The French commander had no suspicion of his danger until the English fleet appeared. The landing was made June 3d, and the siege of the fort (Beauséjour) was begun the following day. No effective resistance was offered, and the fort, with the whole peninsula, passed into the possession of the English before the close of the month. The French soldiers were sent to Louisbourg, and the Aca-

PERIOD III — ENGLAND AND FRANCE IN AMERICA 1758 TO 1783

dians were granted an amnesty, owing to their being forced into the French service.

Now, it will be recalled, that the province of Acadia, or Nova Scotia, was ceded to England by France by the treaty of Utrecht, in 1713, and this invasion and conquest of it by the English has a curious look; but it was, in fact, still a French province, whose population (almost wholly French-speaking) numbered sixteen thousand. It was deemed a necessary war measure that this colony should be crushed. Another reason for this action by the English colonial authorities was this, that the French—"neutrals," they were called—incited by their kinsmen at Louisbourg and Quebec, and especially by a meddlesome priest named La Loutre, constantly violated their neutrality by engaging in hostile acts against the English-speaking minority, until forbearance was no longer a virtue.

The conquest having been made, and the French population continuing not only more numerous than the English, but becoming increasingly hostile, the condition of affairs grew intolerable, and decisive measures became a necessity. After fully considering the grave situation, the chief-justice of the province (Belcher) and the British admiral (Boscawen) agreed with Governor Lawrence that the only effectual, though painful, remedy was to drive the whole French population out of the country. The scenes which followed this cruel but politic decision are among the most pathetic in history. First, an oath of allegiance was prescribed which might necessitate the neutrals fighting against their own countrymen, though afterwards a modified formula was framed. By advice of the priests, the ignorant and secretly hostile people refused the oath, though they declared their loyalty to their conquerors. When their boats and firearms were taken from them, many became so terrified that they offered to take the oath. They were answered that it was then too late.

**Expulsion of the Acadians, 1755**

The country was filled with the smoke of burning dwellings; the peaceful hamlets were laid waste, and the helpless inhabitants driven into the larger towns along the seaboard. By proclamation all the people were ordered to assemble on the 5th of September, 1755, in their respective villages. At Grand Pré (*prā*) near Minas Basin, in the Bay of Fundy, four hundred and eighteen men presented themselves and were marched into church. The doors were closed and guarded, and then General Winslow, commander of the New Eng

EXILE OF THE ACADIANS.

land troops, rose and read the royal proclamation, which told the Acadians that their lands, tenements, cattle, and live stock were forfeited to the Crown, with all their effects, except their money and household goods. They were ordered to make ready at once to leave the country. From Grand Pré alone were driven nearly two thousand souls, including the helpless, the sick, and the aged. These and

THE DEPORTATION OF THE ACADIANS

five thousand more broken-hearted French Acadians were distributed among the different colonies. They were peremptorily ordered by the soldiery into the waiting boats, and as the weeping victims turned to take a last look at their loved homes, they saw through their streaming tears their dwellings in flames. A land of fertility and beauty became the abode of woe and desolation. The decree which enforced, and the circumstances which called for, the expulsion of the Acadians have been variously commented on by historians, most of them agreeing that, however deplorable the act, it had become a

necessity of the situation. Longfellow, in his poem "Evangeline," tells the story from the sentimental rather than from the strictly historic point of view, and with a poet's license as well as with a heart of pity.

Meanwhile, General Braddock's campaign in the Ohio valley had begun and ended. He assembled his forces at Alexandria, and Colonel Washington, by invitation, joined the expedition, but only as a volunteer. The whole force, including regulars and provincials (about equally divided), was two thousand men. General Braddock was a quick-tempered, conceited man, very overbearing, harsh in his manner, though resolute and brave. When he looked at the provincials, he laughed with contempt. Washington, who was always guarded in his expressions, wrote of him: "He is incapable of arguing without warmth, or giving up any point he asserts, be it ever so incompatible with reason or common-sense." From the first everything seemed to go wrong with the ill-fated expedition. The Virginia contractors failed to send the necessary provisions, or transportation for the material of war. When the troops were well on the march, they received their supplies through the activity of Franklin. The army left Fort Cumberland on the last day of May and had a march before it of one hundred and thirty miles to reach Fort Du Quesne. The column was strung out for a distance of four miles, Sir Peter Halket leading the advance, with five hundred picked men, and Braddock following with the main body. The progress was so slow that the French had plenty of time in which to prepare for attack. Washington could not repress his impatience, and it was through his own urgency that more vigor was put into the movement. The provincials were under his charge, but their eagerness was checked by the regulars.

**Braddock's disastrous Campaign, 1755**

On the 8th of July the advance reached the forks of the Monongahela (*mō-nŏn-gă-hē'-lă*) and Youghiogheny (*yŏ'-hŏ-gā'-nē*) rivers, where they rested until the following morning. Some twelve miles now lay between them and Fort Du Quesne. The supports were several miles to the rear, and Halket, alarmed at the carelessness of his superior officer, begged him to be more careful, since they had a vigilant foe in their front who was sure to seize any chance presented. Washington knowing the danger of advancing in solid platoons, as if against a civilized foe, urged Braddock to dispose his army in open order. The British commander turned angrily on

COPYRIGHT 1896,

FROM THE ORIGINAL DRAWING BY H. A. OGDEN

THE BRADDOCK MASSACRE

him. "What! do you, a provincial colonel, presume to teach a British general how to fight?" Washington bit his lip and held his peace, but his heart was heavy, for he felt the shadow of impending danger closing around them.

The army recrossed the Monongahela to the north side, a little distance above the confluence of Turtle Creek. Lieutenant-Colonel Thomas Gage led the advance with a detachment of three hundred and fifty men, accompanied by a working party of two hundred and fifty, with guides and flanking parties. They entered a road hardly more than a dozen feet wide, and enclosed by a dense undergrowth. It was the very place which an Indian foe would select for an ambuscade. Suddenly the gorge was lit up by a burst of flame, and the air resounded with the crash of musketry and the war-cries of the savages, who were on every side. From behind trees, rocks, and knolls of ground, flashed the deadly guns, and the gloom was deepened by the clouds of arrows. The English troops were caught at a hopeless disadvantage.

**The Braddock Massacre**

The attacking force consisted of three hundred French and Canadians, and between six and seven hundred Indians. At the first return fire of the English, de Beaujeau (*bō-zhō'*), one of the French leaders, was killed. The vanguard retreated in disorder, leaving their two six-pounders with the enemy. Braddock heard the firing, and, leaving four hundred troops in charge of the baggage, hurried to the front with the bulk of the column. On the way, they met the routed vanguard, who were firing so wildly that they did as much injury to friends as foes, while their invisible enemies poured incessant volleys into the struggling mass. No man ever strove more valiantly to rally his troops than did General Braddock. He partly succeeded, and the unequal battle raged for more than two hours. The French and Indians, encouraged by their success, pushed further along the flanks of the English, and the wild disorder became greater than ever. The provincials followed Indian tactics, leaping behind cover, but Braddock had no patience with that kind of warfare and refused to adopt it. The brave but rash commander had five horses shot under him before he fell mortally wounded.

**Washington's narrow Escape**

The escape of Washington was marvellous. He had two horses killed, and four bullets passed through his coat. His tall figure attracted attention, and an Indian chief not only singled him out for death, but ordered his warriors to do the same. Years afterwards the

DEATH OF GEN. BRADDOCK.

chief claimed that he fired a dozen times at Washington, and became convinced that he was under the protection of the Great Spirit. Who dare affirm that such was not the fact, for Washington was never wounded in battle? When a bullet through Braddock's lungs brought him gasping to the earth, Washington ran to his help.

"What shall we do now?" feebly asked the stricken officer.

"We must retreat at once," replied the Virginian.

Braddock was unwilling to do this, and, partly regaining his strength, he continued to give orders for some minutes while stretched on the ground. Word coming to him that the rear of the confused mass had been attacked, and that the French and Indians were endeavoring to surround the force, the drums beat the retreat. The withdrawal was covered by Washington and his small force of Virginians. Artillery, baggage, ammunition, provisions, indeed everything, including the dead and most of the wounded, were abandoned. The survivors were allowed the chance to retreat, because the savages stayed behind to revel in the spoils that had fallen into their hands. When they straggled with shouts and war-whoops back to Fort Du Quesne, they were laden with scalps, laced coats, brilliant uniforms, extra firearms and weapons, and an almost endless variety of plunder.

In this frightful massacre twenty-six officers were killed and thirty-seven wounded out of a total of eighty-two. One-half the rank and file were slain or disabled. The bravery of the Virginian troops was attested by the fact that out of three companies only thirty were left alive. On the side of the enemy, three officers and thirty men were killed and about the same number wounded. General Braddock was carried to Fort Cumberland, where he died on the third day and was buried at Great Meadows. The burial took place by torchlight, on the evening of July 15th. Washington, amid a group of sorrowing officers, read the solemn burial service of the Church of England. The grave may be seen to-day, close to the National Road, between the 54th and 55th milestones. The troops did not remain at Fort Cumberland, but abandoned that post and marched to Philadelphia. Washington and his provincials returned to Virginia, and thus the campaign ended in gloom and disaster.

**Death of Braddock**

Governor Shirley, of Massachusetts, succeeded Braddock in command of the British forces in America. He was to conduct the campaign against Forts Niagara and Frontenac. It was less impor-

**Governor Shirley**

tant than that of Braddock and brought no great results. The march through the wilderness from Albany to Oswego, on the southern shore of Lake Ontario, was exhausting. He set out with fifteen hundred troops, many of whom were disabled by sickness before he arrived at his destination in August. The New York assembly voted men and money, and the Six Nations promised many warriors, but both pledges were only partly kept, for by September 1st the whole force in camp was less than three thousand. Shirley strengthened the tumble-down fort at Oswego, known to the Indians as Chouegan, and built a strong one on each side of the river. The one on the east bank was made of logs and earth, and the other had a stone wall. Boats were also constructed to take Shirley's troops across the lake, but, though he waited all through September, no reinforcements came, and the approach of winter forced him to abandon the expedition for the season. Seven hundred troops were left in the garrison under Colonel Hugh Mercer, who had been with "the Pretender" at Culloden, and with the remainder the governor marched back to Albany.

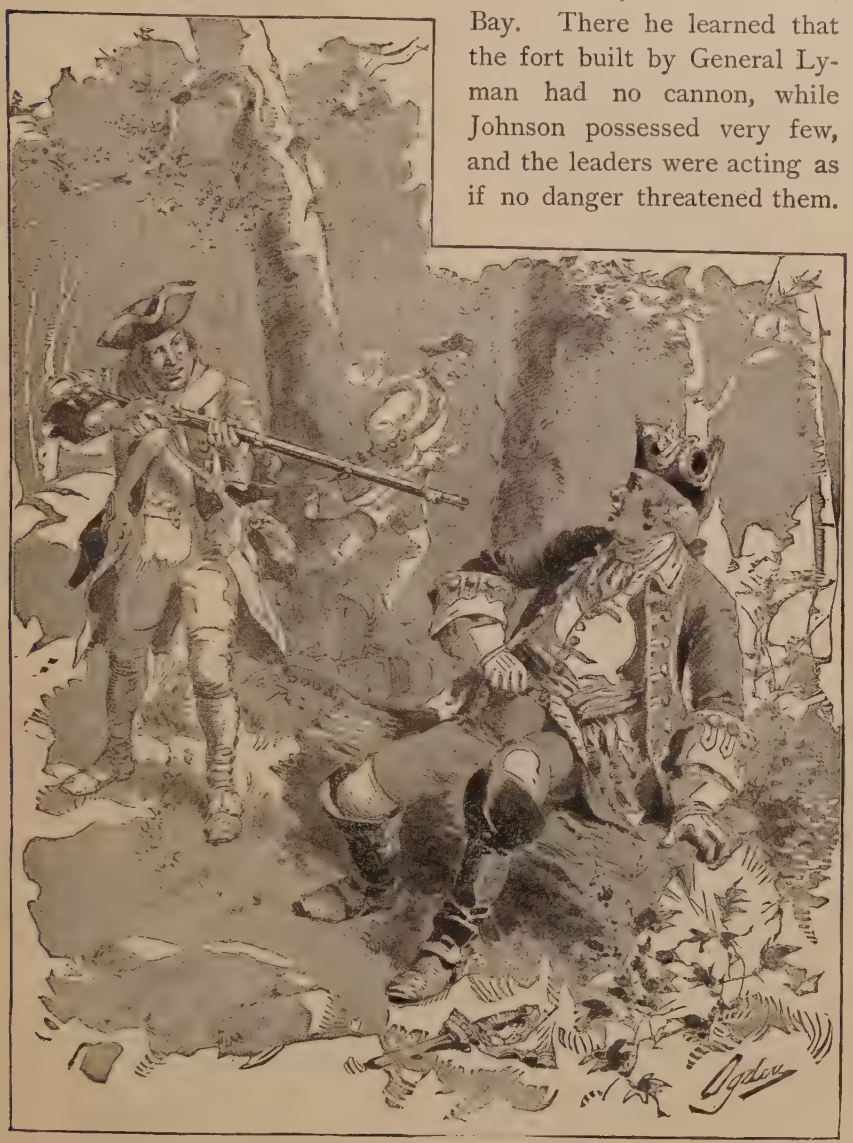
Marquis de Montcalm, a French soldier of great skill and energy, was now governor of Canada, and Shirley worked hard to reinforce and provision the post at Oswego, lest it should fall into French hands. This done, the governor returned to Massachusetts, leaving his aide-de-camp Lord Stirling * (William Alexander), in New York, with Colonel John Bradstreet as commissary-general at Albany, and Captain Philip Schuyler *(skī-ler)* his chief assistant. Meanwhile, Colonel William Johnson, who possessed almost unbounded influence over the Mohawk Indians, had undertaken the assault of Crown Point and the task of driving the French from the shores of Lake Champlain. He was at the head of three thousand four hundred troops, many of whom were Mohawks. These were brought together near Fort Orange, on the upper Hudson, General Phineas Lyman being in command of the New England forces. The army, which finally assembled in July at a point forty-five miles north of Albany, numbered about six thousand men.

**Colonel (afterwards Sir William) Johnson**

The French forces at Crown Point were under the command of Baron Dieskau (*dees'-kow*), who with two hundred regulars, seven hundred Canadians, and six hundred Indians, sailed up the lake to the site

* Afterwards Brigadier-General, and taken prisoner at the battle of Long Island. Alexander was the first governor of King's (now Columbia) College, N.Y.

of Whitehall, then called South Bay. There he learned that the fort built by General Lyman had no cannon, while Johnson possessed very few, and the leaders were acting as if no danger threatened them.



THE SHOOTING OF DIESKAU

These facts led Dieskau to organize a sudden attack upon Fort Lyman, thus cutting off Johnson from his supplies. In the event of success, Dieskau would thus open the way to Albany, and sever the communication with Oswego, when he would attack the New Eng-

land border. Discovering his danger, Johnson sent a thousand men under Colonel Williams, and two thousand Mohawks under Chief Hendrick, for the protection of the fort, whose name he changed from Fort Lyman to Fort Edward. Dieskau's intention was to make a rapid secret march upon Fort Edward, but his guides led him astray, and at the end of four days he was on the path to the head of Lake George, four miles north of Fort Edward. On the evening of September 7th, Johnson was startled by the arrival of an Indian scout with news that the enemy in large force had landed at the head of Lake Champlain. Some hours later, another runner came in with the tidings that the French and Indians were advancing upon Fort Edward. Johnson now ordered Colonel Ephraim Williams, with twelve hundred soldiers and two hundred Indians, to march to the fort. They were hurrying to obey this order, when they ran into an ambush prepared by Dieskau. At the first fire, Williams and Chief Hendrick and a large number of men were killed. Lieutenant Whiting rallied his men, returned the fire, and withdrew towards the lake. Colonel Johnson now did that which he ought to have done before—made vigorous preparations against assault. He succeeded in getting his cannon into position at the moment the fugitives and their pursuers came in view. The sight of the "big guns" so terrified the Indians that they refused to attack, while they were also unwilling to fire upon their kinsmen the Mohawks; but the French regulars fell upon them with great spirit and bravery. The fight in front of Fort Edward was one of the severest that had been fought up to that time in this country. The French charged with great gallantry, the Canadians and Indians on their flanks keeping up a continuous fire on the breastworks. The provincials were shaken at first, but soon regained steadiness, and charged in turn upon their assailants, who were scattered in all directions, though the French regulars displayed such heroism that nearly all were killed.

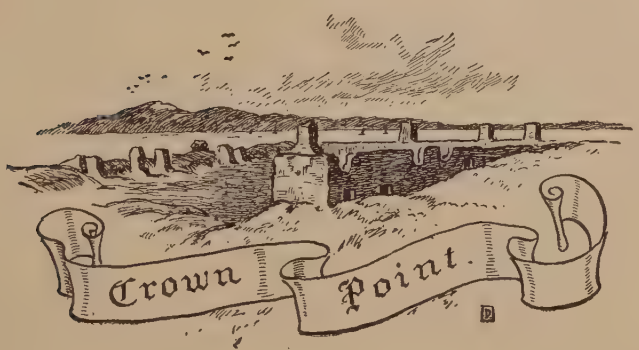
**Encounter at Fort Edward**

Dieskau was thrice wounded, but refused to retire. Several of his aides ran forward to his help. One fell dead, and the baron ordered the others to leave him alone. He sat down on a log and continued to give directions as coolly as if on parade. A Frenchman, fighting on the side of the English, ran forward to make him prisoner. Dieskau began feeling for his watch to offer his captor, when the latter, supposing he was about to draw his pistol, shot him. The baron, although severely wounded, did not die, but was carried into

the camp of the victors, where he received the kindest attention from General Johnson and his family. The Frenchman, some time later, presented an elegant sword to Johnson, expressive of his gratitude, and after he was exchanged he sailed for France, where he died two years later from the effects of his wounds.

SIR WILLIAM JOHNSON

The victory by the shores of Lake George was a dear one for England, but following close upon Braddock's disaster, much was made of it in that country and in the seaboard colonies. Colonel William Johnson, who was really no soldier, was also wounded, but for his services on this occasion the Crown made him a baronet and presented him with £5,000. He erected a fort which he named William Henry, and having strengthened Fort Edward, the troops returned to their homes. "The Crown Point expedition," says Parkman, "was a failure disguised under an incidental success." The French, on their part, reinforced Crown Point and fortified Ticonderoga.



# CHAPTER XXV

## *CAMPAIGNS OF 1756–1757*

[*Authorities:* The events detailed in this chapter continue the narrative of the great struggle between France and England, a struggle which had its field of conflict not alone in America, but in the East Indies, and, by the outbreak of the Seven Years' War (1756–63), on the European Continent. The decisive issues of the strife begin to be seen when the elder Pitt, shaking himself free from corrupt alliances in Parliament, and even from the dictation of the King, becomes master of the House of Commons and the practical ruler as well as the idol of the nation. Until Pitt's guiding hand is seen and his influence felt in military administration, Loudon's irresolute and incapable command on this continent has to be borne with, and the disasters faced which Montcalm brought about, in concert with his allied savages, in the vicinity both of Lake Champlain and Lake Ontario. The authorities for the narrative of this period, besides the United States histories (see especially Bryant and Gay) and those of an English source (see especially J. R. Green and W. H. Lecky), are Winsor's "Narrative and Critical History," and Parkman's "Montcalm and Wolfe." The "Correspondence of the Earl of Chatham" (the elder Pitt) might be profitably referred to; also Sparks' "Life of Washington" (for the narrative of his Western expeditions), and Benjamin Franklin's Works (for an account of that astute diplomat's relations with the Albany Congress).]

IT is not a little curious that while all this fighting was going on in America, England and France claimed to be at peace! The communications which passed between the two governments were models of hypocrisy. But the farce could not continue, and on the 17th of May, 1756, England declared war against France, and the latter country returned the compliment on the 9th of June. Thus was fairly launched the great struggle between those nations for supremacy in America.

Shirley, the commander-in-chief, had called a convention of the

royal governors at New York, in the autumn of 1755, and formed the plan of campaign for the following year. It was a bold one and included the capture of Quebec, Forts Niagara, Frontenac, Du Quesne, Detroit, and numerous other French posts in the northwest. The governors urged Parliament to compel the colonists to raise a fund for general military purposes in America. In the mean time, the settlements on the borders of Virginia, Maryland, and Pennsylvania were assailed by the Indians, and the people fled for safety to the older towns. The peril was so great that those colonies were compelled to take prompt action. Virginia made Washington commander-in-chief of all her forces, while the other two joined in measures of defence.

Few people in referring to Benjamin Franklin, the philosopher, and afterwards a diplomatist, know that at one time he was an officer in military service. In 1756, Pennsylvania commissioned him colonel and gave him orders to raise troops and build a line of forts or block-houses along the frontier, and he put his orders in execution.

Shirley was now succeeded by the Earl of Loudon as commander-in-chief of the British forces in America, and governor of Virginia. The latter was one of the most incompetent of the many incompetent men England at this time entrusted with high office. He was lazy, cowardly, and stupid. He waited until near the end of April before sending over his subordinate, Gen. James Abercrombie, with troops, and the summer was nearly gone before the earl himself arrived. The plan of campaign, as arranged for 1756, required ten thousand men to capture Crown Point, six thousand to assail Niagara, three thousand to operate against Fort Du Quesne, and two thousand to attack certain French settlements in Canada. Abercrombie was as indolent as the earl, and though, when he arrived at Albany, a large portion of the troops intended for Crown Point and Niagara were at the town, he showed little desire to move forward. He caused resentment among the provincial officers by compelling them to obey the orders of those of equal rank in the regulars. Anger was also excited among the citizens by forcing them to provide quarters for the troops. Abercrombie, disregarding the ardor of the provincials, stayed week after week in Albany, erecting elaborate fortifications, for which no necessity existed, and unwilling to undertake any aggressive movement before the arrival of Loudon. When the brave Colonel John Bradstreet came from Oswego with the

**Lord Loudon**

startling news that the French and Indians were threatening the forts there, and that an attack was imminent, Abercrombie failed even then to put his ten thousand men in motion.

There was good cause for fear, for the activity of the French was in strong contrast with the sloth of their enemies. The Marquis de Montcalm (*mŏnt-kăl'm*), had arrived in Quebec as governor-general and commander-in-chief of the French forces. He possessed remarkable ability, and though of slight stature, was endowed with great energy, and seemed scarcely to sleep because of his eager patriotism. By pressing forward night and day, he passed through the long stretch of wilderness to Ticonderoga, where his countrymen had erected Fort Carillon. He recognized its military value at a glance, and, making all haste to Quebec, prepared a secret expedition against Oswego. With three regiments, he ascended the St. Lawrence to Fort Frontenac (now Kingston), receiving at Montreal, on his way to Lake Ontario, a large reinforcement of Canadians and Indians. With this force, he crossed the lake in canoes and bateaux, and early in August halted in Sacket's Harbor. Fort Ontario, on the eastern side of the river, was weaker than Fort Oswego on the western side, so Montcalm moved against the former. He landed and marched his troops with such secrecy and despatch that they were not discovered by the English scouts until passing through the woods. Mercer, who commanded the garrison, had one thousand men and made instant preparations against attack. Montcalm had, however, come equipped for serious work, and he at once invested the fort with his large force. He had thirty pieces of cannon and pressed the siege with so much vigor that Mercer, seeing that he must soon succumb, surrendered on the 14th of August to Montcalm, who secured a large number of cannon and a quantity of military supplies. Both forts were destroyed to quiet the jealousy of the Six Nations. This step was a wise one, and so pleased the Iroquois that nearly all were won over to the support of the French.

**Montcalm**

**Fall of Oswego**

Lord Loudon arrived in time to learn of the fall of Oswego. Instead of being roused to action, he expressed his gratitude that no greater disaster had befallen the country. Then he devoted what energy he had to compelling the citizens of New York, and afterwards those of Philadelphia, to consent to the quartering of the troops. This imposition was bitterly resented, but backed by the troops themselves, the earl forced the people to submit, and was more elated

over the victory than if he had defeated the army of the public enemy. It is not to be wondered at that the Indians despised the sluggishness of the English and were attracted by the dash and daring of the French. It was this feeling which led the Delawares in western Pennsylvania to take the war-path. Col. Benjamin Franklin, as has already been stated, caused the construction of a chain of small posts along the Pennsylvania frontier; but the Indians continued their outrages until a thousand people had been either killed or captured. The philosophic Franklin thereupon concluded that nature had not intended him for a military career, so he turned his back upon it forever, for which sensible course he is perhaps to be commended. Col. John Armstrong was his successor, and, with three hundred volunteers, he crossed the Alleghanies by a swift and secret march, and reached Kittaning, the principal Delaware village, within forty miles of Fort Du Quesne. It was a warm night in September, and the savages had no thought of danger. Imitating the tactics of the red men, Armstrong attacked the hostiles at daybreak. The town was destroyed and nearly every warrior killed, though all fought with desperation. That tribe for a long time caused no further trouble. It will be noted that the campaign of 1756 closed with little accomplished on either side. What gain was made was by the French. Towards the close of the year, fifteen hundred volunteers and drafted militia, under Colonel Washington, garrisoned the stockades for the defence of the frontiers of Virginia and Pennsylvania; while, farther south, measures of protection were taken against the savages among whom French agents were busy.

**Indian Chastisement at Kittaning**

Loudon was compelled to make a pretence of doing something, so he called a council in Boston in January, 1757, at which were present the governors of New England and Nova Scotia. He had thought out a scheme for the capture of the strong fortress of Louisbourg, which, though taken once before, was ceded to France by the treaty of Utrecht. Loudon's conduct and bearing at the conference were not those of a soldier, for he made no effort to conceal his contempt for the members of the council, listened to no argument, and obliged all to agree with his plans.

The most important work before the English was to expel the French from the frontier posts and from the strongholds of Montreal and Quebec; but it was meantime decided to confine the military operations to the campaign against Louisbourg. This decision was

a grievous disappointment to the colonists, who better comprehended the situation, but they had no choice except to submit, and they gallantly responded to the call made upon them. In a brief time Loudon had an army under his command with which he ought at once to have driven the French out of America. Sailing from New York, June 20th, with six thousand regulars, he landed at Halifax on the 1st of July. Before departing upon this formidable expedition

THE DELAWARES ON THE WAR-PATH

Loudon directed Colonel Bouquet *(boo-kay)* to guard the Carolina borders with the few troops at his disposal; General Stanwix, with two thousand men, was to protect the western frontiers; while General Webb was furnished with six thousand troops with which to defend Forts Edward and William Henry.

At Halifax, Loudon was joined by Admiral Holborn, with a fleet of sixteen men-of-war, carrying five thousand additional British regulars. This large army being landed, the officers began drilling the regiments, which were already well trained. Besides this work, which

ntinued a month, a large area of ground was tilled and an immense quantity of onions and other vegetables planted. The earl thought that one of those days the scurvy might attack his marines and soldiers, and he intended to be prepared for it. The soldiers chafed under inaction, and now and then the exasperated officers openly expressed their feelings, but this did little good. The delay gave the French a chance to reinforce the garrison at Louisbourg and the beleaguering fleet. Loudon bustled about and was making ready to fight the latter when he learned that the enemy had one more vessel than he. He was so scared by the fact that he ordered his fleet to cruise around Cape Breton and embarked his army for New York. There he began fortifying Long Island against an attack which France never dreamed of making. The action of Montcalm was in strong contrast with that of the imbecile Loudon. With six thousand French and Canadians and two thousand Indians, he forced his way to Ticonderoga, by way of the Sorel and Lake Champlain. He dragged his artillery and boats across the portage to Lake George, where the troops re-embarked, and on the 3d of August he began the siege of Fort William Henry. Colonel Monro, with a garrison of five hundred men, gallantly defended the post for six days. At the end of that time his ammunition was used up, many of his guns were disabled, and his men exhausted. Montcalm offered honorable terms, and the fort was surrendered on the 9th of August.

Loudon's Imbecility

Several noticeable facts are connected with this surrender. At Fort Edward, a dozen miles distant, was General Webb with four thousand troops, while quite near the fort seventeen hundred men lay entrenched, and yet none of these made a movement to help the beleaguered Monro. In fact, General Webb was so frightened that he sent a letter to Monro, exaggerating the numbers of the French and Indians, and advising him to save his force from massacre by surrendering. This letter fell into Montcalm's hands, and, we may be sure that, after reading it, he saw that it reached its destination, for the capitulation immediately followed. By the terms the garrison were to march out with the honors of war, taking with them their baggage and side-arms and one cannon. The last favor was in the nature of a compliment to Monro for his gallant defence of the fort. He agreed that he and his troops should not bear arms against France for the period of a year and a half, and that he would deliver at Ticonderoga all the French and Indian captives in the hands of

the English. Montcalm pledged himself to furnish the prisoners with a strong escort half-way to Fort Edward. His only fear was that his Indians would cause trouble. He kept all liquor from them, and warned the English to do the same. Unfortunately they disregarded the advice and the savages spent a night in carousal. The morning found them in an ugly mood and ready for any mischief.

Hardly had the garrison begun its march for Fort Edward when the warriors attacked them. They were first murdered, then plundered, and many women and soldiers were carried off prisoners. Montcalm was filled with anguish at the sight, and with his officers rushed among the Indians and did his utmost to stay the massacre. "Kill me! kill me!" he shouted, "but spare these prisoners!" After thirty had been tomahawked and others dragged away, the slaughter was stayed. A sufficient escort accompanied the remainder to Fort Edward, and the captives who were taken to Canada were afterwards ransomed. With his usual energy Montcalm destroyed the fort, and, laden with an immense amount of spoils, moved down the lake on the same day. The structure was never rebuilt.

**Massacre of Prisoners**

All this time General Webb was trembling with fear among his four thousand men at Fort Edward lest Montcalm should come that way and destroy him. He made ready to retreat to the Highlands of the Hudson, but the French passed him by.

It is hard to imagine a more humiliating campaign than that of Loudon's in 1757, at the close of which year it looked as if nothing could prevent the French from becoming masters of the American continent. The English had been driven out of the Ohio valley; their arm was paralyzed in northern New York, and the iron hand of the Gallic conqueror had closed round the St. Lawrence, the Great Lakes, and the valley of the Mississippi. At the end of this year the territory held by France was twenty-fold greater than that under the dominion of England. In the general consternation and confusion Governor Pownall, of Massachusetts, ordered the people living west of the Connecticut to destroy their wagons and drive in their cattle. This was done by many, and the suffering was great. The only section of the country exempt from alarm and disorder was the extreme South. Governor Ellis, of Georgia, kept up friendly relations with the powerful Creek confederacy, and the colony became a refuge for the endangered people of the North, hundreds of whom made their way thither. Many refugees from the borders of Virginia,

COPYRIGHT 1898.

MONTCALM ON THE MARCH

FROM THE ORIGINAL DRAWING BY J. STEEPLE DAVIS

PERIOD III
ENGLAND AND FRANCE IN AMERICA 1758 TO 1783

Maryland, and Pennsylvania fled to South Carolina after Braddock's massacre, but the hostile Cherokees caused much trouble.

One of the best friends that America ever had was William Pitt, who, in the latter part of 1756, was made English Secretary of State. The aristocracy were opposed to him, but the people saw in his towering genius, his fervid patriotism, and his unflinching courage and integrity the hope of the country, at the time torn by scandals, wrangles, intrigue, and imbecility. When urged to recommend a

**William Pitt**

PANIC OF THE SETTLERS

stamp-tax for the colonies, Pitt replied: "With the enemy at their back, and British bayonets at their breasts, in the day of their distress, perhaps the Americans may submit to the imposition." No one in England understood our people so well as William Pitt. He was determined to do the Americans justice, and neither the blandishments nor the threats of the aristocracy in the least affected him. Nor would he resign his office, for he knew that the British nation wished him to hold it. In the spring of 1757, however, he and the abler members of the Cabinet were dismissed by the king, who, after the country had suffered nearly three months without a ministry, was

glad to recall Pitt* to the Cabinet in June. Soon thereafter he was invested with powers which practically made him Prime Minister of the realm, and happily so, as the issue soon proved in North America.

* Much of the success of British arms at this eventful period, as will be seen from the narrative, was due to William Pitt, who became Earl of Chatham, and one of England's greatest statesmen. Pitt, who entered Parliament in 1735, was one of the chief opponents of Walpole (for over twenty years Prime Minister of England), and from 1756 to 1761, save for a brief interval, was the ruling spirit of the government. In 1756 Pitt was made Secretary of State, and during the Seven Years' War his vigorous and large-minded policy did much to restore England's military fame abroad and add to the laurels of the nation. His nobility of character and lofty, unsullied patriotism, together with his great talents as an orator and a war minister, won him the respect and affection of the English people. His steady advocacy of the rights of the people, his passionate and almost resistless eloquence, and his marvellous power to animate and inspire a desponding nation, earned for him the title of "The Great Commoner." During his administration the war against France was prosecuted with great spirit, and her navy was all but annihilated. His attitude towards this country, in the War of the Revolution, bespeaks at once his humanity and his patriotism, for while he strongly opposed the taxation of the American Colonies, he was equally opposed to granting them their independence. While delivering a now memorable speech in the House of Lords, against making peace with America, he was seized with an apoplectic fit, and died a few weeks afterwards, on the 11th of May, 1778. For a characterization of Pitt and his policy, see Brougham's "Statesmen of the Time of George III."

# CHAPTER XXVI

## *CAMPAIGNS OF 1758–1760*

[*Authorities:* The steady trend of events, to the fateful close of French dominion on this continent, which has its counterpart at the period in the downfall of French power in India, is narrated in the present chapter. The issue signalizes Pitt's prevision in the selection of military commanders, such as the heroic Wolfe, and his genius in the administration of affairs in England at a crucial era in the nation's history, The gallant Montcalm, though ill-supported by Old France, and worried by the maladministration of affairs in the St. Lawrence colony, was able for a time, however, to protract the struggle in America, though forced now to act purely on the defensive. The nation's Nemesis marched sullenly onward, and there fell successively before it Louisbourg, Frontenac, and Niagara, while Du Quesne, Crown Point, and Ticonderoga had reluctantly to be abandoned. The end at last came with the fall of Quebec, the capitulation of Montreal, and the cession of New France to the British Crown. The authorities, besides the standard United States histories, are Parkman's "Montcalm and Wolfe," Warburton's "Conquest of Canada," Kingsford's "Canada," Miles' "History of Canada during the French Régime" (Montreal, 1881), Hannay's "Acadia," 'Life of Major-General James Wolfe," by Robert Wright; Knox's "Historical Journal of the Campaigns in North America, 1757–60," and the admirable monograph by J. Bradley, on Wolfe, in the *English Men of Action* Series].

ONE of the first wise acts of William Pitt was to recall the incompetent Loudon. General Amherst * was made his successor, and, counting on the patriotism of the colonies, Pitt asked them to raise all the men they could for the capture of Quebec and Montreal. He promised them that England would provide them arms, ammunition, and tents, and the king would recommend Parliament to repay them for expenses incurred in clothing and paying the soldiers. The Colo-

* Sir Jeffery Amherst, afterwards Lord Amherst (1717–1797), was the son of a country gentleman in the County of Kent, England. He entered the army at an early

HOWE AT TICONDEROGA.

nial troops were to choose their own officers up to and including colonels, who would rank with English officers of the same grade. England furnished the leaders. Lord Howe was next in seniority to Amherst; Abercrombie was given an important command; James Wolfe, who had seen service in Flanders, and in Scotland during the rising of the Highland clans in 1745, was at the head of a brigade; while Richard Montgomery * was colonel of a regiment.

The colonies nobly responded to the call of Pitt. A powerful naval armament was placed under Admiral Boscawen, and twelve thousand English troops were assigned to service in America. The number of provincial troops asked for by Pitt was twenty thousand. More than this number offered their services, New England alone furnishing fifteen thousand, while Massachusetts advanced a million dollars. The taxes, in many cases, amounted to two-thirds of an individual's income, but, for all that, they were cheerfully paid. When Abercrombie assumed command, in May 1758, he found fifty thousand men at his disposal. The three campaigns planned for 1758 had the same object as before: the capture of Louisbourg, on Cape Breton; Crown Point and Ticonderoga, on Lake Champlain; and Du Quesne, in the valley of the Ohio. Sir Jeffery Amherst, with the brilliant James Wolfe as his assistant, had charge of the expedition against Louisbourg, together with the fleet of Boscawen. To Gen. Joseph Forbes was assigned the task of conquering Fort Du Quesne and the Ohio valley, while Abercrombie, with Lord Howe

**The Plan of Campaign**

age, and in 1741 was aide-de-camp to General Ligonier, under whom he distinguished himself at Dettingen and Fontenoy, and afterwards served on the staff of the Duke of Cumberland. In 1758, he attained the rank of major-general, and on the recall of Lord Loudon was appointed to the command of the army in America. His first enterprise on this continent was the expedition against Louisbourg, Wolfe serving under him at the siege, while Boscawen commanded the naval force. Later in the year he planned and accomplished the capture of Fort Du Quesne, and in the following season ordered the reduction of Niagara, under Colonel Sir Wm. Johnson. The day after the fall of Niagara, Ticonderoga surrendered to his forces, and on the 14th of August (1759) the strong post of Crown Point, on Lake Champlain. After the fall of Quebec, Amherst received, on behalf of England, the capitulation of Montreal, and was appointed Governor-General of Canada. Later on, he was commander-in-chief of the army in England, and became field-marshal. He died in 1797, at his seat, "Montreal," in Kent.

* It has been taken for granted that Richard Montgomery, who led the hapless attack on Quebec in 1775, took part with Wolfe in the conquest of Quebec. This, it has now been ascertained, was not the case, since at the period he was serving with the 17th Regiment under General Amherst at Lake Champlain, and subsequently under Colonel Haviland at Montreal.

PERIOD III
ENGLAND AND FRANCE IN AMERICA 1758 TO 1783

as his aide, was to drive the French from Lake Champlain, and, if possible, expel them from Montreal and the St. Lawrence.

The expedition against Louisbourg sailed from Halifax, May 28th. The fleet numbered thirty-seven vessels, carrying fourteen thousand troops, most of whom were regulars. They were delayed by a strong wind, but at dawn on June 8th, a landing was made at Gabarus Bay, the inlet on which the French stronghold of Louisbourg stood. The surf was high and breaking angrily upon the beach. It was hardly light when Wolfe, at the head of the first division, was rowed among the breakers. A number of the boats were capsized or broken. Impatient at the delay, Wolfe leaped into the water waist-deep, waved his sword, and led his soldiers against the French batteries, passed the rampart of felled trees, took the defences, and drove in the enemy. The northeast harbor was next captured, and large guns were planted on the cape near the lighthouse. The island battery was soon silenced and the siege of Louisbourg began. The garrison comprised twenty-five hundred regulars and six hundred militia, while the harbor contained several ships-of-the-line and frigates. Vessels were sunk at the entrance to keep out the enemy, and the siege was pressed with a skill and persistence that left no hope for the garrison. Four of the vessels in the harbor were burned and another was captured. The English cannon played upon the town, the fort, and the ships.

**Siege and Surrender of Louisbourg, 1758**

The bombardment laid Louisbourg in ruins. The walls were breached, and three-fourths of the guns were disabled. The French commander surrendered July 26th, giving up all his artillery, military stores, and provisions, with the islands of Cape Breton and Prince Edward, and the coast almost to the mouth of the St. Lawrence. The garrison, including the marines, numbering about six thousand in all, were sent as prisoners of war to England, while Louisbourg as a military stronghold ceased to exist. Wolfe was the hero of this great victory, which marked the beginning of the decline of French dominion in America.

Pitt's generous course toward the Americans stirred them to enthusiasm and incited the other leaders to an activity which none had shown before. General Abercrombie and young Lord Howe, with an army of sixteen thousand, marched through the forests of the upper Hudson, and, reaching Lake George on the 5th of July, embarked for Ticonderoga in more than one hundred whale-boats, nine

DEATH OF LORD HOWE.

hundred bateaux, and with the artillery on rafts. It was an impressive sight when this immense array glided over the placid sheet of water with streaming banners and to the strains of martial music. As the balmy summer day was drawing to a close they landed on the grassy slope of Sabbath-day Point. The soldiers strolled through the leafy woods in the cool of the evening, while Lord Howe, who was the soul of the expedition, consulted with Stark and other provincial officers about the surrounding region and the neighborhood of Ticonderoga, with which both were familiar.

**Lord George Howe**

Young Lord Howe was a man with as much military genius as Wolfe, and was the idol of the army. He lived a life of the severest simplicity, eating sparingly of the plainest fare, and discarding all ornament in dress as he required the other officers to do. He had the muskets shortened for convenience in marching through the woods, and the barrels were painted a dull color to prevent the gleam attracting the eyes of the Indians. All useless baggage was thrown aside, and the men were furnished with leggings to protect them from briers and insects. It was almost midnight when the army reembarked under a serene sky, studded with stars. The oars were muffled and the immense force moved along the lake like so many phantoms. The watchful scouts of the enemy on the surrounding hills saw nothing of them, and when it began growing light in the east, the troops were within four miles of their landing-place. The first warning the sentinels of the enemy received was when the thousands of scarlet uniforms swept into sight around a point of the lake and the army made ready to land.

It was found that the roughness of the ground and the numerous trees rendered the artillery useless, so the guns were left behind with the provisions and baggage. The army advanced in four columns, and, led by incompetent guides, were soon in the depths of a tangled forest. The advance guard, under Lord Howe, suddenly collided with three hundred French soldiers who had lost their way, and a sharp exchange of shots took place. Almost the first man killed was Lord Howe. His death threw the army into confusion, and Abercrombie hurriedly retreated to the lake, although nearly every member of the French detachment was killed, while the English troops were, as it turned out, in little danger.

**Death of Howe**

Colonel Bradstreet, with his pioneers, opened the way to the Falls the next day, and on the morning of the 8th, Abercrombie, leaving

his artillery behind, advanced to attack the outworks of the enemy at Ticonderoga, the fort being garrisoned by four thousand men, under the brave Montcalm. Abercrombie was deceived as to the strength of the works and the number of men behind them. For four hours he tried with the utmost energy to get within the *abatis*, but was driven back each time. The day was sultry, and while the fighting was going on, Montcalm was repeatedly seen, in his shirt sleeves, running back and forth among his men and inspiring them by his own heroic example. So effective was the defence by the gallant Frenchman, that as the warm afternoon drew to a close Abercrombie retreated, leaving two thousand of his dead and wounded in the forest.

**Failure of Abercrombie's Assault on Ticonderoga**

The incompetent Abercrombie kept out of harm's way during the fighting, and he now continued the retreat until the old encampment was reached at the head of Lake George. Colonel Bradstreet, one of the bravest of officers, begged to be allowed to lead three thousand men against Fort Frontenac, which stood on the present site of Kingston, at the foot of Lake Ontario. Permission was given, and, after a siege of two days, the place was captured, with forty-six cannon, nine vessels of war, and a quantity of military stores. The victory was depressing to the French, for they saw that they were not only losing ground, but a famine impended, because of a failure of the crops in Canada. English dominion over Lake Ontario was thus established and the power of France continued to wane. In this brilliant achievement, Bradstreet lost only three men, but a malignant fever soon afterwards carried off nearly five hundred. With the others, he helped to build Fort Stanwix, on the site of the village of Rome. Abercrombie seemed to feel that he had had enough of fighting, and after garrisoning Fort George, near the head of the lake, he withdrew with the remainder of the troops to Albany.

**Capture of Fort Frontenac, 1758**

Montcalm stayed on at Ticonderoga and there applied himself to the strengthening of the fortifications. The detachments which he sent out to harass and capture parties of English were in turn assailed by a famous body of rangers, commanded by Major Rogers, of New Hampshire. These men roamed through the woods, sometimes (in winter) on snow-shoes, and had numerous thrilling encounters with the French and Indians.

It will be noticed in studying the French and Indian War that many of the provincial leaders who took part in it became famous

COPYRIGHT 1896.

ABERCROMBIE'S EXPEDITION AGAINST FORT TICONDEROGA

FROM THE ORIGINAL DRAWING BY J. STEEPLE DAVIS

PERIOD III
ENGLAND AND FRANCE IN AMERICA 1758 TO 1783

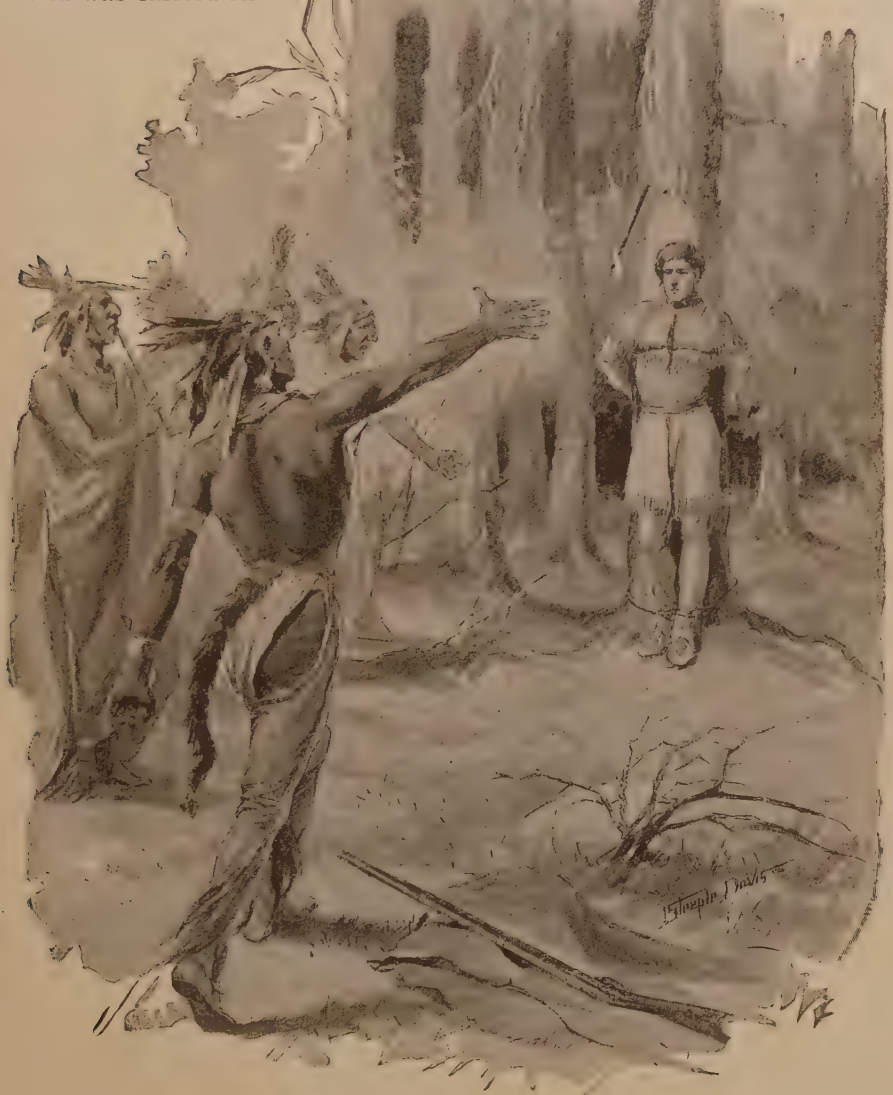
afterwards in the Revolution. The contest between France and England, as fought on our soil from 1755 to 1759, was a few years later an invaluable training-school to the patriots in the great struggle for independence. Israel Putnam, of whom we shall hear more later on, was the second in command of Rogers' Rangers. He was one of the most daring of men. Some days after the attack on Ticonderoga, Captain Molang captured an escort of English wagoners. Rogers and Putnam set out to intercept him on his return, but fell into an Indian ambush, and Putnam and several of his comrades were made prisoners. All except Putnam were tomahawked. His intrepidity was well known to his captors, who reserved him for a more cruel fate. While the fight was under way between the Rangers and Indians, Putnam was tied to a tree, in such a situation that his clothing was repeatedly pierced by bullets from both sides. As if that were not enough, a young warrior amused himself by hurling his tomahawk at the tree, in the attempt to see how near he could come to Putnam's head without hitting it. Several narrow misses took place, but the captive was not hurt. Putnam was now led deeper into the forest and tied to another tree. Dry limbs were piled to his waist and set on fire. The flames had begun to scorch him and he was almost suffocated by the smoke, when a sudden fall of rain quenched the fire. It soon revived and burned so fiercely that he must have perished in a few minutes had not Captain Molang learned what was going on, and, rushing to the spot, released the victim and saw him safely to Ticonderoga.

**Putnam and Rogers' Rangers**

Amherst was at Cape Breton when news reached him of the disaster at Ticonderoga. He immediately sailed for Boston with four regiments and pushed across New England to Albany, arriving at Abercrombie's camp in October. The following month his commission as commander-in-chief reached him, and Abercrombie sailed for England.

We must not forget that, as has been related, one of the campaigns was directed against Fort Du Quesne, in western Pennsylvania. Gen. John Forbes gathered six thousand men at Fort Cumberland, in Maryland, where Washington joined him with two thousand Virginians, and Colonel Bouquet had marched from the Carolinas with a thousand Highlanders, three hundred royal Americans, and a force of Cherokee Indians. This took place during the month of July, and it was known that Du Quesne was feebly

garrisoned. Washington urged an immediate advance, assured that the post must fall, but his counsels were not heeded, and when the march began it was by another route than the one he advised should be taken. General Forbes fell ill on the road and was carried on



ISRAEL PUTNAM AND HIS CAPTORS

Period III
England and France in America 1758 to 1783

a litter, while the army wound its way so slowly over the mountains that Raystown was not reached until September. The indignant Washington wrote to a friend: "See how our time has been misspent! Behold how the golden opportunity has been lost, perhaps never more to be regained."

Bouquet was sent forward, with two thousand men, to Loyal Hanna, with orders to erect a fort. While thus engaged, he directed Major Grant to make a reconnoissance with about a thousand men. Grant posted himself on a hill near the fort, and, dividing his force, sought to draw the garrison out and into ambush, but was himself ambuscaded and suffered the loss of nearly half of his men. The French were so elated over their success that they followed it up with an attack on Bouquet at Loyal Hanna, but were repulsed with severe casualties.

The days and weeks passed and fifty miles still separated the English army from Du Quesne. The weather was cold and an early winter was at hand. A council of war agreed that the season was too far advanced for further operations, but the impatient Washington, who was at Loyal Hanna, was allowed to advance with a thousand men. The troops were filled with ardor and the main army followed. On the evening of November 24th, the Virginians were within ten miles of Du Quesne, and eager to be led forward. The garrison numbered only five hundred and at once saw the hopelessness of their situation. That night they set fire to the fort, and by the glare of the flames floated down the Ohio in their boats. The next day the place was entered and Washington with his own hand planted the British flag over the charred fortifications. The name of the fort was changed to Fort Pitt, in honor of the illustrious English commoner and statesman, and around the ruins grew up in time the thriving city of Pittsburg. A strong garrison was left in charge of the place, and the remainder of the army marched eastward.

**Capture of Fort Du Quesne**

**Marriage of Washington**

It is interesting to record here that Washington took leave of the troops at Williamsburg, with the intention of abandoning military life. He had been elected a member of the Virginia House of Burgesses, and, on the 17th of January, 1759, was married to Martha, the accomplished widow of Daniel Parke Custis. The wedding took place at the "White House," the residence of the bride. She and her husband were about the same age—twenty-six years. Both were in good circumstances, and in time Washington became one of the

REPULSE OF BRITISH BEFORE TICONDEROGA.

wealthiest men in America. He took his seat in the Assembly at Williamsburg, little dreaming of the illustrious career upon which he was soon to enter.

One day, early in the session, the Speaker of the House, in obedience to its order, rose and thanked the young colonel in the name of Virginia for his great services. Washington, overcome with confusion, attempted to reply, but stammered like a schoolboy. "Sit down, Colonel Washington," said the smiling speaker, "your modesty equals your valor, and that surpasses the power of any language at my command."

The campaign of 1758 had been very successful for England. Three of the most important posts, Louisbourg, Frontenac, and Du Quesne, were captured. The power of the English was steadily waxing, as that of the French waned. The faith of the Indians in the prowess of France was so shaken, that at the great council held at Easton, in the autumn of 1758, several leading tribes decided to join the Six Nations in making treaties of neutrality with the English. This action brought peace to the frontiers of Virginia and Pennsylvania, and greatly discouraged Canada.

Pitt once more saw the golden opportunity for his country. He hurried reinforcements to America, and Parliament voted twelve million pounds to carry on the war. In the early summer of 1759, the number of English and provincial troops in the colonies was nearly fifty thousand. This formidable array equalled two-thirds of the French population in Canada, and was six times the number of French troops in America.

**The Campaign of 1759**

Three great campaigns were now arranged. Wolfe was to lead an expedition up the St. Lawrence against Quebec, while Amherst was to advance against Ticonderoga and Crown Point, and invade Canada by the northern route. General Prideaux (*Pree-dō*), commanding chiefly provincials and Indians, was to capture Niagara, descend the St. Lawrence, and join the other two armies at Montreal, which were to converge on that point. Amherst, with an army of nearly twelve thousand men, composed about equally of regulars and provincials, advanced against Ticonderoga, and disembarking on July 22d, near the landing-place of Abercrombie, marched towards Fort Carillon. The French were afraid to make a stand, and, destroying the fort, retreated down the lake to Fort Frederic, on Crown Point. Amherst followed, and upon his arrival, August 1st, found that post

also deserted, the French having fled to Isle aux Noix (*eel'-ō-nwah'*) on the northern shore of Lake Champlain. Amherst took possession of Crown Point, the whole country around Lake Champlain thus falling into the hands of the English without a battle. Had Amherst made a prompt pursuit, Montreal must have fallen, but he spent the remainder of the season in improving the defences of Ticonderoga and Crown Point.

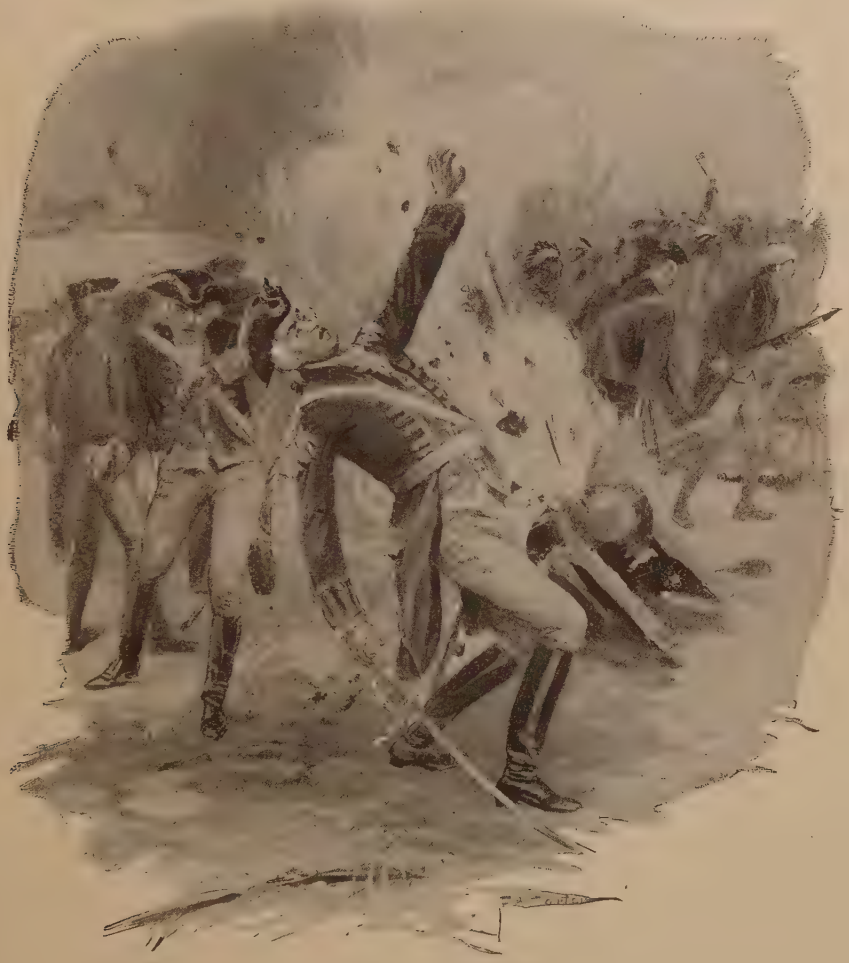
Meanwhile Prideaux advanced against Niagara, commanded at the period by Captain Pouchot *(poosh'-oh)*. He left Oswego on July 1st,

EVACUATION OF FORT DU QUESNE

**Death of General Prideaux**

with two New York battalions, one of Royal Americans, two British regiments, with artillery and a force of Indians under Sir William Johnson. They passed along the southern shore of Lake Ontario, and landed without opposition six miles east of Fort Niagara, on the 15th of July. The siege was begun at once. It had hardly opened when Prideaux was killed by the bursting of a mortar, and Johnson succeeded him in the command. The garrison numbered about six hundred, but three thousand reinforcements, of whom one-half were Indians, were on their way from different points. These attacked

Johnson on the 24th of July. The French and Indians suffered a decisive repulse and fled, leaving nearly all their killed and wounded in the woods. The French commander, when he saw the extent of the disaster, saw too that he was powerless, and surrendered the fort



DEATH OF PRIDEAUX

and its dependencies to the English, whose dominion was thus extended along Lake Erie to Presque Isle. The instructions of Sir William Johnson, it will be remembered, were to press on to Montreal and join Amherst, but he was encumbered with prisoners, and unable to procure enough boats for transportation. So he garri-

PERIOD III
ENGLAND AND FRANCE IN AMERICA
1758 TO 1783

soned Fort Niagara, and with the remainder of his troops returned to Albany.

And now came the grand and decisive campaign of all—that of Wolfe against Quebec. The youthful hero passed the winter in England, where he came into close contact with War Minister Pitt; but early in the following spring (1759) was back again at Louisbourg with three brigades of soldiers and a large fleet. The brilliant commander was forced to wait until the St. Lawrence was free from ice, so that it was not until June that he left Louisbourg, with eight thousand troops and a fleet of forty-four vessels, under Admirals Saunders and Holmes. His brigadiers were Gen. Robert Monckton, afterwards governor of New York; Gen. George Townshend, soon made a peer of the realm; and the daring General Murray, first English governor of Quebec. Col. Guy Carleton and Lieut.-Col. William Howe, both of whom became prominent during our War for Independence, were among Wolfe's subordinate commanders.

**Wolfe's Expedition against Quebec**

Towards the end of June the formidable English fleet sailed up the St. Lawrence to Quebec. The army landed upon the upper end of the picturesque Island of Orleans, June 27th, and encamped partly there, and partly on the eastern side of the Montmorency (*Mont'-mo-ren'-si*) River. The troops were in full view of Cape Diamond and the citadel of Quebec, built on an elevated rocky promontory at the junction of the St. Charles and the St. Lawrence. The upper town was surrounded by a wall with five gates, two of which opened out upon a high plateau, to the southwest, known as the Plains of Abraham, which was separated from the St. Lawrence by abrupt declivities. The lower town, close to the river, was only a village, but the shores of the St. Lawrence bristled with batteries, both above and below the city. Between the latter and the Montmorency River, a distance of several miles, was the vigilant Montcalm, with a force of French Canadians and Indians. The opposing armies were about equal in number, being each some nine thousand strong.

The night after the arrival of the fleet was intensely dark, and a terrific storm set in. About midnight the gloom was lit up by the bright glare of several fire-ships, which the French had set floating down the river towards the English shipping. But that which threatened the destruction of the fleet really saved it. The illumination enabled the British seamen to catch each blazing vessel in turn, and so change its course that no harm followed. On the succeeding

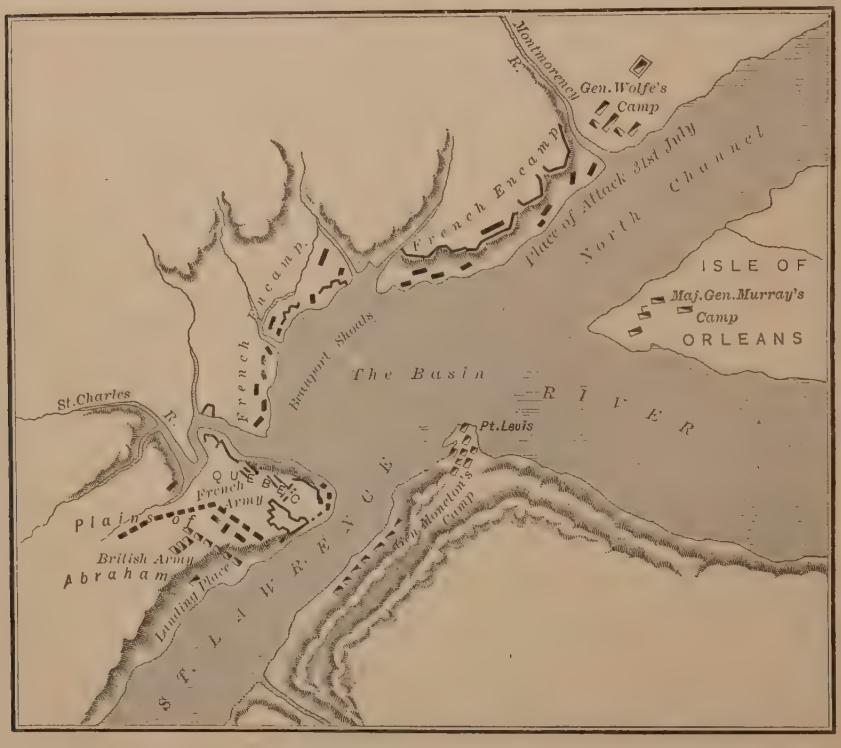
night, General Monckton with four battalions seized Point Levis, on the southern shore of the St. Lawrence, and planted a battery opposite the city, about a mile across. Thence bombs and red-hot cannon-balls were launched into the lower town, which was soon destroyed. But the destructive missiles could not reach the citadel, and, securely perched in their lofty fortress, the French complacently viewed the attacks of their enemies. The citadel is on the most elevated portion of the upper town, three hundred and fifty feet above the river, and the fortifications, extending almost across the peninsula, enclosed a circuit of about three miles.

The Heights of Abraham lay west of the fortifications, and rose to more than three hundred feet above the river. The French were warranted in believing it impossible for any force to storm the town from that side. Accordingly they extended their line of entrenchments along the northern or Beauport shore of the St. Lawrence, reaching for five miles from the gorge of the Montmorency to the St. Charles River, close by the city.

**Repulse of the English at the Beauport Flats**

The resolute Wolfe believed that Montcalm could be conquered not by capturing the stronghold of Quebec, but rather by attacking him in his fortified camp to the east of the citadel. On the 10th of July, he landed a strong force below the Montmorency, on the Beauport shore, but was disappointed to discover that the only place at which an attack could be made was three miles west of the mouth, and the point was strongly fortified by the French commander, whose vigilance equalled that of Wolfe. A council of war decided to make an advance on the 31st of July, at low water. Generals Townshend and Murray charged across with their two brigades, but Monckton, who was to advance at the same time from Point Levis, caused delay by running his boats aground on the shoals. Before his regiments could come up, the others attacked the entrenchments and were decisively repulsed. A furious rain-storm added to the confusion, the tide was rapidly rising, and after suffering a loss of five hundred men, Wolfe was obliged to withdraw. The young general earnestly scanned the whole vicinity of Quebec, seeking how best to bring the French to battle, but so far without avail. He took his disappointment so to heart that, combined with the extreme heat, fatigue and anxiety, he fell into a violent fever. For several weeks his life hung by a thread, but he finally rallied, and, early in September, a council of war was held at his bedside. The decision reached was

to land a strong force above Quebec, with the view of drawing Montcalm from his entrenchments. Meanwhile, the doomed city continued to be swept by the cannon from the ships in the river and from the batteries on Point Levis. Preparations were made early in September to test the feasibility of attacking Quebec from above the city. With several companions, in an open boat, Wolfe reconnoitred the shores, and selected the cove still bearing his name for the landing-place. A path was found on the face of the cliff, amid tangled




QUEBEC DURING THE SIEGE

shrubbery, leading up to the Plains of Abraham, and it was resolved that this should be used as the means of getting the army into position in rear of the citadel. Making a feigned movement about the Beauport shore, Wolfe sent a portion of the fleet with the attacking force up the river. After darkness had closed over the scene, on the night of the 12th, the main army was embarked on flat-boats, and drifted up stream with the flood tide, beyond the landing-place. The utmost secrecy was enjoined as to the commander's projects,

which were not disclosed until at a given signal from Wolfe. In the boats were sixteen hundred men, and about as many more were on board the sloops and frigates, all impatient to get the word of command.

It is said that Wolfe, who was still weak from his illness, believed that he would meet his death in the impending battle. He added a codicil to his will, and handed the portrait of a young lady to whom he was betrothed to a friend, with the request that he would give it to her in case his presentiments were fulfilled. Then his spirits rallied, and he entered upon his great task with strong hopes of success. There was no moon that night, but the clear sky glittered with stars. While the silence of the tomb brooded over the scene, two star-like points of light, one above the other, suddenly shone from the main-mast of the temporary flagship, the *Sutherland*, which Wolfe had boarded. All were waiting for the signal, which about two o'clock on the morning of the 13th was given by Wolfe, who with his chief officers had now transferred themselves to the flat-bottomed boats, bearing their heroic but silent freight of men, and drifted down stream with the ebb tide, toward the landing-place.

**The Morrow of Battle**

They hugged the northwestern shore, so as not to miss the spot, and no one dared to speak, for success depended upon the utmost secrecy. The oars were muffled, but Wolfe repeated in a low, thoughtful tone to the officers around him, a verse from Gray's "Elegy in a Country Churchyard," a copy of which had lately been sent to him from England:

> "The boast of heraldry, the pomp of power,
> And all that beauty, all that wealth e'er gave,
> Await alike the inevitable hour:
> The path of glory leads but to the grave."

"I would prefer," said Wolfe, "to be the author of that poem than to defeat the French to-morrow." "No one was there," says the historian Parkman, "to tell him that the hero is greater than the poet."

**Scaling the Heights to Victory**

The general was among the first to leap ashore, and his eye kindled, as, in the gloom, he glanced upward at the heights towering before them. All set to work to scale the cliffs through a tangled path, where two could barely walk abreast. They moved with the utmost stealth, catching hold of bushes, roots, vines, rocks, and anything that could aid them. It was comparatively easy work for the Highland-

ers, and the enthusiasm of the English caused them to make light of the obstacles which they had to overcome at every step. The ears of the French sentinels above caught the suspicious rustling and they fired down in the darkness. The next minute the shadowy figures swarmed over the edge of the elevated plain, and the guard fled with the terrifying news that the enemy had scaled the Heights of Abraham. When the sun rose, it reflected the gleam of five thousand muskets in battle array. The returning boats had met the squadron under Holmes, which followed the first division, and then climbed the acclivity after them. The force had only one cannon, which with great labor they dragged up the cliffs with them. A light shower of rain was falling when the English took up a position on the plain in rear of the citadel.

Meantime, the alarming news had been carried to Montcalm, who was some distance away at Beauport. He had been constantly in the saddle, and was so alert that for a week he did not remove his clothing, and seemed scarcely to sleep.

"They have found our weak side at last," he exclaimed as the news reached him, "and now we must crush them." Montcalm hastily led his troops over the St. Charles, by the bridge of boats across the river, and, hardly pausing to place them in battle order, attacked the British.

The latter showed finer discipline and delivered their volleys with decisive effect. Wolfe was at the head of the grenadiers,* whom he

* The brief conflict of the fateful September morning brought to Wolfe, as it brought to Montcalm, the close of a life that might well be envied. Each hero, in a special sense, sacrificed himself for the country he best loved. To Montcalm, in his last hour, bitter must have been the thought that the country of his heart was at the time not worthy of him. England could afford to be more generous and appreciative. Proud of her gallant son, she rendered to his remains what unavailing honor could be paid to them. At Quebec, generous hands have erected a touching memorial of regret and reconciliation. But in the quaint historic city, still half-military, half-monastic, little is needed to perpetuate the memory of either hero; the place is forever eloquent of them. The age Wolfe fell upon was contemporary with the thirty-three years' reign of George II., the monarch he served. It was a troubled time for England, and though not a great era of action until Walpole was replaced by the great commoner Pitt, it was marked, as we have seen, by much military strife and hallowed by many a heroic deed. Wolfe was born in Kent, England, in 1726, and was the son of Edward Wolfe, a lieutenant-general in the army. When a mere stripling, he received a commission and took part in the campaigns in Flanders, into which England was carried by her Hanoverian connections; and he was also in Scotland with the Duke of Cumberland during the grim suppression of the Stuart cause. There was glory to England in neither of these campaigns, though they brought

DEATH OF WOLFE.

had censured for their defeat in the attack some time before at Montmorency, and they were eager to win his praise by their bravery. They double-shotted their muskets by his orders, and the effect was so fearful that the French were soon thrown into confusion. Quick to seize his opportunity, Wolfe led a bayonet charge, which has been effective times without number, when made by the Scottish Highlanders. A bullet struck the young hero's wrist, and, a moment later, he was hit in the side, but he paid no attention to the hurts, and still led his impetuous men forward. Then a third bullet entered his breast and made a mortal wound. Wolfe sank to the ground, and was hurriedly carried to the rear. He heard some one order a surgeon to be sent for, but interposed in a weak voice:

"It is useless; this is the end."

He was dying at the time, but he suddenly brightened, when one of the group around him exclaimed:

**Deaths of Wolfe and Montcalm, 1759**

"They run! they run!"

"Who run?" he asked, with surprising energy.

"The French," was the reply; "they are giving way everywhere."

"Now, God be praised; I die happy," he murmured, and breathed his last.

It was about the same time that Montcalm, while desperately

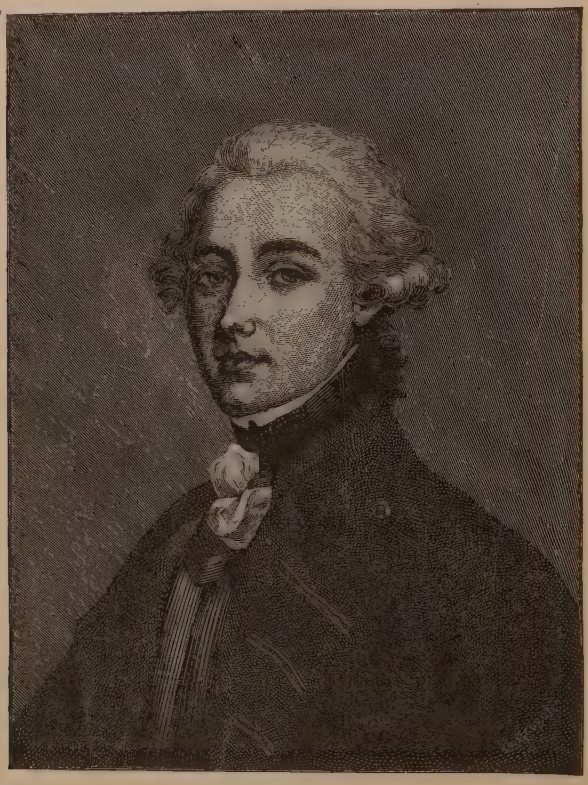
---

military renown and rapid professional advancement to the future hero of Louisbourg and Quebec. The military ardor manifested by Wolfe at an early age is remarkable, for, when only fifteen, he carried the colors of the Twelfth Regiment of Foot on the march with the allied army from Ghent to the Rhine; while, a year later, we find him acting-adjutant, and, two years afterwards, a brigade-major and an old campaigner, "familiar with Highland broadswords and French bayonets," and carrying several years of individual responsibility, when celebrating with his parents, in an interval of peace, his twenty-first birthday. We have seen what this youthful, impetuous spirit accomplished at Louisbourg, and the momentous results of his conquest of Quebec are signally manifest to-day. To capture a stronghold that had been deemed impregnable, might well seem to Wolfe a hopeless task, for behind its walls, or the earthworks that lined the Beauport shore, lay most of the strength of Canada. "The white-coated infantry of old France," writes his latest biographer, "were there; the regiments of Bearne, Guienne, and royal Roussillon, the blue-clad soldier of the colonial marine, the militia from the seignories in hunting-shirts and homespun, and the trappers (*coureurs de bois*), well-nigh as wild and savage as the Indian, who, in paint and feathers, filled in the picturesque and striking scene. Montcalm was there, of course, in person, and Vaudreuil, the Governor-General, and the skilful soldier Levis, and the active Repentigny, and the Scottish soldier of fortune, Chevalier Johnstone, who had already fought against Wolfe at Falkirk and Culloden." Soon, alas! the whole of the actors in this striking pageant were to pass from the scene, and the emblem of another power was to supplant on the surrendered citadel the crown and lilies of France.

striving to rally his troops, was struck down by a second wound. He was carried into the city, where the surgeon told him he had but a few hours to live.

"So much the better," he replied, "for I shall not live to see the surrender of Quebec." He died the next morning.

It thrills one to picture the heroic death of these two brilliant leaders, the one "in the robing of glory, the other in the gloom of



GENERAL JAMES WOLFE

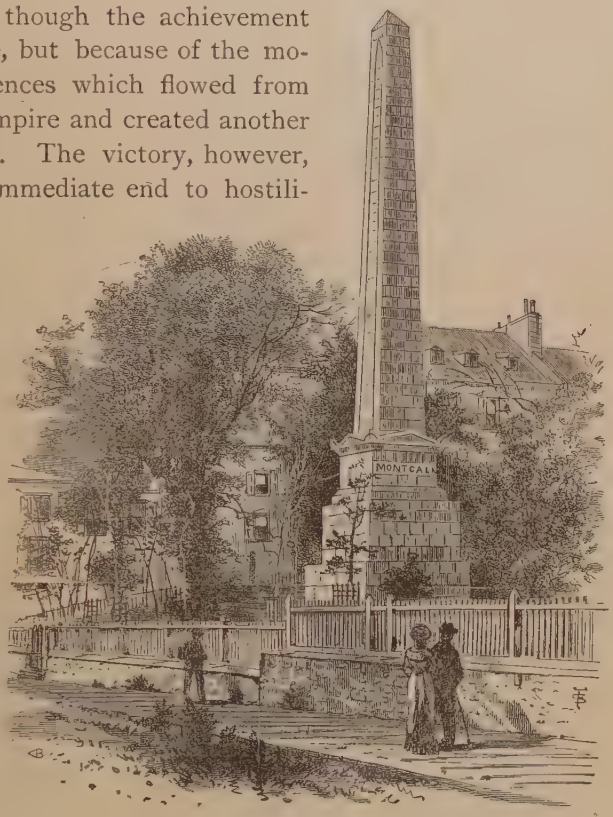
defeat," and there is much that is touchingly generous in the inscription on the granite shaft, reared many years afterwards, in the city of Quebec, by a British governor of Canada:

"TO THE MEMORY OF WOLFE AND MONTCALM."

Five days after the battle, Quebec surrendered, and an English garrison occupied the citadel. A month later, Great Britain burst

into a flame of bonfires and illuminations, and the clanging bells spoke the joy of the nation over the splendid victory, while all mourned the death of the hero, who perished before the shouts of triumph could reach his ears.

The conquest of Quebec is ranked by historians as one of the great victories of the world,—not on account of the conflict itself, though the achievement was a daring one, but because of the momentous consequences which flowed from it: it ended one empire and created another in the New World. The victory, however, did not bring an immediate end to hostilities. Chevalier De Levis,* the successor of Montcalm in command of the French forces at Montreal, withdrew to that city, but nothing was done until the following spring, when he strove to recover Canada. He had a force of ten thousand men, with which he descended the St. Lawrence against Murray, who marched out of Quebec with less than seven thousand to meet him. They met at Ste. Foye, three miles above the city, and in a sanguinary battle, on the 28th April, 1760, the English were defeated with the loss of a thousand soldiers and a train of artillery.




MONUMENT TO WOLFE AND MONTCALM

**Battle of Ste. Foye**

*This brilliant French officer, who had been Montcalm's second-in-command, had seen long and arduous service in Bohemian, German, Rhenish, and Italian campaigns. Montcalm, just before his death, expressed his satisfaction in entrusting him with the command of the French army, and had written of him "as a very talented man with a

PERIOD III
ENGLAND AND FRANCE IN AMERICA
1758 TO 1783

Murray then fell back into the city, where he was closely besieged by the French army. The situation of the garrison, for a time, became critical; but early in May a British squadron came up the St. Lawrence with reinforcements and provisions. De Levis thereupon abandoned the siege, and made haste to return to Montreal (which was now the last stronghold of the French in America), where all the available forces were collected for the final struggle.

Amherst, the English commander-in-chief, who had spent the winter in New England, now recommenced hostilities. He moved slowly but with irresistible certainty. Waiting until fully ready, he set three armies in motion against Montreal, and advanced them with such remarkable precision, that, starting from widely separated points, their arrival before the town was almost simultaneous. With ten thousand troops, Amherst marched to Oswego, where Sir William Johnson joined him with a thousand warriors belonging to the Six Nations Confederacy. He crossed Lake Ontario, descended the St. Lawrence, and was in front of Montreal on the 6th of September. General Murray arrived on the same day from Quebec with twenty-five hundred soldiers, and on the next day, Colonel Haviland came down the Richelieu with three thousand more who had journeyed from Crown Point, expelling the French from Isle-aux-Noix while *en route*. When De Vaudreuil, the French viceroy, saw the seventeen thousand troops in front of the city, he knew that resistance was useless and Montreal capitulated. This was the final act of the drama. On the 8th of September, 1760, all of Canada passed from the dominion of France to that of England, and the lilies of France were supplanted by the cross of St. George.

**Capitulation of Montreal, 1760**

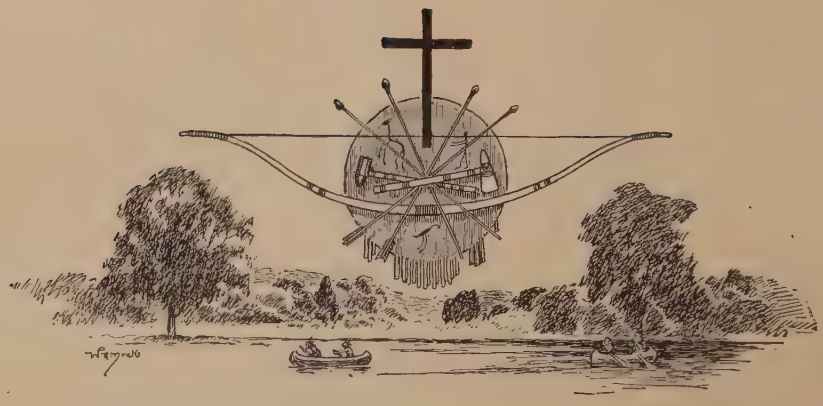
On the high seas, as well as in Europe, the war continued till near the close of 1762—the advantage resting almost uniformly with the English. At last, on the 10th of February, 1763, a treaty of peace between the two nations was signed at Paris, and hostilities terminated. By the provisions of this important treaty, France gave up to England all her possessions in America east of the Mississippi, from its source to the river Iberville, and through Lakes Maurepas and Pontchartrain to the Gulf of Mexico. Spain, which had also been involved in war with England, ceded East and West Florida to

lofty military spirit and great decision of character, indefatigible, courageous, and conversant with military routine." He afterwards became a duke and field-marshal of France, dying in 1787.

that country, while France gave to Spain Louisiana, whose enormous area, it will be remembered, exceeded that of the whole surrendered territory.

Thus it will be seen that the Treaty of Paris took away all of France's possessions in the New World. It looked as if that country had been overwhelmingly outgeneralled, both on the field and in that of diplomacy, and yet her statesmen seemed wiser than those of her rival nations, as the events of the succeeding dozen years appeared to indicate. Had Louis XV. given better support to the colony in its hour of trial, and to his brave and faithful general, Montcalm,* another issue might have been the result. But this was not to be, all being ordered, no doubt, for the best. The French in Canada, though a conquered people, have, under English rule, had little reason to regret the change of masters. As Parkman, the historian, observes: "A happier calamity never befell a people than the conquest of Canada by the British arms."

* Louis Joseph, Marquis de Montcalm [1712–1759], was descended from a noble family, and at an early age entered the French army and distinguished himself in Italy, Bohemia, and Germany. Besides his military qualifications, Montcalm was an enthusiastic lover of his profession, a man of great cultivation and of fine literary tastes. In his forty-fourth year (1756), he came to Canada to replace General Dieskau as commander-in-chief and lieutenant-general of the forces, accompanied by the Chevalier de Levis and two other distinguished French officers—MM. de Bougainville and de Bourlamaque. Shortly after his arrival, Montcalm captured from the English Fort Oswego, on Lake Ontario, and a year later took Fort William Henry and repulsed Abercrombie's attack on Ticonderoga. His defence of Quebec was spirited, though owing to the incapacity of de Vaudreuil, the governor, and the malfeasance of Bigot, the last of the royal Intendants of Canada, he despaired of saving the colony from overthrow by the British. His integrity of purpose and ardent patriotism, no less than his bravery on the Heights of Abraham when the final issue came, shed lustre upon his career and impart pathos to his death. At Quebec, he shares with his conqueror, Wolfe, the honor, of a fateful day in the annals of the Continent. His remains were interred in the Church of the Ursulines within the walls of the historic city he died to defend. The monument to the joint memory of the two heroes, an illustration of which will be found in a preceding page, stands in the Governor's Garden, just off Dufferin Terrace, in the ancient Capital.



## CHAPTER XXVII

### *PONTIAC'S WAR*

[*Authorities:* The Peace of Paris, which occurred three years after the capitulation of Montreal and the surrender of the whole French army in Canada, confirmed the cession of the country to Britain, and closed the dominion of France in the vast region extending east of the Mississippi, from New Orleans to Cape Breton, including the great valleys of the Ohio and the St. Lawrence. By the same treaty (1763), France also ceded to Britain a number of her islands in the West Indies; while Spain surrendered her claim to Florida. In the year of the Peace, and while the "Definitive Treaty" was being considered by the European powers, a formidable and widespread Indian rising in western Canada threatened the stability of the English conquest. The present chapter is devoted to the subject of this rising, known as Pontiac's War, which, however, was stamped out in the following year (1764), and the disaffected Indian tribes were subdued. For a fuller account of the events connected with this thrilling episode in the early history of the western settlements, see Parkman's "Conspiracy of Pontiac." Kingsford's "History of Canada" may also be consulted, together with Cooley's "Michigan," in the "American Commonwealths'" series.]

Pontiac.

IT will be remembered that previous to the French and Indian War, France had established a chain of military posts in the West, her intention being to found a great empire in the Mississippi valley; but the dream vanished forever with the conquest of Canada, and it became the duty of France to turn over all her possessions in America to England.*

A few months after the surrender of Quebec, General Amherst

* By the treaty of Paris (1763), France ceded to England all her domain in the New World, with the exception of New Orleans and the adjacent parts of Louisiana; which, by a secret treaty made also at the period, she ceded to Spain. Louisiana, as we shall subsequently learn, was restored to France in 1800, and was acquired by the United States, by purchase, in 1803.

sent Major Robert Rogers, with his famous rangers, to carry the tidings to the commander of the French post at Detroit and to receive the submission of that and the other forts on the border. Rogers set out late in the autumn of 1760, with an escort of two hundred of his men. The journey was comparatively pleasant until they reached the site of the present city of Cleveland. There a bitter storm broke upon them and they decided to go into camp until the

MAJOR ROGERS AND CHIEF PONTIAC

sun shone again. While resting, Rogers received a visit from a party of Ottawa Indians, accompanied by a chief of striking appearance. He told Rogers that he was the owner of that country, and he demanded to know by what right the white men invaded it. From what has been related about Rogers in another place, it will be understood that no one knew Indian nature better than he. Although among the most daring of men, and the hero of many hairbreadth escapes, he owed much of his success to his tact. He recognized the

PERIOD III
ENGLAND AND FRANCE IN AMERICA
1758 TO 1783

chieftain before him as Pontiac, one of the most gifted of his race, and he set about winning his good-will. He told his visitor that in the war which had been going on for several years between England and France, England had won. Canada was no longer French, but English, and, as soon as Rogers could reach Detroit and tell the commandant there what had occurred, that post would yield. Rogers added the hope that the great Pontiac would allow him and his friends to pass through his dominion, and that the white and red men would always be friends. The officer managed this delicate business with so much skill that Pontiac gave his consent, and said that so long as the English acted rightly they could stay in the country and would not be disturbed by him or his warriors.

Major Rogers reached Detroit without further incident, and the post surrendered November 29, 1760. Hundreds of Indians gathered around and watched the singular scene. Many of them failed to understand why so large a force should submit to one so weak, unless the English were gifted with more than human prowess. But the scowling Pontiac saw through it all, and it filled his soul with wrath. "These English," he reflected, "have conquered the French; now they mean to turn upon the red men and make slaves of them, but it shall not be."

**Pontiac and his Designs**

Naturally the French felt resentful towards their conquerors, and the traders helped to inflame the mind of Pontiac by telling him that their king had been asleep, but would soon awake and leave not an Englishman in the country. The chieftain brooded over the matter for days and nights, and then formed one of the most formidable conspiracies ever planned by his race against the white men. His scheme, in short, was to unite all the tribes, and make an attack on the same day upon every western post. France had proved herself almost the equal of England, and now with the aid of a dozen or twenty tribes, she surely would conquer the armies of that country. The Ottawa sachem displayed wonderful ability in carrying forward his grand scheme, so fascinating to him and to his people. He knew that a rash move on his part would destroy all hope of success, and that the blow could not be struck for weeks and months, perhaps not for years. Hence he waited and plotted for two whole years, before he sent his messengers to the different tribes, with an explanation of his plans and a request for their promise to join him in driving the English from the continent. The credentials borne by these ambas-

sadors consisted of a tomahawk, painted red, and a wampum war-belt. So thoroughly did they do their work that they visited every tribe between the Ottawa and the Lower Mississippi. The influence of Sir William Johnson kept all the Six Nations out of the conspiracy, except the Senecas, who sent word to Pontiac that they would join him in his war against the English.

The tribes under the immediate control of this chieftain were the Ottawas, Ojibwas, and Pottawatomies. The Wyandots and a number of the southern tribes also pledged themselves to him, and the movement threatened to devastate the entire western frontier. The date fixed for this uprising was May 7, 1763. The plan was simple, but it was designed to be thorough: each tribe was to attack the nearest fort, and then join in assailing the settlements.

**Vast Scope of the Conspiracy**

Now, if the reader will reflect that this conspiracy was more than two years in maturing, that it extended over many thousands of square miles of country, and that of necessity hundreds of Indians were approached who were not friendly to the scheme, it will be seen that with all Pontiac's cunning it was impossible to keep his plans absolutely secret: the wonder is that they were not fully known much sooner. One day a friendly Indian came to Ensign Holmes, commanding at Fort Miami (on the present site of Fort Wayne, Indiana), and gave him the war-belt, which Pontiac's messenger had brought to the tribe. Holmes, by guarded inquiry, learned the whole plot. He sent the war-belt to Major Gladwyn, commanding at Detroit, with a letter asking him to acquaint General Amherst with the ominous doings. Gladwyn would not credit the story, and in his letter to Amherst assured him there was no danger. How many times this woful mistake has been made by those similarly placed!

Pontiac held a council of war (April 27th), on the Ecorcé (*ā-kor'-sā*) River, near Detroit, at which there was a formidable gathering of warriors. He made them an impassioned speech, roused their ardor, and made clear his plans. He was to make the attack on Detroit, which he visited a few days later with a number of his people, that he might study all its features. Then he again called his faithful ones around him, and assured himself that there was no misunderstanding on the part of any one. Pontiac arranged to visit the fort with a party of his chiefs, each of whom was to carry a gun hidden under his blanket. They would make a formal call upon Major Gladwyn, and Pontiac was to deliver a brief address, at the close of

which he would present the commandant with a wampum belt, but, in doing so, would hand it reversed. This was to be the signal. Instantly each chief was to whip out his gun and begin the massacre. The warriors lounging in the streets or about the gates would be in a state of expectancy, and, upon hearing the guns fired, would attack the soldiers and settlers.

Detroit at that day was laid out in the form of a square, inclosed by a high palisade. At each corner was a wooden bastion upon which several pieces of artillery were mounted, and there were block-houses over the gateway. The dwellings were about a hundred in number, with narrow streets between, and with a broad space separating the houses and the palisades. All the buildings, including the chapel, were of wood. The garrison numbered one hundred and twenty men, and forty or fifty more were capable of bearing arms in an emergency. In the river near by lay two armed schooners.

Pontiac had always been allowed to enter the town unchallenged. On the fateful morning of May 7th, when he knew that the fearful plot which had been brewing for more than two years must come to a head, he appeared at the gate, with sixty of his warriors, each of whom carried a loaded rifle under his blanket, and with knife and tomahawk within instant reach. The guns had been shortened by the Indians and all their weapons were concealed. The chief led the way through the gate, when one quick, sweeping glance told him that he had been betrayed. The whole garrison was under arms, and every officer had a sword and two pistols in his belt. The sight must have filled the sachem's bosom with fury, but he mastered his emotions by a supreme effort, and, approaching Gladwyn, asked in an indifferent voice:

**The Conspirator Checkmated**

"Why do I see so many of my brothers with arms in their hands?"

"I have ordered them out for exercise," answered Gladwyn.

The Indians coolly took the seats assigned them and Pontiac made his address. A more trying test of one's nerves could hardly be conceived. Although aware that his plot was known, he was on the point of giving the signal for the onslaught. Indeed he essayed to do so, but Gladwyn, who was closely watching him, made a gesture. Instantly the rattle of arms was heard outside, and Pontiac passed the wampum belt to the commandant in proper form. Major Gladwyn answered the address of the chieftain by saying that he would be glad to continue the friendship with his visitor and warriors, but

he would do so only on condition that they proved themselves worthy of it. The infuriated visitors then withdrew.

Jamestown had its Pocahontas, and Detroit was saved through the friendship of an Indian maiden. She learned a short time before that many of the savages had filed off the ends of their gun-barrels. The blacksmith who had been asked to help in the work was suspicious and told Gladwyn of it, and from the Indian girl the commandant learned the whole truth. Pontiac kept up the semblance of

PONTIAC OUTWITTED AT DETROIT

friendship a brief while longer, but, when told that he could pass through the gates only alone, and that his warriors must stay outside, he threw all disguise aside. His followers emitted their war-whoops, and, dashing off to the houses of several English settlers living outside the palisades, killed the hapless ones and held aloft their scalps before the garrison.

Pontiac now brought the Ottawa village to the Detroit shore of the river, placing it at the mouth of Parent's Creek, which later on was known as Bloody Run. This was a little more than a mile northeast of the fort. The Ojibwas had joined the hostiles and the memorable

siege of Detroit began. The warriors sheltered themselves behind outbuildings, trees, stumps, and earth, and kept up a desultory fire for several hours. The garrison replied as chance offered, and, with a charge of red-hot slugs from a cannon, set a group of outbuildings ablaze and picked off a number of savages, while they were scurrying to shelter. During this exchange of shots, several of the garrison were wounded, but none killed.

Major Gladwyn was still disposed to look upon the situation as less grave than was the fact. When Pontiac asked to have a talk with Major Campbell, the second in command, that officer was sent to him. The Major passed through the gate with Lieutenant McDougal for his companion. A number of the garrison warned Campbell that Pontiac intended treachery, but the officer was an old acquaintance of the chief, and did not believe that any harm would come to him. After the two had entered the Indian lines, and had the "talk," which amounted to nothing, they were informed that they were prisoners and would not be allowed to return. They were kept for several weeks, when an enraged warrior killed the major in revenge for the death of a relative. Lieutenant McDougal, however, succeeded in making his escape and rejoined the garrison. The force of the besiegers was soon increased by the arrival of the Wyandots. The attacks of the savages were so galling that the garrison made several sallies, and levelled everything that could serve as a screen for their enemies.

**Siege of Detroit, 1763**

The Indians made repeated efforts to fire the buildings, knowing that if a conflagration was once fairly started, it would sweep everything before it. Burning arrows were launched from the surrounding woods, and stuck in the inflammable roofs of the building. Little bursts of flame instantly appeared, but the defenders were watchful and always kept a supply of water at hand. Every attempt of the besiegers was frustrated, and the vigilance of the garrison was relaxed neither night nor day. The food was used sparingly, a great deal being obtained secretly from the Canadians on the other side of the river, who brought it over at night. Pontiac considered them friends and did not suspect what they were doing. He forbade pilfering from them, but, when it became necessary, made regular levies upon the people, for which he gave in payment his promissory notes. These were written on the inside of birch-bark, and signed with his totem, which was the figure of an otter. He was probably the first Ameri

COPYRIGHT 1898.

FROM THE ORIGINAL DRAWING BY JULES TURCAS

RED-HOT SHOT

can Indian to issue "paper currency," and to his credit be it recorded that the Ottawa chieftain redeemed every one of his notes.

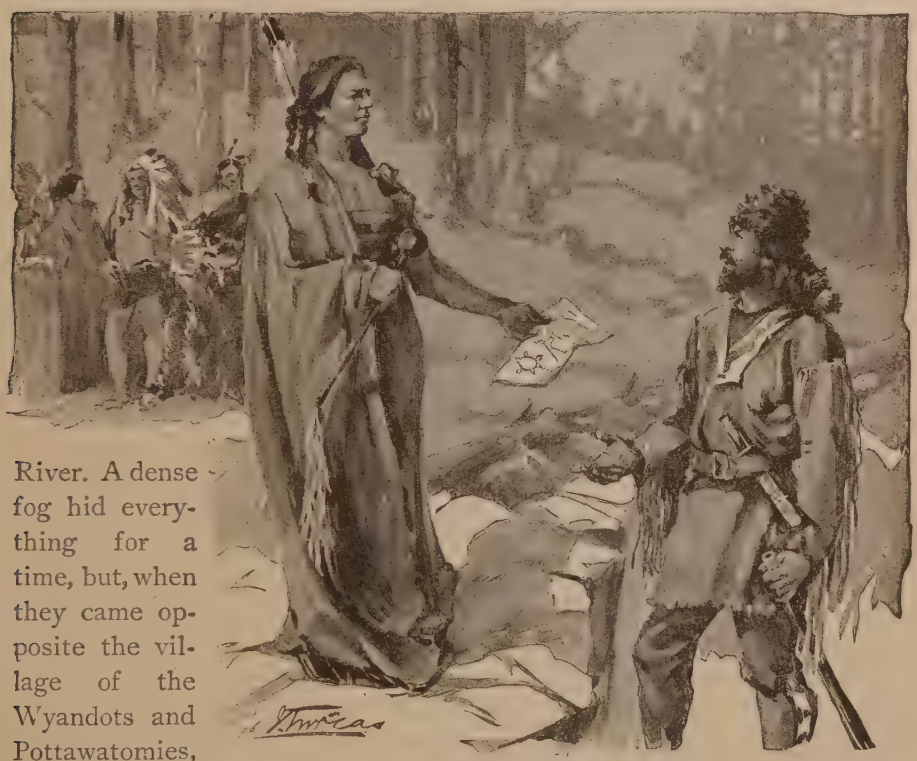
As the days and weeks passed, the danger of Detroit increased. The supply of provisions ran low and the question of supply became a serious one. The besiegers steadily grew in number and held high hopes of success. Reinforcements and supplies were due by way of Lake Erie, but they were so tardy that Major Gladwyn sent one of his schooners to hasten them. When several days had passed, the sentinels on the watch called out that the supply boats were in sight. Scores of eyes were turned towards them, and the crews were seen rowing vigorously. But, suddenly, a strange thing was observed; in one of the boats a white man was seen fighting desperately with an Indian. Each craft contained a number of savages, who were lying down, hoping to enter the fort unsuspected. All the stores, guns, ammunition, and most of the reinforcements intended for the fort had been captured by the besiegers. The schooner, sent some time before, saw nothing of the boats and kept on to Niagara. Meanwhile, the smaller craft followed the coast of Lake Erie to the mouth of the Detroit River. There they landed, and the men were kindling fires for an encampment when they were attacked by a body of Wyandots. Sixty were killed or taken prisoners. Two boats managed to get away, one of which contained Lieutenant Cuyler and forty men. They returned to Niagara, while the Wyandots forced their captives to row to Detroit.

**Relief Intercepted**

A second expedition was fitted out at Niagara and sailed in the schooner sent from that port. Just as she arrived, the wind died and she was compelled to drop anchor. All knew the peril of the situation and not an eye was closed in slumber. About midnight a number of canoes, laden to the gunwales with Indians, shot out from the gloom, and were paddled swiftly towards the schooner. They were permitted to approach until within a rod or two, when a volley of musket-balls and a broadside of grape killed and wounded more than thirty savages. The remainder pulled frantically for the shore. Soon after, the schooner was able to make her way to the fort. Pontiac chafed at seeing the two vessels, and his fertile mind formed a plan to destroy them. He constructed a number of large rafts, piled them with brushwood, which was fired, and then they were set afloat. But, as in the case of the attempt of the French fire-ships upon Wolfe's

fleet at Quebec, the watchfulness of the crews saved the vessels. The flaming rafts drifted past without harming either of the schooners. As the weeks passed, the Pottawatomies and Wyandots grew tired of the prolonged siege and sent overtures of peace to Major Gladwyn. An exchange of prisoners took place, but the Ottawas and Ojibwas remained as hostile as ever.

Thus matters stood when, early on July 29th, twenty-two barges, with two hundred and eighty men from Niagara, entered the Detroit River. A dense fog hid everything for a time, but, when they came opposite the village of the Wyandots and Pottawatomies, the barges received a fire which killed and wounded several men. This, it will be noted, was a characteristic piece of Indian treachery, since the two tribes, only a few days before, had made a pledge of peace with Major Gladwyn. The reinforcements were in charge of Major Dalzell, who was certain that a vigorous movement would crush the savages and end the siege of Detroit. He quickly formed his plans and was so confident



PONTIAC'S PROMISSORY NOTES

of success that the commandant, against his own judgment, gave his consent that he should carry them out.

Before daylight, on the 31st of July, two hundred and fifty men left the fort, and stole through the woods towards the Indian encampment. They followed the shore, and two bateaux, each with a swivel-gun at the bow, advanced at the same pace with the soldiers. The movement was well-conceived, but unfortunately some of the Canadians had told Pontiac of it. He concealed his warriors until the whites had gone by, and then suddenly attacked them just as the van reached the bridge over Parent's Creek. Half the advance guard were slain. Dalzell, to save the remainder, ordered an instant retreat. The hapless soldiers were surrounded, and all would have been massacred to a man had not Major Rogers, with a number of brave fellows, seized a house crowded with fugitives, and held it against an overwhelming assault, while the rest of the troops fought their way back to the fort. The bateaux then added their fire to that of Rogers, and he and his little band withdrew. The English lost fifty-nine in killed and wounded. Major Dalzell was struck and afterwards shot dead while trying to save a fallen sergeant. This sad affair is known as the battle of Bloody Ridge.

**Battle of Bloody Ridge**

Such disasters were disheartening to the besieged, and greatly elated the besiegers; but there was never an hour when Major Gladwyn or the garrison entertained a thought of yielding. They were ready to fight to the end and undergo the last degree of suffering in defence of their lives and of those dependent upon them. On the night of August 4th, one of the sloops was close to the fort on her return from Niagara with despatches. The crew numbered less than twenty, and while anchored were assailed by more than two hundred Indians, who were not seen in the dense gloom, until they were on every side and swarming over the bow, stern, and gunwales. The crew fought fiercely, but were overwhelmed. In his desperation the mate shouted to one of the sailors to fire the magazine. Most of the Indians understood the order, and, warning the others, leaped as far out in the water as possible, diving and swimming with frantic haste to get beyond danger. Although the captain and several of the crew were killed, the escape of the remainder was one of the most singular episodes in the siege of Detroit.

The schooner brought some sorely needed provisions, but they were not enough to give substantial help.

The peril of Detroit caused great anxiety at Niagara, from which point repeated attempts were made to relieve the garrison. The Indians were on the watch for these expeditions, and did everything to frustrate them; but it was not always they alone who fought against the white people. In one instance, a terrific storm caused the loss of seventy lives and all the stores and ammunition on their way to the beleaguered post.

While the American Indian under certain circumstances displays

THE INDIAN FIRE RAFTS

a remarkable degree of patience, he rarely manifests it during military operations. Weeks and months had passed, and still Detroit was safe. The besiegers could see no hope of immediate, nor indeed of remote, success. They were tired of the enterprise and wished to end it. So, on the 12th of October, all the tribes except the Ottawas sent messengers to Major Gladwyn, saying that they desired peace. That officer answered that he had not the power to make peace, but was willing that there should be a truce. This was accepted by the Indians, and the commandant made good use of the opportunity to collect a supply of food for the winter.

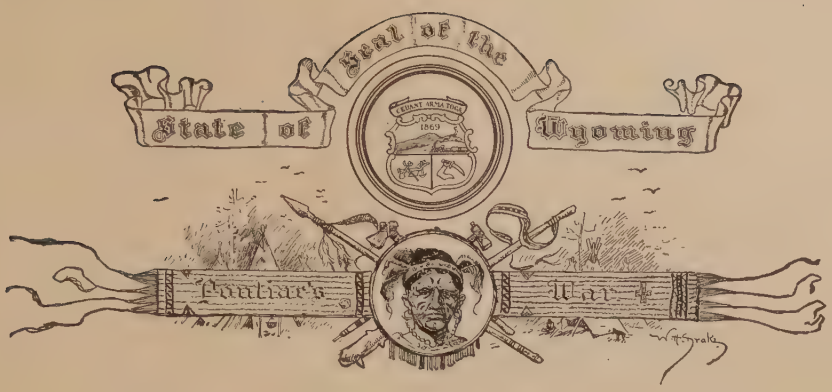
While the truce was in force a few signs of discontent appeared among Pontiac's own tribe, the Ottawas. His terrible personality was not sufficient to hold all of them wrought up to the fighting point, though, as a whole, they stood by him until the fatal blow fell in the latter part of October. This came in the form of a messenger from M. Neyon (*nā-yon*), the French commandant at Fort Chartres (*shart'r*) on the Mississippi, who told Pontiac that peace had been made between France and England, and that the French would give him no help in fighting against the English. The chief was chagrined, but he saw that all was over. The dream of his life vanished. He had no choice save to abandon the siege, but he would not fully yield. Leaving the neighborhood with his leading warriors, he visited the Maumee country, and strove to rouse the tribes in that section to resistance, but his success was trifling.

**Pontiac's Schemes Foiled**

Indian "Pipe of Peace"

POSSESSIONS
LAKE WINNIPEG
English River
Albany River
Portage
LAKE NIPIGON
Ignace
English River
Jack Fish
Dalton
Ridout
Ramsey
Lake Abitibi
Lake Temiscamingue
Sudbury
Callander
Ottawa River
Gatineau River
St. Maurice River
Lake St. John
Saguenay River
Mt. Louis
Matapedia
Riviere du Loup
Edmunston
NEW BRUNSWICK
Presque Isle
Houlton
Fredericton
QUEBEC
Three Rivers
Arthabasca
St. Jerome
MONTREAL
St. Lambert
OTTAWA
Lake Nipissing
Sault Ste. Marie
Algoma Mills
Pt. St. Ignace
Mackinac
Muskoka Lake
Halliburton
Brockville
Kingston
Peterborough
Lake Simcoe
Lake Ontario
TORONTO
Allandale
Harrison
Hamilton
London
Stratford
Black River
Alger
Manistee
Reed City
Bay City
Saginaw
Midland City
Georgian Bay
Lake Huron
Lake Michigan
Lake Superior
Red Lake
Red Lake Source
Rainy Lake R.
Port Arthur
Tower
Isle Royale
Two Harbors
DULUTH
Wadena Jc.
Brainerd
Bemidji
Mille Lacs
Little Falls
Hinckley
Fergus Falls
Sauk Centre
Morris
Ortonville
MINNEAPOLIS
ST. PAUL
Stillwater
Hastings
Red Wing
Winona
Owatonna
Mankato
Shakopee
Minnesota River
Redwood Falls
Troy
Pipe Stone
Worthington
Ashland
Superior Jc.
Escanaba
Stambaugh
L'Anse
Marquette
Menominee
Merrill
Chippewa Falls
Eau Claire
Merillon
Stevens Pt.
Wausau
Lo. Crosse
Oshkosh
Portage
Fond du Lac
Watertown
Milwaukee
Madison
Prairie du Chien
Belvidere
Dubuque
Sheldon
Albert Lea
Mason City
Charles City
Algona
Le Mars
Cedar Falls
Sioux City
Fort Dodge
Iowa Falls
Jefferson
Marshall T.
Grinnell
Cedar Rapids
DAVENPORT
Rock Island
Moline
Freeport
Rockford
Sawanna
Clinton
Aurora
Joliet
Monmouth
Galesburg
La Salle
Peoria
Pekin
Bloomington
Kankakee
Logansport
Ft. Wayne
Decatur
Lafayette
Danville
Muncie
Tolono
Quincy
Keokuk
Hamburg
Entire
Albia
Chariton
Oskaloosa
Rock Falls
Red Oak
COUNCIL BLUFFS
OMAHA
DES MOINES
BURLINGTON
Mary
Falls City
Trenton
Gallatin
Marion City
Mexico
Moberly
Hannibal
Palmyra
Kirksville
Macon City
Chillicothe
Trenton
Grundy Cty.
Princeton
Gallatin
Milan
Unionville
Bethany
Cameron
Maryville
Plattsburg
Liberty
Weston
Platte Purchase
Platte City
Parkersburg
Grafton
Marietta
Cambridge
Zanesville
Newark
Columbus
Springfield
Dayton
Richmond
Indianapolis
Terre Haute
Vincennes
Evansville
Cincinnati
Lexington
Frankfort
Louisville
Toledo
Dehanee
Fostoria
Findlay
Galion
Marion
Mansfield
Akron
Chicago Jc.
Cleveland
Oil City
Titusville
Warren
New Castle
Allegheny Cy.
Pittsburgh
Tyrone
Huntingdon
Harrisburg
Sunbury
Reading
Lancaster
Philadelphia
Camden
Wheeling
Hagerstown
Cumberland
Baltimore
Washington
Fredericksburg
Richmond
Norfolk
Petersburg
Lynchburg
Roanoke
Bristol
Knoxville
Nashville
Memphis
Chattanooga
Atlanta
Charleston
Wilmington
Raleigh
Greensboro
Charlotte
Columbia
Augusta
Savannah
Jacksonville
Tallahassee
Montgomery
Mobile
New Orleans
Vicksburg
Jackson
Meridian
Shreveport
Texarkana
Little Rock
Memphis
Nashville
Louisville
Cincinnati
Buffalo
Rochester
Syracuse
Albany
Utica
Schenectady
Saratoga Springs
Lake Champlain
Burlington
Montpelier
Concord
Portsmouth
Dover
Manchester
Lowell
Boston
Providence
Hartford
New Haven
Bridgeport
Long Island
Brooklyn
New York
Newport
Cape Cod
Nantucket
Martha's Vineyard
Elizabeth
Trenton
Camden
Atlantic City
Cape May
Dover
Wilmington
Baltimore
Washington
Annapolis
Portland
Augusta
Bangor
Katahdin Iron Works
Blanchard
Greenville
Skowhegan
Waterville
Auburn
Lewiston
Farmington
Rumford
Bethel
Fairfield
Mt. Desert
Eastport
Calais
St. Andrews
St. John
Moncton
Shediac
Dorchester
Amherst
Pictou
New Glasgow
Truro
Halifax
Yarmouth
Digby
Annapolis
Windsor
Kentville
Wolfville
Sydney
Louisburg
Cape Breton
Prince Edward Island
Charlottetown
Summerside
Pictou
Antigonish
Guysboro
Canso
Arichat
Port Hawkesbury
Baddeck
Sydney Mines
North Sydney
Glace Bay

UNITED STATES
EAST.
GULF OF MEXICO
ATLANTIC OCEAN
BAHAMA ISLANDS
Longitude West from Greenwich
TOPEKA
KANSAS CITY
ST. LOUIS
JEFFERSON CITY
SPRINGFIELD
OZARK MTS.
INDIAN TY.
LITTLE ROCK
ARKANSAS
MEMPHIS
NASHVILLE
TENNESSEE
CHATTANOOGA
CUMBERLAND MTS.
KENTUCKY
LOUISVILLE
FRANKFORT
EVANSVILLE
VIRGINIA
RICHMOND
NORFOLK
RALEIGH
NORTH CAROLINA
CHARLOTTE
SOUTH CAROLINA
COLUMBIA
CHARLESTON
ATLANTA
GEORGIA
MACON
SAVANNAH
MONTGOMERY
MOBILE
TALLAHASSEE
JACKSON
NEW ORLEANS
BATON ROUGE
LOUISIANA
HOUSTON
GALVESTON
FLORIDA
JACKSONVILLE
ST. AUGUSTINE
KEY WEST
THE EVERGLADES
Cape Hatteras
Cape Fear
Cape Canaveral
Cape San Blas
Cape St. George
Point-au-Fer
DELTA OF THE MISSISSIPPI
Bay St. Louis
Chandeleur Islands
Isaacs
Dry Tortugas
Florida Keys
Bahama Islands
Grand Bahama
Abaco
Eleuthera
San Salvador
Cat Island
Long Island
Crooked Island
Acklins Island
Inagua
Mississippi R.
Red R.
Arkansas R.
Ohio R.
Tennessee R.
Cumberland R.
Kanawha R.
Big Sandy R.
Guyandot R.
Big Sandy R.
Kentucky R.
Green R.
Wabash R.
Illinois R.
Missouri R.
Osage R.
Neosho R.
Grand R.
Platte R.
Kansas R.
Republican R.
Smoky Hill R.
Big Blue R.
Nemaha R.
Little Blue R.
Yellowstone R.
Powder R.
Tongue R.
Big Horn R.
Wind R.
Milk R.
Judith R.
Musselshell R.
Missouri R.
Marias R.
Sun R.
Teton R.
Dearborn R.
Gallatin R.
Madison R.
Jefferson R.
Big Hole R.
Bitter Root R.
Clark's Fork
Flathead R.
Kootenai R.
Pend d'Oreille R.
Spokane R.
Snake R.
Salmon R.
Clearwater R.
Boise R.
Payette R.
Weiser R.
Malheur R.
Owyhee R.
Humboldt R.
Carson R.
Truckee R.
Walker R.
Mono Lake
Owens R.
Mojave R.
Colorado R.
Gila R.
Salt R.
Verde R.
Little Colorado R.
San Juan R.
Rio Grande
Pecos R.
Canadian R.
Arkansas R.
Cimarron R.
Neosho R.
Verdigris R.
Grand R.
Platte R.
Kansas R.
Republican R.
Smoky Hill R.
Big Blue R.
Nemaha R.
Little Blue R.
Yellowstone R.
Powder R.
Tongue R.
Big Horn R.
Wind R.
Milk R.
Judith R.
Musselshell R.
Missouri R.
Marias R.
Sun R.
Teton R.
Dearborn R.
Gallatin R.
Madison R.
Jefferson R.
Big Hole R.
Bitter Root R.
Clark's Fork
Flathead R.
Kootenai R.
Pend d'Oreille R.
Spokane R.
Snake R.
Salmon R.
Clearwater R.
Boise R.
Payette R.
Weiser R.
Malheur R.
Owyhee R.
Humboldt R.
Carson R.
Truckee R.
Walker R.
Mono Lake
Owens R.
Mojave R.
Colorado R.
Gila R.
Salt R.
Verde R.
Little Colorado R.
San Juan R.
Rio Grande
Pecos R.
Canadian R.
Arkansas R.
Cimarron R.
Neosho R.
Verdigris R.




## CHAPTER XXVII (Concluded)

### *PONTIAC'S WAR (Concluded)*

[*Authorities:* It is impossible not to feel a certain admiration for the Ottawa chieftain in his desperate but hopeless stand against the spoliation of his race by the white men. Pontiac fought bravely, but, from the nature of the circumstances, his struggle was as hopeless as that of King Philip a century before. The hour was at hand when even the Ottawa leader was compelled to bow before the resistless smiting of the hand of fate; and there is something grimly suggestive in the fact that Philip and Pontiac were each killed by one of his own race. The authorities have already been named.]

IT has been shown that although Pontiac's main operations were directed against Detroit, his aim was to capture all the forts in the West. In more than one instance his allies were successful.

The garrison at Fort Michilimackinac (*naw*) were watching a game of lacrosse, played by the Indians, June 4, in front of the post, when by a previous understanding the ball was knocked within the fort. While the officers and English were viewing the struggle, they were assailed by the warriors with such fierceness that no resistance could be offered. Seventeen of the garrison were killed and the remainder made prisoners.

At daylight, June 15, Fort Presque Isle, standing near the present site of Erie, Pennsylvania, was attacked by two hundred Indians. Ensign Christie and his men retreated into the blockhouse, whose roof was repeatedly fired by the assailants and extinguished by the defenders. When the water gave out, the men began digging a well within the blockhouse. The weather was intensely hot, and but for frequent reliefs the toilers would have been overcome.

PERIOD III — ENGLAND AND FRANCE IN AMERICA 1758 TO 1783

By the most vigorous work, water was reached in time to extinguish the flames on the roof. The Indians showed a determined bravery almost equal to that of the defenders. They threw up a breastwork, on a ridge near the fort, and pressed the fighting for more than two days. They repeatedly tried to run from behind this breastwork to a point nearer the block-house, but, in every instance, the vigilant garrison shot down the daring warriors. Then the besiegers began mining, and there was no way of stopping them. The house of the commanding officer was reached and fired, and the smoke and heat nearly overcame the garrison; but they kept up the unequal contest and shot every redskin who exposed himself to the unerring marksmanship of the defenders. The assailants pushed their mining until the garrison could hear the click of their implements under the block-house itself. This was the end of all hope of successful defence, but Ensign Christie refused to surrender until his enemies gave a solemn pledge that he and his worn-out men should be allowed to retire unharmed. The pledge, as a matter of course, was broken; the garrison were bound and taken prisoners to Pontiac's camp, though Christie succeeded in making his escape and reached Detroit.

**A Singular Escape**

A still more singular history attaches to Fort Le Bœuf, which was attacked in the same week that saw the fall of Presque Isle. A strong force of Indians surrounded the structure, which was defended by Ensign Price and thirteen men. The assault was pressed, and during the darkness the savages succeeded in setting the block-house on fire. It was impossible to extinguish the flames from within, and the Indians danced with glee in the belief that all the white men were undergoing one of the most cruel forms of death. But they were mistaken. The garrison, when the flames were crackling over their heads, cut a hole through the logs at the rear of the block-house, and every man reached the shelter of the woods undiscovered. Some succeeded in getting to Fort Pitt, but most of them perished of hunger on the way.

Fort Venango, lower down on the Alleghany, was captured by treachery, and Lieutenant Gordon and all the garrison were massacred. Fort Ligonier was also attacked, but it fortunately held out until relief came.

It will be recalled that Fort Du Quesne had been rebuilt and its name changed to Fort Pitt. It was a post of importance and was in

COPYRIGHT 1896.

INDIAN STRATEGY—THE GAME OF LACROSSE

FROM THE ORIGINAL DRAWING BY CHARLES KENDRICK

charge of Captain Ecuyer (*ā-quee'-ā*), who had a force of more than three hundred soldiers, tradesmen, and woodsmen under him. He learned of the disasters that had overtaken some of the other posts, and knowing that his trial would soon come, made preparation for it. Early in the summer, a delegation of Delawares asked for an interview with Ecuyer, saying that they had important news for him. They assured the officer that a mighty confederation of tribes had captured all the frontier posts, and that the only way he and his garrison and their families could save their lives was by hurrying to the English settlements. Evil Indians were in the vicinity, but the Delawares promised to protect their white friends from harm. The captain thanked them for their kindness in bringing him such important news, and then gravely informed them that he would return their favor by giving them, in confidence, some startling tidings in which they were interested. Six thousand English soldiers, he said, were marching through the wilderness at that hour and were due at Fort Pitt within a few days. Another army, almost as large, Ecuyer added, was hurrying to crush the Ottawas and Ojibwas; and a third had already reached the Virginia frontier, where they would be joined by the Creeks and Catawbas, who would never give up the task upon which they had entered, so long as a Delaware chief, warrior, squaw, or pappoose remained above ground.

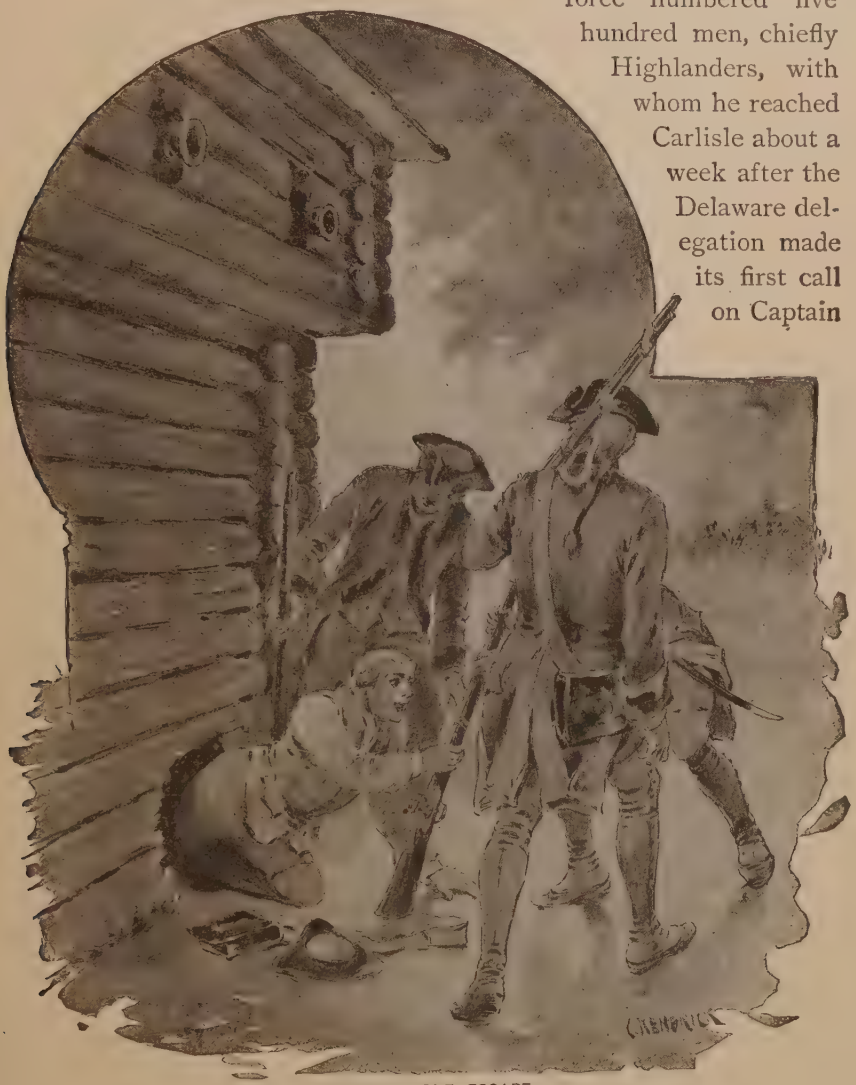
**Fort Pitt**

An Indian can tell a tremendous untruth when he sets about it; but it may be doubted whether any Indian ever surpassed this achievement. The delegation was frightened and left, but they must have known that they had been deceived when a month went by without any signs of the three destroying armies, for they returned to Captain Ecuyer and repeated their falsehood. He told them they were uttering lies and snapped his fingers at them. If they thought they could harm Fort Pitt, they might begin as soon as they chose. The angry Delawares accepted the challenge and attacked the fort that night. Securing such screens as they could, they kept up the fire until daylight, but did little damage.

**Colonel Henry Bouquet**

Fort Pitt, however, was in serious peril, for like the other posts, it stood alone, and was threatened by a force of Indians not only much stronger than the garrison, but which daily increased in numbers. Unless reinforced it must succumb. Its danger became widely known, and Colonel Henry Bouquet, commanding the English troops in Philadelphia, was ordered to march with all haste to its relief

Colonel Bouquet was an experienced Swiss officer and one of the most brilliant leaders who ever undertook so difficult a task. His force numbered five hundred men, chiefly Highlanders, with whom he reached Carlisle about a week after the Delaware delegation made its first call on Captain



A REMARKABLE ESCAPE

Ecuyer. Bouquet found the town overrun with fugitives, for the border was in a state of panic, and many did not feel safe, even though so far east as that point. The suffering of these people was so great that Bouquet delayed his march in order to help them. He

**Bouquet at Carlisle**

PERIOD III
ENGLAND AND FRANCE IN AMERICA
1758 TO 1783

resumed his advance about the middle of July, sending forward thirty picked men to Fort Ligonier, and then, following with the main body of his men, scattered the Indians besieging that post and Fort Bedford. He then pressed forward over the same ground traversed by Braddock on his fatal march eight years before. No fear of Bouquet repeating that frightful blunder. His vigilance was never relaxed, and it was certain that whatever fate overtook him, no censure could be laid at his door. His troops had full confidence in him, and, justly so, for he was brave and skilful.

**Attack by the Indians**

Early on the sultry afternoon of August 5th, Bouquet approached a small stream and stopped to allow his tired men to rest. He had hardly halted when his advance guard was furiously assailed. He immediately sent forward a support, and inclosed his horses, cattle, and wagons with the reserve guard. The fighting in front, however, quickly became so fierce that he placed himself at the head of the reserve, delivered several deadly volleys, and by a brilliant bayonet charge dispersed the savages. The Indians were in large numbers, and assaulted both flanks of the troops and assailed the convoy at the rear. Bouquet coolly withdrew, and, inspired by his example, his men fought with desperate valor. Wherever a group of Indians showed themselves, the soldiers charged them with the bayonet, often chasing them to cover or spitting them among the rocks and trees. The white men fought as did their enemies, and had the forces been more nearly equal, the Indians could not have held their ground for an hour. The fighting continued of the most furious character all the afternoon, ceasing only when night closed over the scene. Then Bouquet sat down on a rock, and by the light of a lantern pencilled a despatch to General Amherst. He gave an account of all that had taken place, and said that he and his men would fight to the end, but intimated that not one of them was likely to see the set of the morrow's sun.

**Peril of Bouquet**

The little force was surrounded by a merciless horde, and by daylight there would be hundreds of additional Indians on the ground. No relief could reach the soldiers for several days, and their fate must be decided within a few hours. Sixty had been killed and many wounded. They could not obtain a drop of water, and the suffering from thirst, especially among the wounded, drove them almost frantic. At dawn, the Indians furiously renewed the fighting. The troops were completely hemmed in, and their assailants were so

well concealed that it was almost impossible for the soldiers to fire an effective shot. They frequently charged the points where they saw the flashes, but the dusky foes skurried to other cover before they could be pricked by the bayonet.

Two companies of light infantry, by Bouquet's direction, now fell back into the circle which was the main point of defence. The troops on the right and left parted to receive them, and then closed

COLONEL BOUQUET WRITING HIS DESPATCH

up in the rear. Then two other companies quickly formed, apparently to aid in the withdrawal. Fearful that the soldiers after all would elude them, the Indians rushed tumultuously out of the woods and streamed after them. This was precisely what Bouquet had sought to bring about. His purpose was to draw his assailants into a position where he could deliver a blow, and he now did it with terrible effect. He continued his brilliant fighting, feinting, and manœuvering until, before the savages understood their peril, they themselves were surrounded. We need hardly describe what followed; it will suffice to say that only the superior agility of a few

**Brilliant Generalship of Bouquet**

PERIOD III
ENGLAND AND FRANCE IN AMERICA 1758 TO 1783

of the Indians enabled them to escape. Colonel Bouquet reached Fort Pitt on the 15th of August and relieved the post of all danger.

M. Neyon, the French commandant at Fort Chartres, did not rest with a message to Pontiac, warning him that he must cease hostilities against the English. He sent wampum belts and calumets to many other tribes between the Ohio and the Lakes, urging them to peace, and assuring them that any other course was highly displeasing to their great father in France.

**Peace**

Peace came at last, in the summer of 1766, when the representatives of the leading tribes met Sir William Johnson at Oswego, and signed a treaty of friendship. There were many noted chiefs at that gathering, but the one who towered above all others was the mighty Pontiac, sachem of the Ottawas. He was the greatest of his race during the eighteenth century, as Philip was during the seventeenth. Each was killed by one of his own people, Pontiac meeting his end in 1769, on the site of East St. Louis, by a Kaskaskia Indian, who had been hired to do the deed by an English trader.*

* The death of Pontiac, following upon the conquest of Quebec and the downfall of French power in America, brought about, for a time, a cessation of Indian feuds. By the conquest, England had made large additions to her territory rather than added to the number of her subjects. The population of the whole of New France, on the Fall of Quebec, did not exceed sixty-five thousand, while that of the English colonists on the Atlantic was close upon two millions. This inequality is accounted for by the widely differing modes of French and English colonization. French colonization was feudal and semi-religious; England's was characterized, in the main, by the escape from these Old World bonds, and from many things that impeded the exercise of civil and religious rights. A momentous change was now, however, to come about in the English colonies on the seaboard, in their efforts to shake off the commercial yoke of the Mother Country and assert the freedom of their own institutions and the legislative control of their own affairs.

PONTIAC DELIVERING THE WAMPUM BELT.

## CHAPTER XXVIII

## *THE COLONIES, AND RESISTED TAXATION IN 1770*

[*Authorities:* The morrow of independence was fast approaching. Before estrangement comes, it has been deemed well in the present chapter to give some account of the conditions and characteristics of the Thirteen Colonies and the action of their congresses in resisting the aggressions of the Crown. These colonies were now growing into commonwealths, to be soon knit into a nation, and we shall presently see through what troubles they had to pass ere the colonial system fell, under which they had hitherto existed, multiplied and thriven. The authorities are numerous for this era, including besides the standard histories, English and American, the biographies of the chief actors of the time, enumerated at the head of the next chapter, together with the works that depict the social life and character of the period, such as Frothingham's "Rise of the Republic," Fiske's "American Revolution," Weedon's "Social and Economic History of New England," Hutchinson's "Diary and Letters," Morse Earle's "Colonial Dames and Good Wives," and Maud W. Goodwin's "The Colonial Cavalier."]

THE "original thirteen colonies" were Virginia, New York, Massachusetts, Maryland, Rhode Island, Connecticut, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, New Hampshire, North Carolina, South Carolina, and Georgia. Of these, Virginia, with nearly half a million inhabitants, was the most populous. Massachusetts came next with more than three hundred thousand, and Pennsylvania was only a few thousand behind; Connecticut had nearly two hundred thousand; Maryland about two hundred thousand, while New York, now the great Empire State, had twenty thousand less. Georgia was the weakest of all the colonies, the total population, including negroes, being some twenty-five thousand. Benjamin Franklin, in 1766, estimated the

**The Original Thirteen Colonies**

entire white population in this country, between the ages of sixteen and sixty years, to be three hundred thousand.

The colonies were strong, rugged, and growing. At one period, during the French and Indian War, they had twenty-five thousand militia and volunteers under arms. When Massachusetts was asked for twenty-three hundred soldiers, she furnished seven thousand, and kept them in the field until the close of hostilities. Nor will it be forgotten that the colonies equipped and maintained all their soldiers that served with the royal army. In addition to the large number of volunteers furnished by Massachusetts, she manned the forts, equipped a twenty-gun war-ship and an armed sloop, and gave three hundred seamen to the royal navy. She was the most powerful of all the colonies. At the close of the French and Indian War our country had a debt of £2,500,000, of which England repaid a little more than one-fourth.

**Strength of the Colonies**

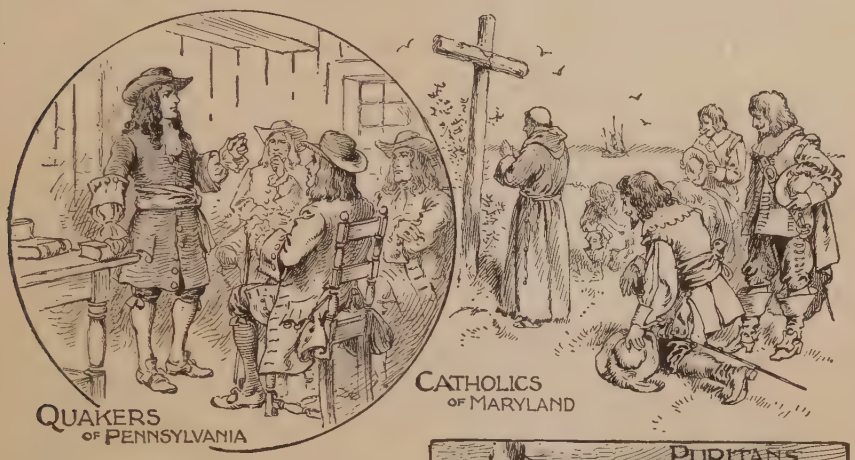
We have learned that many sects and several European nations were drawn upon in the original settlement of the colonies, and that they stamped their peculiarities upon the different peoples. To Virginia went the Churchmen, to New England Churchmen and Dissenters, to Maryland Roman Catholics, and to Pennsylvania the Friends or Quakers. Although in some cases no little bigotry was shown, all were drawn towards one another by an intense love of liberty and an aspiration for the common weal.

**Social Differences**

The diverse origin of the first settlers caused many interesting differences in their social condition. In Virginia, the people were noted for their hospitality, their frankness and refinement, but they were fond of sports and amusements that were not permitted in Puritanical Massachusetts. Virginia, previous to the Revolution, was the real South, and that she possessed a magnificent stock of ability, brains, and genius has been proven many a time by the achievements of her sons in war and statesmanship. It seems strange, in these later days, that the people of New England could ever be brought to submit to such strict censorship, social and religious, as prevailed for many years. Among the things forbidden by the General Court of Massachusetts were the wearing of funeral badges, the drinking of healths, either in public or private, and celebrating the Church festivals of Easter and Christmas. In Hartford, the freeman who refused to vote was fined. The tendency in these times is towards the other extreme. All persons under twenty years of age were forbidden to

use tobacco without the certificate of a physician. Those who used it were permitted to do so only once a day, and not within ten miles of a house. This law, which sent the people off into the woods to indulge in the "weed," was certainly discouraging to the bad habit.*

Use of the "Weed"



* Fifteen months after the Pilgrims sailed from Holland, they held a harvest-festival lasting a week. This is generally alluded to as the first thanksgiving in New England, but it was not a thanksgiving in the sense of a day set apart by the church, being appointed by the governor, and no religious service is referred to. A year later when drought prevailed, a day of fasting and prayer was observed. The sky was overcast during service, and there was a plentiful rainfall the next day. The same thing occurred some years later. After the rain just referred to, a day of thanksgiving was appointed, July 30, 1623, and on the following day a relief ship arrived. This was the first thanksgiving, unless the following record from an old Bible supplants it: "Sonne born to Susanna Whie (White) December 19th, 1620 yt six o'clock morning. Next day we meet for prayer and thanksgiving."

A few years later both fast days and thanksgiving days came at irregular intervals. There were fasts for Anne Hutchinson's heresies and feasts for getting rid of her; fasts and feasts on the occasion of plagues, pests, and prodigies; fasts and feasts for King

PERIOD III
ENGLAND AND FRANCE IN AMERICA 1758 TO 1783

One of the cherished privileges of an American citizen, who can afford to do so, is to lie abed as long as he wishes, yet, as has been stated, there was a time in Hartford when every well person was compelled to get up and to retire at nightfall at the ringing of the watchman's bell. In short, New England strove to make all people good and to fashion their lives by the enactment of rigid laws.

"Pennsylvania Dutchmen."

Over the border in New York, the contrast was striking. There, and in portions of New Jersey and Pennsylvania, the Dutch stamped their characteristics so strongly upon the people that they are perceptible to this day. It is not an unfrequent thing to-day to meet "Pennsylvania Dutchmen" who, like their parents, were born in that State and yet cannot speak a word of English. They were industrious, frugal, clean, and lovers of good order and personal comfort. The Dutchman was fond of his pipe and beer, frowned upon all manner of disturbance, worshipped the God of his fathers, and taught his children to do the same. The Swedes and Finns on the Delaware resembled the Dutch in many respects.

The Friends

The Friends showed a marked contrast to the Puritans, the Churchmen, and the Dutchmen. They left their imprint deep and distinct in Pennsylvania and West Jersey. William Penn was one of the greatest philanthropists that ever set foot on American soil, and, so long as Pennsylvania was under his direct rule, it was a model commonwealth. No other province equalled it in growth and prosperity or in freedom from disturbance. Every one is familiar with the characteristics of the Friends, or Quakers. Although they do not

---

Philip's War, which was called, "Jacob's Trouble in the Wilderness;" and fasts and feasts for the witches.

Christmas and New Year were the great festivals among the Dutch in New Netherland. The celebrations lasted for three weeks, during which the courts did not sit and the public offices were closed. All entered into the favorite sports—bowling, dancing, ball playing—and the tap-houses were crowded with the jolly burghers. At the beginning, May Day was kept with great spirit; beside which they observed the Passover season and Whitsuntide. The first public fast-day of the Dutch was March 4th, 1643, N. S., during Governor Kieft's stormy administration. Having crushed the Indians by massacre, August 30th, 1645, N. S., was appointed the first thanksgiving for the deliverance of the heathen into their hands. A fast day among the Dutch meant a fast in the early part and a feast towards evening. It so happened that on the same day the Connecticut Puritans and the New Netherland Dutchman were holding a fast and praying against each other in anticipation of a conflict. Tidings of peace coming across the ocean, each party proclaimed a thanksgiving. The order at New Haven was striking: "Praise, English Jerusalem;" "Thank the Lord of Zion" at Netherland.

remove their hats in salutation, one feels like uncovering to those plain, unostentatious, honest, and God-fearing people.

Down to the Revolution, agriculture was the main pursuit of the colonists, and little was seen in a household which was not the product of the soil. The spinning-wheel was in every home, and the deft fingers of the wife and elder daughters plied the knitting needles during the long winter evenings by the fireside. The furniture was of the simplest character; stoves were unknown; candles or the roaring fire gave illumination, though lamps were employed on occasion; gas, sewing-machines, the use of steam, and hundreds of modern conveniences, had not been dreamed of. Travelling was done on horseback or in lumbering vehicles, visits from point to point along the coast being made by sloop or other vessel.

**Early Education**

Early attention was given to the education of the young. Schools were established in Virginia as early as 1621, but the institutions languished, and the money provided for their support was turned over to the trustees of William and Mary College, founded at Williamsburg, Virginia, in 1692. Common schools flourished in New England from the first, but compared with those of to-day they were indifferently equipped. The benches and desks were as uncomfortable as they could be, and the teacher did not spoil the child by sparing the rod. In some places, the teacher, besides instructing the youth, had to ring the bell for public worship, lead the choir on Sundays, serve summonses, dig graves, and perform other occasional duties.

Mention has been made of the founding of Harvard and Yale colleges, the former being the oldest in the country. In addition to these institutions others were Princeton College, which was established in New Jersey in 1746; King's (now Columbia), in New York in 1754; Brown in Rhode Island, in 1764, while the first medical college was founded in Philadelphia in the latter year.

**The First Newspapers**

In another place something has been said concerning the first newspapers in the colonies. At the close of the French and Indian War there were only ten journals published in the country, although more than twenty had been started at various times. The first permanent journal was *The Boston News Letter*, which made its appearance in the spring of 1704. The other pioneer papers which were successful were, in Pennsylvania, *The American* (Philadelphia), 1719; in New York, *The New York Gazette*, 1725; in Maryland, *The Maryland Gazette* (Annapolis), 1728; in South Carolina, *The*

PERIOD III
ENGLAND AND FRANCE IN AMERICA
1758 TO 1783

*South Carolina Gazette* (Charleston), 1732; in Rhode Island, *The Rhode Island Gazette* (Newport), 1732; in Virginia, *The Virginia Gazette* (Williamsburg), 1736; in Connecticut, *The Connecticut Gazette* (New Haven), 1755; in North Carolina, *The North Carolina Gazette* (New Berne), 1755; in New Hampshire, *The New Hampshire Gazette* (Portsmouth), 1756. Thus the only colonies which had no newspapers, during the French and Indian War, were New Jersey, Delaware, and Georgia. All the papers specified, excepting two, were "*Gazettes*," which was a favorite name, but they were, in the main, only official local organs.* At a later era, unhappily, they many of them all too soon became the organs of personal vituperation and bitter party strife.

**Colonial Confederation**

We have seen that as early as 1643 the New England colonies formed a confederation, as a matter of safety. It did not last long and was without any national idea. William Penn proposed a more

* The colonial records contain many creditable instances of the business aptitude and ability of our maternal ancestors. Numerous accounts are given in Alice Morse Earle's "Colonial Dames and Good Wives." Thus in 1638, Margaret and Mary Brent came from England to the province of Maryland, where they took up land and built manor houses, besides which they were active in business matters. Margaret Brent was the executrix for Governor Leonard Calvert (Lord Baltimore) and quelled an insurrection by paying off the mutinous troops. Elizabeth Haddon founded Haddonfield, New Jersey. She came alone to this country in 1701, when only nineteen years old, and was a most successful business-woman throughout her long life. John Clayton, writing in 1688, speaks of a number of "acute, ingenious gentlewomen" in Virginia who carried on thriving tobacco plantations, drained swamps, grazed cattle, and bought slaves. The founder of Taunton, Mass., was Elizabeth Poole. Among the Salem list of traders who banded together during the Stamp Act agitation, to oppose taxation, were five women merchants. When Mrs. Sarah Goddard became a widow, she took up printing as a business with her son and published *The Providence Gazette and Country Journal*, the only newspaper issued in Providence before 1775. Her son removing to New York, she conducted the business alone for years. Her daughter published, from 1775 to 1784, *The Maryland Journal and Baltimore Advertiser*, being the third newspaper published in Maryland. Anna Katherine Green carried on another Baltimore journal, *The Maryland Gazette*, from 1767 to 1775. Clementina Rind published *The Virginia Gazette* at Williamsburg previous to the Revolution. Much earlier (1738–1740), Elizabeth Timothy carried on *The South Carolina Gazette*. Then her son took it, and his widow, Anne Timothy, published it for ten years (1780–1790). On the death, in 1735, of James Franklin, the elder brother of Benjamin, his widow and two daughters carried on a printing house for a number of years, besides publishing *The Newport Mercury*. *The Massachusetts Gazette and Boston News Letter*, the only paper printed in Boston during the siege, was published by Widow Margaret Draper. Another widow publisher was the relict of Andrew Bradford, who founded the first newspaper in Pennsylvania (*The American Weekly Mercury*, 1719), and who issued the paper from 1742 to 1746. *The Connecticut Courant* and *The Sentinel* were published for years by the widows of their founders, the last instance being *The New York Weekly Journal*, from 1746 to 1748.

comprehensive plan, and it was discussed on both sides of the Atlantic, but at the time with no thought, in either country, of the independence of the colonies. It was at Albany, in 1684, that a congress met, composed of the officers of the governments of Massachusetts, New York, Maryland, and Virginia, and the sachems of the Six Nations. Ten years later a similar convention was held in the same town which prevented the Iroquois from making peace with the French of Canada, and in 1722, still another sought to strengthen the alliance with the same powerful Indian confederacy.

**Tendency Toward National Union**

Gradually the tendency towards a national union grew among the several colonies. In the summer of 1748, a congress met in Albany, the inciting cause being the disputation between the royal governors and the people. The crown officers in America wished to secure a colonial revenue, with the aid of British interference, and independent of the action of colonial assemblies. Another object was to weld the bonds of friendship between the Six Nations and their western neighbors and the English. The latter purpose was attained, but the royal governors failed to gain anything for themselves.

The question of national independence which was taking shape and growing among the colonies disappeared for a time with the breaking out of the French and Indian War. The provinces ardently united with Great Britain in the supreme struggle for mastery in the New World. They rendered splendid service and rejoiced when England was triumphant at all points and the French no longer held a foothold in the country. That the American colonies were destined in time to become independent of Great Britain was "written in the book of fate." None can conceive our being the subjects of that country at any period during the nineteenth century. The separation was certain to come, sooner or later, but had England pursued a generous, statesmanlike policy towards her American colonies, their independence would have been deferred, and when it did come, it probably would have been a peaceful separation. But the mother was jealous of her lusty child on this side of the ocean; and, alarmed at her growing strength and her yearning for democratic ideas, she sought to crush the sentiment by repressive and tyrannous laws. She made the fatal mistake of believing that she could stamp out disaffection and compel the colonies to feel their dependence to that extent that they would not strike a blow for freedom.

**Destiny of the Colonies**

The Navigation Act, which was passed about the middle of the

PERIOD III
ENGLAND AND FRANCE IN AMERICA
1758 TO 1783

seventeenth century, was a serious blow to the prosperity of the colonies. It caused much dissatisfaction, and was often evaded; but protests were of no avail and it remained in force. In 1733, the Importation Act became law. This laid outrageous duties on sugar, molasses, and rum brought into the provinces. That, too, was often evaded and finally disregarded altogether. Then England forbade the manufacture of steel, or the cutting of pine-trees outside of inclosures. All that these oppressive acts effected was to deepen the resentment of the people.

**The Navigation and Importation Acts**

Resolved to enforce the Importation Act, the English ministry, in 1761, caused the issuance of "writs of assistance," which empowered petty constables to search any house or place, and to seize such goods as they believed had not paid duty. This proceeding roused the anger of the colonies, and in Salem and also in Boston, the courts resisted the application of the writs. The eloquent James Otis, Jr., advocate-general, resigned his office rather than appear in behalf of the crown to sustain the law; in fact, he did not hesitate to denounce the act as unconstitutional. John Adams, speaking of Otis's action on that occasion, observed: "Otis was a flame of fire. With a promptitude of classical allusions, a depth of research, a rapid summary of historical events and dates, a profusion of legal authorities, a prophetic glance into futurity, and a rapid torrent of impetuous eloquence, he carried away all before him. American independence was then and there born." The determined efforts by England, in 1763, to enforce the Importation Act ruined the colonial trade with the West Indies. An immense town meeting was held in Boston, in which the most prominent citizens took part, and protested against the tyranny, but not the slightest heed was paid to them.

**Other Grounds of Dispute**

We need hardly tell the reader of these pages and certainly not the student of history, that Parliament is the governing body of England, and that the House of Commons decides what taxes and customs are necessary for the annual expenses of the kingdom Our forefathers asserted that the various provincial assemblies constituted their Houses of Commons, and that, so far as they were concerned, they alone should pass upon the question of taxation. England would not agree to this, but insisted on the vested right of taxation by the imperial parliament. At the same time, she refused to allow the Americans to have a representation in that body. This

gave rise to the exasperating grievance: "taxation without representation." *

The first decisive steps towards taxing the American colonies was taken by England in 1764. In March of that year, the House of Commons, by resolution, declared it proper to impose certain stamp duties in the provinces, and gave notice that a bill of that nature would be offered at the next session of parliament. The feeling of irritation in America was fanned into flame by the high-handed course. Public meetings were held in all parts of the country, and fervid protests made against the measure. The newspapers had a theme which overflowed their columns. Not only were remonstrances forwarded to the king and the two houses of Parliament, but agents were sent to England to endeavor to prevent the passage and enforcement of the law.

WILLIAM PITT

**Passage of the Stamp Act**

All was in vain. The great and wise Pitt had ceased to be prime minister, and Parliament scornfully refused the prayer of the American colonies. On the 22d of March, 1765, both houses passed the detested Stamp Act, which proved to be the firebrand of strife in the Revolution. Every member of the House of Lords voted for it, and in the House of Commons it had a majority of five to one. The stubborn monarch, George III., was suffering from a mental malady at the time and could not sign the bill, but the royal assent was given by a board of commissioners acting for him. The provisions of the Stamp Act were that every bond, mortgage, note, deed, license, or legal document of whatever kind, used in the American colonies should be executed on paper bearing an English stamp, and furnished

**Provisions of the Stamp Act**

* For several years, as we have seen, the relations between England and her American colonies had been strained to the point of rupture by trade restrictions imposed by the mother country, and by the attempt to levy taxes to help her to defray the expenses of the French War and maintain her increased civil and military establishments in this country. This untoward policy arose from the mistake of considering the settlements of the New World as colonial possessions, to be held solely for the financial benefit of England rather than for their own advancement and material well-being. The colonies properly objected to be taxed without their consent, and without representation in the British Parliament, and declared that they were sufficiently oppressed by the burden of customs duties already imposed upon them, and by the share they had borne in the maintenance of their local assemblies.

PERIOD III — ENGLAND AND FRANCE IN AMERICA 1758 TO 1783

by that government. The cost varied according to the nature of the document from three pence to six pounds sterling, or thirty dollars. Every newspaper, pamphlet, or almanac in the colonies had to be printed on stamped paper, costing from a halfpenny to four pence. A tax of two shillings was imposed on every advertisement. No document was legal unless written on paper bearing the hated stamp; the act was to take effect November 1st, 1765.

**Anger of the Colonies**

Never had the colonies been so wrought up as they were by the news of the passage of this law. In Boston the bells were solemnly tolled, and in Philadelphia they were muffled. A multitude, numbering thousands, marched through the streets of New York, holding aloft a copy of the Stamp Act, with a death's-head nailed to it, and with an immense placard displaying the words: "THE FOLLY OF ENGLAND AND THE RUIN OF AMERICA!"

Rioting occurred in the other colonies, and the stamp officers were forced to resign. At the invitation of Massachusetts, the various colonial representatives met in New York, October 7th. At this conference twenty-seven delegates appeared from nine colonies, viz: Massachusetts, Rhode Island, Connecticut, New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Maryland, and South Carolina, while communications were received from the assemblies of Virginia, New Hampshire, North Carolina, and Georgia pledging themselves to agree to whatever was done by the "Stamp Act Congress." That body, during the fourteen days it was in session, fully discussed the rights and grievances of the colonies. John Cruger, of New York, wrote a "Declaration of Rights;" Robert R. Livingston, of the same colony, prepared a "Petition to the King;" and James Otis, of Massachusetts, formulated a "Memorial to both Houses of Parliament," all of which were adopted.

**Repeal of the Stamp Act**

The sturdy resistance of the Americans produced its effect in England. The Stamp Act was repealed on the 18th of March, 1766. The news caused great rejoicing in America. Congratulatory speeches, cannon peals, bonfires, and illuminations marked the passage of the glad tidings from colony to colony. The delighted Americans in many ways gave expression to the joy of the hour. John Hancock opened a pipe of wine in front of his mansion on Beacon Street, Boston, and invited all to partake. The citizens quickly raised a fund and released every citizen confined in jail for debt. In New York all the bells jangled merrily, cannon boomed,

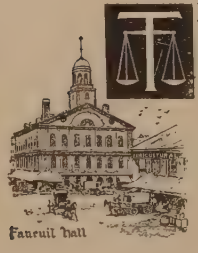
and a royal salute of twenty-one guns was fired. The Sons of Liberty raised a tall pole in front of Warren Street, upon which was placed the inscription,—"His Most Gracious Majesty, George the Third, Mr. Pitt, and Liberty." It was decided to erect a statue of Pitt and an equestrian statue of the king. Both were set up in 1770. The former was of marble, and the latter of lead! Six years later, the statue of the king was melted into bullets with which to fight his invading soldiers.

# CHAPTER XXIX

## *THE MUTTERINGS OF WAR*

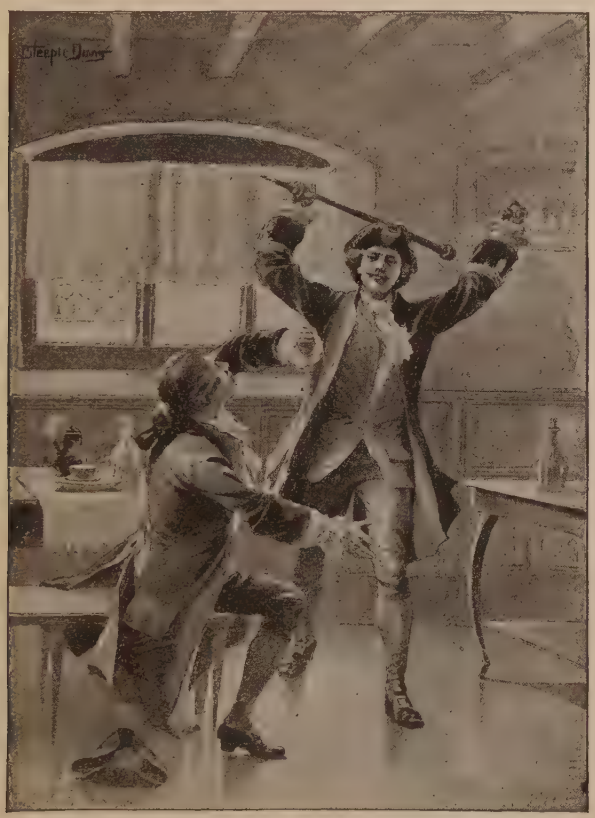
[*Authorities:* The spirit of resistance, as will be seen from the present chapter, was soon now to take a determined form; for, on the one hand, the king and his ministers stubbornly insisted on England's right to derive some benefit from her colonies; while, on the other hand, the colonists as persistently held to the principle of no taxation without representation, and upheld the rights of their own Assemblies. The results of the pending conflict will now be traced in the text as they successively developed themselves. The authorities, English and American, for the period are both historical and biographical. They include Green's "History of the English People;" Lecky's "England in the 18th Century;" Lodge's "Short History of the American Colonies;" Bryant and Gay's, Bancroft's, and Hildreth's United States Histories; Fiske's "American Revolution;" Sparks's "Washington;" Morse's, McMaster's, and Parton's Lives of Benjamin Franklin; Tudor's "Life of Otis;" Coit Tyler's "Patrick Henry;" Hosmer's "Samuel Adams;" and Morse's "John Adams."]

**More Oppressive Measures**




THE rejoicing throughout the colonies over the repeal of the Stamp Act was not allowed to continue long The repeal was simply an act of expediency. England was as insistent as ever upon her right to tax the Americans, without allowing them a voice in the matter; and even in the midst of the general jubilation there were many thoughful patriots who saw that the grave trouble was postponed only for a short time. England passed more oppressive measures, and the royal governors and her agents were ordered to enforce them. Since Boston was the hot-bed of the revolt, two regiments of British soldiers were brought thither from Halifax, by order of General Gage, the military governor of Massachusetts Against the indignant remonstrances of the citizens, they were landed on the first day of October, 1768.

Governor Bernard had gone into the country to escape the resentful wrath of the people. The citizens had been ordered to provide quarters for the troops, and their officers now demanded them. They refused, at which the officers blustered and made ominous threats. Then by force one regiment encamped in tents on the Common,



OTIS AND THE COMMISSIONER

while the other bivouacked as best they could. The night was cold, and the soldiers suffered so much that the people were touched with pity and Faneuil Hall was thrown open to them. Their presence, however, was a source of constant irritation. They were overbearing to the citizens, while the latter taunted them on the streets. Affrays were numerous and only a spark was needed to produce an explosion.

**British Soldiers in Boston**

Opposition to taxation without representation nerved all the col-

onies to the point of open resistance. Affairs in Boston grew more threatening. The eloquent Otis had been slandered in England by a commissioner, whom he took to task in a Boston newspaper. The two met in a coffee-house and the commissioner attempted to pull Otis's nose. A fierce bout followed, during which Otis received so vicious a blow on the head from a heavy cane that it permanently affected his brain and destroyed his usefulness for the remainder of his life. Yet he lived to the close of the Revolution, pitied by all, and, in the spring of 1782, met death in a manner for which he had often expressed a longing: he was killed by a stroke of lightning.*

**The Boston Massacre**

The first serious affray between the citizens of Boston and the soldiers occurred on March 5th, 1770. There had been a number of collisions, and the town was in a feverish state. An officer was sauntering along the street, when a boy, pointing at him, called out that he was too mean to pay his barber for dressing his hair. A sentinel standing near the Custom House, overhearing the insult, ran out and knocked the boy down with the butt of his musket. The boy was not so badly hurt as to be unable to use his voice, and he emitted a series of yells which quickly brought a crowd to the spot. An alarm bell was rung and the excitement spread. The boy pointed out the soldier who had struck him, and the crowd began pelting him with snowballs and lumps of ice. He raised his musket and pulled the trigger, but the weapon missed fire. The crowd rushed at him and he ran to the Custom House, near by. Captain Preston, the officer of the day, sent out eight soldiers with unloaded muskets, but provided with ball cartridges. He himself accompanied them, ner-

* James Otis [1725–1783], the eloquent and impetuous leader of the patriotic party in the War of the Revolution, was born at West Barnstable, Mass., and graduated at Harvard College in his eighteenth year. In 1746, he began the practice of law at Plymouth, and four years afterwards removed to Boston, where he became a law-officer of the crown, and ultimately Advocate-General of the Admiralty. In 1760, the British authorities put in force in the colonies what were termed "Writs of Assistance," giving power to customs officers to enter any man's house suspected of concealing smuggled goods. The legality of the measure was challenged, and Otis, as shown, rather than defend the enforcement of the writs, resigned his office and appeared for the people against their issuance and operation. Soon afterwards he was elected a member of the State Legislature, and he at once made his mark as an influential speaker on the side of liberty, and eloquently denounced British aggression on the rights of the people. In 1765, his own State (Massachusetts) sent him as a delegate to the first Continental Congress, where he became conspicuous as a leader and an impassioned orator, denouncing with telling effect the imposition of the Stamp Act and other oppressions of the Crown. We have seen, in the text, what unhappy circumstance brought on mental derangement, and how sad and calamitous was the patriot's end.

vous, but self-possessed, and it must be admitted that he showed commendable restraint. As the detachment approached, the citizens hurled snow and ice at them and shouted insulting epithets. Crispus Attucks, a muscular Nantucket Indian sailor, uttered a war-whoop and called on his companions to attack the soldiers, who, seeing that a collision was certain, began loading their guns. The crowd pressed upon them from all sides, struck their muskets with clubs,

THE BOSTON MASSACRE

and called them cowards for bringing arms against men who had no weapons. "Come on!" shouted Attucks to his friends; "they darsen't fire! Knock 'em down! Let's kill 'em all!"

Captain Preston begged the mob to refrain, but his appeal was vain. Attucks aimed a blow at Preston's head with his club, but the officer parried it by throwing up his arm It struck a musket, knocked it from the grasp of the soldier, who stooped at the same instant with Attucks, both seizing it together and wrestling violently for it. "Why don't you fire? Will you wait till we are

killed?" shouted several persons behind Preston. The soldier just then, by a fierce wrench, twisted the weapon from the hands of Attucks and shot him dead. Captain Preston, who had lost his patience, neither ordered his men to fire nor to refrain. A half-dozen discharged their guns into the crowd, for their lives were in danger. As the frightened mob scattered, eight forms were seen stretched on the ground, while three others were slightly hurt. Three were dead, and of the five remaining, two were mortally wounded. The soldiers were now thoroughly roused and would have fired upon the citizens, who ran forward to carry away the bodies, had not Captain Preston forbidden them.

**Trial of the Soldiers**

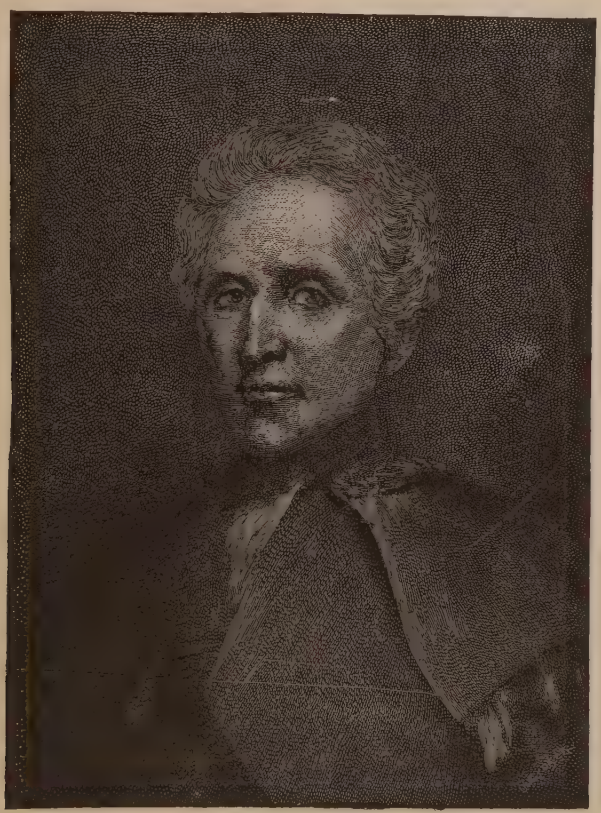
It seemed but a few minutes until news of the tragedy had spread from one end of Boston to the other. Although it was late at night, lights twinkled from every house, the alarm bells were rung, drums beaten, and men swarmed to the scene of the affray. Colonel Dalrymple promised the citizens that justice should be done in the morning, and gradually they returned to their homes. Meanwhile, Captain Preston and the eight soldiers were arrested, and the next day were charged with the crime of murder. It was not until autumn, when the excitement had considerably subsided, that the accused were brought to trial before a court in Boston. The prisoners were defended by Josiah Quincy, Jr., and John Adams, both of whom were inspired by the highest of motives, though many of their countrymen censured them for their course. Robert Treat Paine, afterwards a signer of the Declaration of Independence, was counsel for the crown. Captain Preston and six of the soldiers were declared not guilty. The others were convicted of manslaughter, branded with a hot iron on the hand in open court, and discharged.

**Settlement of the South-west**

Something like a lull in the obnoxious legislation of parliament followed the Boston Massacre and lasted for two years. During that period, the restless spirit of adventure led many Americans to cross the Alleghanies and explore the valleys of the Ohio, Cumberland, and Tennessee rivers, while others penetrated the wilderness in the more southern portions of the Misssissippi valley. Daniel Boone and his brother pioneers were traversing the Kentucky forests and opening the way for settlements, while James Robertson went to that part of Tennessee called Wautaga in 1770. He rode over the mountains from North Carolina to the Great Smokies, where he found that a few settlers had preceded him. He was so pleased with the

DEFENDING A STOCKADE.

country that he returned to North Carolina, and in the following spring came back with fifteen families, besides his own. He was an enterprising man and formed a creditable government, which, six years later, was organized into Washington county, as a part of North Carolina. The colony throve and was the first distinct body to move



DANIEL BOONE

into the wilderness and build dwellings for themselves and their families.

Lord Dunmore's War

The Indians resented this intrusion upon their lands, and what is known as Lord Dunmore's War soon broke out. The decisive battle was fought at Point Pleasant on the Great Kanawha, October 10th, 1774. The Shawanoes, the fiercest of the western tribes, were led by the famous chief Cornstalk, who brought more than a thousand warriors a long distance through the forest with such stealth that none of

the whites knew that he was approaching the Great Kanawha until he had arrived there. The Indians' line of battle was a mile long. The forces of the settlers were in number about the same as those of their enemies, and they fought for hours with only a few rods separating the lines. Cornstalk showed more skill than did Colonel Lewis, the commander of the whites, but the battle was a drawn one. In the night, however, the Shawanoes fled across the Ohio. Their loss was over two hundred, while that of the whites was one hundred and thirty men and half the commissioned officers. Some time later, a conference was held with the Indians and a satisfactory peace arranged.

**Battle of Alamance, N. C.**

Governor Tryon ruled in North Carolina. He was a bitter royalist, passionate and revengeful, wholly lacking in tact and generosity. Legislation in that colony became so oppressive that bands of Regulators * were formed and anarchy prevailed. A man named Husbands was imprisoned at New Berne and was released by these bands. Governor Tryon, with three hundred militia and several pieces of artillery, set out to punish the Regulators, and while encamped on the Eno received reinforcements. He also learned that other troops on their way to join him with ammunition had been routed by Regulators and the powder taken from them. Tryon pushed on to Alamance Creek, where he encountered those who defied the law. In the parley which followed, Tryon became angered at one of the Regulators, an old man, who came forward to meet him under a flag of truce. Snatching a musket from one of the soldiers, he shot the messenger dead. The Regulator bearing the flag of truce by a sharp dash reached his own lines without injury, although repeatedly fired upon. In the fight which followed, in May, 1771, nine of the militia and twenty of those who sought to have the laws honestly executed were killed. This, in reality, was the first battle in our War for Independence.

The commissioners of customs at Boston, in the summer of 1772, despatched the *Gaspé*, an armed British schooner, into Narragansett Bay to enforce the revenue laws. Governor Wanton, of Rhode Island, sent the high-sheriff on board the *Gaspé* with a demand upon

* An organized rising of the people in North Carolina, who resisted the payment of taxes, and other extortionate levies, except those authorized and justly imposed by their own laws.

Lieutenant Dudingston to show his commission. That officer refused and was insolent and threatening. He ordered ships in passing the *Gaspé* to lower their colors by way of salute, and when they failed to do so, he fired upon them. On the 9th of June, 1772, the packet *Hannah* refused to pay homage and the *Gaspé* gave chase. In the pursuit, the *Gaspé* ran aground and remained fast. Learning of her predicament, John Brown, a well-known merchant of Providence, organized an expedition to destroy her. Eight boats, with

THE OLD SOUTH CHURCH, BOSTON

four men in each, under charge of Captain Whipple, were collected at night, and as many more joined the expedition and were rowed with muffled oars to the stranded vessel. Seeing them approach, Lieutenant Dudingston ordered them to keep off, and, when they continued to approach, he fired his pistol among them. Instantly a musket replied, wounding the Lieutenant, who was carried below. The Americans boarded the vessel, and the crew were sent ashore

**Destruction of the Gaspé**

PERIOD III
ENGLAND AND FRANCE IN AMERICA 1758 TO 1783

with their property. Then the *Gaspé* was set on fire and some hours later blew up.

This, it is true, was a high-handed act, and large rewards were offered both by the governor and by the English government for the apprehension of the perpetrators; but though the participants were well known to scores of people, no one betrayed them. In 1775, after the war with Great Britain had begun, there was no longer any need of keeping the secret, which became the property of all. Sir James Wallace was blockading Narragansett Bay, while Whipple was in command of a small provincial naval force intended for its protection. One day he received the following note:

"You, Abraham Whipple, on the 10th of June, 1772, burned his Majesty's vessel, the *Gaspé*, and I will hang you at the yard-arm. JAMES WALLACE."

Promptly the following answer went back:

"SIR,—Always catch a man before you hang him! ABRAHAM WHIPPLE."

**Resistance to the Tax on Tea**

Since the Americans were striving for a principle, England was equally determined to enforce its asserted right to levy a share of the imperial burdens upon the colonies. Taxes were removed from all articles except tea, and the tax upon that was made so light that it could be bought cheaper in America with the tax than in England without it. Confident that the luxury would be purchased upon these terms, the East India Company filled several of their ships with cargoes of tea, and, in August, 1773, despatched them to America,—one to Charleston, one to Philadelphia, one to New York, and the others to Boston. All these places received notice of what was coming, and resolved that the cargoes should not be allowed to land. The first public meeting to consider the matter was held in New York, October 15th, 1773. The "Mohawks," as the anti-tax citizens were called, organized and were soon ready for action. The vessel on her way to the city, however, was driven out of its course by a storm and put into Antigua for repairs. It did not arrive until April, 1774. When the *Nancy* appeared she was detained in the lower bay by pilots, and a vigilance committee took possession, until the captain agreed to return to England without breaking the packages. The same course was taken in Philadelphia, while the cargo which reached Charleston was purposely stored in damp cellars where it soon rotted and became worthless.

Boston was seething with excitement for days before the *Dart*

COPYRIGHT 1898.

FROM THE ORIGINAL DRAWING BY J. STEEPLE DAVIS

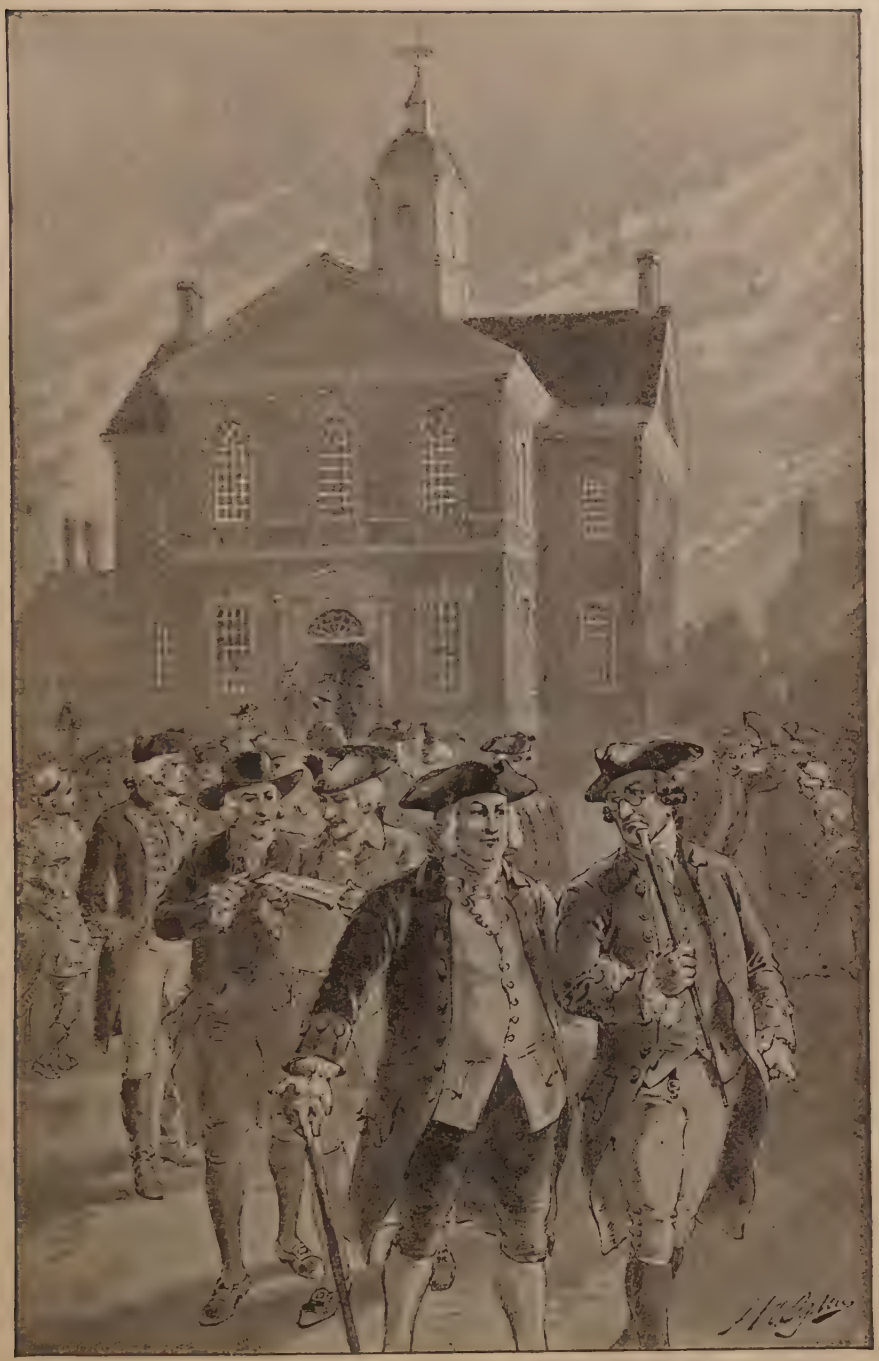
ALAMANCE THE FIRST BATTLE OF THE REVOLUTION

*mouth* with her cargo of tea reached that port. The town was placarded with calls to the citizens to rise against tyranny, and numerous public meetings were held at which fiery resolutions were adopted amid wild cheering. Two other tea-ships soon arrived and were moored alongside the *Dartmouth* at Griffin's Wharf. An immense assemblage gathered in and around the Old South Meeting House early in the evening of December 16th, 1773. Stirring addresses were made by Josiah Quincy and Samuel Adams. While the latter was speaking word was received that the governor, who had been asked to give his consent to return the obnoxious tea to England, would not allow any of the tea vessels to leave the port until their cargoes were landed. "Then," said Adams, "this meeting can do no more to save the country!"—implying that it could not now be saved to England.

**The Boston Tea Party**

These words it had been agreed should be a signal for the action that had been previously discussed. A man in the gallery, painted and dressed like an Indian, gave a war-whoop, which was answered by others, and instantly a rush was made for Griffin's Wharf. The "Mohawks" seemed to spring from the ground, and running to the pier swarmed aboard the ships. In the space of three hours 342 chests of tea were burst open and their contents emptied into the bay. Sixty men were engaged in the work, many of whom were not disguised. There was no disorder or shouting, and when the "Boston Tea Party" had concluded their operations the multitude separated to their homes.* The news of this daring act reached England in the following January. As may be supposed, it caused much indignation, and Parliament retaliated by passing the Boston Port Bill, which closed the port of Boston to all outside trade until the people had paid for the tea destroyed. It also passed a bill to regulate the government of Massachusetts, which took the right of

* The determination to prevent the bringing of tea into the country was not confined to the ships sent by England. The *Peggy Stewart*, owned by a merchant of Annapolis, Md., sailed into that harbor, October 19th, 1774. The citizens notified the owner that the tea must be sent back to England. He refused, whereupon a party took possession, and placing a torch in the hand of the owner, compelled him to set fire to his own vessel and its cargo. The act was done openly and the ship and cargo were burned to ashes. The obdurate owner was never able to obtain redress. In 1890, the Maryland Society selected "Peggy Stewart Day" as the date of its annual meeting. The destruction of the ship and tea was celebrated with considerable ceremony so late as 1894—a hundred and twenty years afterwards.



COPYRIGHT 1898.

FROM THE ORIGINAL DRAWING BY H. A. OGDEN

DELEGATES LEAVING CARPENTER'S HALL AFTER A SESSION

nomination to certain important offices from the people and gave it to the governor, and forbade the assembling of citizens to discuss public questions; a bill to transport offenders to other provinces or to Great Britain for trial, which gave to any one charged with murder, committed in aid of the magistrates, the right to be tried in England and not in the colonies (virtually a pledge of acquittal); and what is called the Quebec bill, which annexed all the territory north of the Ohio River and east of the Mississippi to Canada.

**The Boston Port Bill**

The Boston Port Bill reached Massachusetts May 10th, 1774, a few days after General Gage had been appointed governor of the colony. It had been received in New York at an earlier date. There was a large Tory element in the city, but the patriots resolved to stand by Massachusetts in the fight she had begun. New York proposed, as the first important step, a general congress of the colonies. Each colony accepted the suggestion, joining also in the pledge to support Massachusetts, which had sent a circular letter to them asking for their countenance and co-operation. The port of Boston was closed at noon, June 1st, 1774. In Philadelphia and other towns the bells tolled a funeral-knell, while in many other places the day was observed by fasting and prayer for the safety of the country. The law was rigorously enforced and soon caused widespread suffering in Boston, but her sister colonies promptly responded, shipping provisions to the half-starving people. Even the city of London, in its corporate capacity, sent three-quarters of a million of dollars for the relief of the poor in Boston. Marblehead and Salem offered the free use of their wharves and stores to their afflicted neighbor.

**Preparations for War**

Meanwhile, the mutterings of war grew louder throughout the land. Men from all stations in life joined military companies which practised tactics day and night. Many had not forgotten the lessons learned in the French and Indian War, a dozen years before. Boys trained with sticks for muskets, and the anvils of the blacksmiths rang as they forged guns, swords, and bayonets, while others made gunpowder, and the women assisted in heating the bullet moulds and melting lead. After the close of Congress at Philadelphia, the Provincial Congress of Massachusetts voted to enroll 12,000 of her patriots, under the general name of "Minute-Men," who were volunteers that would be ready at a minute's notice to take the field with weapons in hand. Connecticut and Rhode Island did the same: other colonies caught the contagion of patriotism, and in

Virginia the minute-men formed an important part of her military force.

The instructions which reached General Gage in the summer of 1774 annulled the government of Massachusetts and made him autocrat of the province. He formed a council of thirty-six members, but the indignation of their fellow-citizens quickly forced twenty of them to resign, and the others cowered under the protection of the troops in Boston. A convention of delegates, representing the towns in the county to which Boston belonged, met on the 6th of September, 1774, and boldly declared that the acts of Parliament were not entitled to obedience; recommended the seizure as hostages of such crown-officers as fell in their way, after any patriot should be arrested for a political offence, and protested against the fortifications begun by the soldiers of General Gage on Boston Neck as an act of hostility. They declared that they would not begin war, but would act, at first at least, on the defensive; and they further notified the general that they would never submit to the late acts of Parliament affecting Americans.

**General Gage made Military Governor of Massachusetts**

On the 5th of September, 1774, the first Continental Congress met in Carpenter's Hall, Philadelphia. There were present forty-four delegates, ten fewer than the number elected. Georgia, the youngest of all the colonies, was unrepresented. Among the Virginia delegates were George Washington and Patrick Henry. All were able and patriotic men, who had only the good of their country at heart. Peyton Randolph, an eminent lawyer of Virginia, was made president. The discussions were worthy of the great minds that took part in them, and who fully comprehended the tremendous crisis that was at hand. The feeling was general that the hour had not yet come for a formal separation from the mother country, and it was hoped that the stubborn king and Parliament would comprehend the danger in time to do justice to the Americans and win them back to their allegiance,—at this period an easy thing to do. On the 8th of October, however, the following resolution was passed:

**The First Continental Congress**

"*That this Congress approve the opposition of the inhabitants of Massachusetts Bay to the execution of the late acts of Parliament; and if the same shall be attempted to be carried into execution by force, in such case all America ought to support them in their opposition.*"

This peremptory promise of action was the reply to the letter

written on the 29th of September by the Boston Committee of Correspondence, reciting the wrongs suffered by the inhabitants of that town, and asking whether they should abandon their homes and leave Boston, or suffer a little longer. A letter was also sent to General Gage warning him that the steps he was taking in erecting fortifications was likely to involve the colonies in civil war.

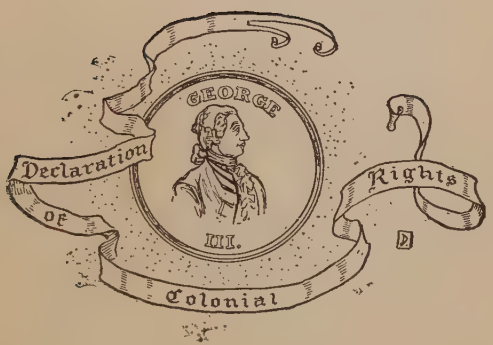
**Acts of the Congress**

On October 14th, the congress adopted a "Declaration of Colonial Rights," which pronounced the several obnoxious acts of Parliament, including the Quebec act, an infringement of the rights of the colonies. Six days later, the American Association was adopted, which was a non-importation, non-consumption, and non-exportation agreement applied to Great Britain, Ireland, the West Indies, and Madeira. A week later, an "Address to the People of Great Britain," written by John Jay, was adopted, including a "Memorial to the Inhabitants of the Several British-American Colonies," prepared by William Livingston. The 26th of October was the last day of Congress, and it was then that it agreed to the "Petition to the King," from the pen of John Dickinson, setting forth in mild, conciliatory terms the final decision of the colonies, including also an "Address to the Inhabitants of the Province of Quebec," written by the same delegate. Then the First Continental Congress, having recommended another assembling of the body on the 10th of the following May, if their grievances were not redressed, adjourned, having been in actual session thirty-one days of the eight weeks.

King George stubbornly turned a deaf ear to the prayers of his American children. General Gage was instructed to do his duty, without fear or favor, and he obeyed commands. He had summoned the Assembly of Massachusetts to meet at Salem, on the 5th of October, to consider the acts of Parliament; but the patriots had become so bold, because of the course of the Continental Congress, that he countermanded the order. Ninety of the members, however, denying his right to recall the order, met on the day named, waited two days for the governor, who did not show himself, and then organized by resolving themselves into a provincial congress, with John Hancock president, and Benjamin Lincoln secretary. Then they adjourned to Concord, where two hundred and sixty members took their seats on the 11th instant, after which an adjournment was had to Cambridge. A message was sent to Gage notifying him that for want of a legal Assembly they had organized a convention. They

**The Revolt in Massachusetts**

protested against the recent acts of the king, affirmed their loyalty to the Crown, but complained of the fortifying of Boston Neck. Gage replied that the fortifications were for the purpose of defence, denounced the convention as an illegal body, and warned the members to refrain from further action. But he might as well have striven to dam the Mississippi as to stem the tide of patriotism which was rising every hour and would soon break all barriers.



# CHAPTER XXX

## *EVENTS OF 1775 (LEXINGTON AND CONCORD)*

[*Authorities:* The estrangement was now complete, and revolution, it will be seen, takes the place of protest against the untoward policy of the king and his ministers. It is doubtless easy now to say that constitutional means of redress had not been exhausted and that there was, as yet, no reason to despair of obtaining a repeal of the Tea Duty as there had been a repeal of the Stamp Tax. But a self-respecting people were, aside from the obnoxious levyings, not apt to submit tamely to such irritations as the Quarterings Act, or to the violence of a stubborn king and his ministers and the autocracy of his haughty generals. Continued "fidelity to the Crown now became treason to the Commonwealth." For the authorities of the period, in addition to the works quoted at the head of the previous chapter, see May's "Constitutional History of England;" Trevelyan's "Life of Charles James Fox;" Payne's "European Colonies;" Doyle's "United States" (in Freeman's Historical Course); Hart's "Formation of the Union;" Irving's "Life of Washington;" Lossing's "Field-Book of the Revolution," and Ludlow's "War of American Independence." The student of literature as well as of history will not fail to be attracted by Longfellow's spirited poem, "Paul Revere's Ride," in reading of that patriotic episode.]

**Eve of the Revolution**

THE air of Boston was full of defiance. The first sparks of the mighty conflagration were aglow and needed but to be fanned by some slight incident to burst into a flame that would spread like a prairie fire. Gage* had about four thousand well-disciplined soldiers in the town and was anxious to crush the rebellion before it broke into open action; but he hesitated as to the best course to take. Soon, however, he formed a plan. John Hancock and Samuel Adams were the leaders who were fearless in their utterances and who had roused

*General Thomas Gage [1721–1787] served, in 1755, under Braddock in his ill-fated expedition against Fort Du Quesne. Five years later, he was appointed Governor of

the Americans by their patriotic appeals. Their voices rang out like trumpet-blasts, and Gage believed that if they could be quieted, the rising storm would subside. He determined to arrest both and send them to England for trial, on the charge of treason. Whether hanged or not, they would be beyond the possibility of doing the infinite harm they were now causing to the crown. Gage had learned, too, that the patriots were collecting powder and ball at Concord and other places, so an opportunity was presented for "killing two birds with one stone:" he would arrest Hancock and Adams and seize the munitions of war at the same time. He fixed upon the night of April 18th for striking these blows.

General Gage

To insure success, it was necessary that his scheme should be kept secret, but it leaked out in a singular way. A letter to London was intercepted, in which the whole thing was revealed. Adams and Hancock were attending the Lexington Provincial Congress, when they received warning of their personal peril. Congress adjourned on the 15th of April, and Adams and Hancock lingered behind at the house of their friend, Rev. Mr. Clarke, their watchful followers promising to give them due notice of the approach of danger. At the same time, the "minute-men"* were on the alert, ready to fly to arms the moment the English troops set out from Boston, while wagons were waiting to remove the ammunition to a place of safety.

Lexington, where Adams and Hancock were awaiting events, was ten miles from Boston, and Gage was more anxious to secure the two than he was to destroy the military supplies. He arranged to send out his troops secretly late at night, march them hastily to Lexington, and arrest the patriots while in bed. That done, the troops would hurry to Concord, six miles further, destroy the cannon and stores and then return to Boston, before the "rebels" could rally and offer serious resistance. It was a well-formed scheme and might have worked perfectly had not the patriots learned everything before the first step was taken. Gage had posted officers at all the roads

Design to Capture Adams and Hancock

Montreal, and on the departure of General Sir Jeffery Amherst from Canada succeeded him as commander-in-chief of the British forces in America. In 1774, he was appointed Governor of Massachusetts and became the last crown governor of that colony. His stern character and impolitic bearing hastened the outbreak of the Revolutionary War, and after the battle of Bunker Hill he was recalled to England. Sir William Howe relieved him of his command.

* Bands of enrolled patriots, who had pledged themselves to respond *at a minute's notice* to a call for their services. Hence they were called "minute-men."

leading out of Boston, to prevent persons leaving and alarming the minute-men. These guards sauntered to their stations at different times, so as to divert suspicion, but their real purpose was suspected, and a squad of minute-men guarded the house in Lexington where Adams and Hancock were lodging. Nothing was done by Gage that evening; but, on the afternoon of the 18th of April, the movement of the troops left no doubt that the crisis was at hand. Everybody was on the watch, and the excitement was intense.

**March of the British**

It was about ten o'clock that evening that eight hundred troops marched as silently as shadows to the foot of the Common, where they entered boats and passed over to Cambridge. They were under the command of Lieutenant-Colonel Smith and Major Pitcairn. Up to this time Gage was confident that his purpose was unsuspected; but a remark by one of the Americans watching the movements of the soldiers showed that it was known that they were on their way to Concord. Gage instantly issued orders that no person should be allowed to leave Boston that night.

The order was just too late. William Dawes had ridden at full speed over the Neck on his way to warn Hancock and Adams, and Dr. Warren and Paul Revere were at Charlestown awaiting events. The two men hardly removed their eyes from the belfry of the old North Church, looming up in the dim moonlight like some grim sentinel. They were expecting a signal to be displayed there, and were not disappointed.

**Paul Revere's Ride**

The night was well advanced when two starlike points of light gleamed from the belfry. They were made by a couple of lanterns which the sexton suspended, as he had agreed to do, in case the British soldiers left the town by water, while a single lantern was to be the signal if they marched by land. Revere leaped at once into the saddle of his swift horse and dashed across Charlestown Neck. Two British soldiers heard the clatter of hoofs and saw the horseman coming straight towards them on a dead run. They stepped out into the highway to check him, and he wheeled, dashed back towards Charlestown, turned into the Medford road, and sped out into the country with arrowy swiftness. It was about midnight when he drew rein in front of Mr. Clarke's house at Lexington, where a number of guards were on watch.

"Where is Mr. Hancock?" asked Revere; "I must see him at once."

COPYRIGHT 1896.

"The family have retired," replied the sergeant, "and I have been ordered to prevent their disturbance."

"They will soon be disturbed, for 'the regulars' are on their way to Lexington," was the startling reply of Revere, as he dismounted and knocked at the door. Mr. Clarke raised an upper window and looked out.

"Who's there, and what is wanted?" he asked.

"I wish to see Mr. Hancock at once."

"It is so late that I do not care to admit strangers," said Mr. Clarke.

Hancock in an adjoining room was awake, and recognized Revere's voice. He called to him from the window to enter, and the messenger was quickly admitted and his alarming story told. While they were discussing the matter, Dawes, the other horseman, who had come by another route, arrived, and he also entered the house, where the whole family were astir. Refreshments were set out for the messengers, who, bidding the folks good-by, remounted their horses and galloped towards Concord, rousing the people as they passed over the road.

**The Patriots Warned**

While thus engaged, the clatter of hoofs was heard behind them, and, looking back, they saw a horseman approaching. He proved to be Dr. Samuel Prescott, who had been spending the evening with a young lady in Lexington. He was as an equally ardent patriot, and readily joined them in their work of rousing the people between the two towns. Revere was riding in advance, when suddenly he was surrounded by several British officers, who made him and Dawes prisoners. They attempted to take Prescott also, but he was well mounted, and wheeling his horse leaped him over a stone wall and escaped. Speeding straight away for Concord, he reached the little village at about two o'clock in the morning, and at once spread the alarm. Meanwhile, Revere and Dawes were sharply questioned about Adams and Hancock, but would not give satisfactory answers. The indignant captors threatened to shoot them, and just then the church bells of Lexington began ringing out on the still air. "That means that the people are rising," cried Revere, with well-feigned excitement; "you will soon be surrounded—you will not be spared—you will be killed!" The clamor of the bells increased, and the British abandoned their prisoners and made all haste back to Boston. Revere and Dawes thereupon resumed their ride towards Concord, where they soon arrived.

**Affairs at Concord**

It was hardly light, when Captain John Parker, standing in front of Lexington meeting-house, called the company roll and ordered his men to load with powder and ball. Although the day which followed was one of the warmest of the season, it was chilly at that early hour, and since the soldiers were not within hearing, Captain Parker directed his men to take shelter in their own houses until the invaders arrived. Meanwhile, Colonel Smith, advancing with his eight hundred troops, saw from the excitement on every hand that the country was aroused and that there would be sharp fighting before they could complete their work and return to Boston. He sent to General Gage for reinforcements and ordered Pitcairn to hurry through Lexington and take possession of the bridges at Concord. Before Pitcairn was in sight of Lexington, the alarm had reached there, the bells were set clanging again, and the minute-men, guns in hand, gathered from all quarters to the village green, where Captain Parker placed himself at the head of seventy ardent patriots. Adams and Hancock were loath to leave the house of Mr. Clarke, but suffered themselves to be persuaded to do so, and took refuge in more obscure quarters. It was just beginning to grow light when the British regulars, in their brilliant red coats were seen approaching. They marched towards the minute-men on the common, and halting in front of them, loaded their muskets.

**Battle of Lexington**

Each side was determined that the other should fire first, for this was deemed all important in fixing the responsibility for the consequences. The patriots had been ordered not to discharge a gun until attacked, while Pitcairn was equally resolved that his men should not fire until compelled to do so in self-defence. Pitcairn and his officers rode towards the minute-men, the troops following on the "double quick." The commander swung his sword above his head and shouted:

"Disperse, you scoundrels! Lay down your arms! I command you to disperse!"

"This is our own land," was the reply; "we have a right here, and we'll *not* disperse."

"Surround the rascals!" commanded Pitcairn, and his soldiers set out to do as they were ordered. There was much confusion at this moment, and several shots were fired, but it will never be known with certainty whether the first overt act originated with the patriots or with the invaders. Pitcairn always insisted that the Americans

fired first. He was so well known for his truthfulness that many of the disputants asserted that, if he would say this upon his own knowledge, they would accept it as a fact. Pitcairn, however, would not do this, for he admitted that he did not see the first shot fired, but at the opening of the fight, his horse was wounded, and he was positive that it was done by a bullet intended for him. His own soldiers were as excited as the patriots, and several fired before the

"DISPERSE, YOU SCOUNDRELS!"

order was given. It is more than likely that it was these shots that caused the Americans to attack their enemies.

**The "Shot Heard Round the World"**

Pitcairn was a man of quick temper, and, drawing his pistol, he discharged it at the Americans and shouted to his men to "fire!" Instantly a sheet of flame burst from the front platoon, and several patriots dropped to the ground. The shrill notes of a fife penetrated the air, while the young drummer began furiously beating his drum. There was no longer any restraint on the part of the patriots. The volley had been fired that "was heard round the world," and the Americans returned it, but as yet without fatal effect. Captain

Parker, seeing his men about to be surrounded, shouted at them to disperse, and they obeyed. They scattered behind stone walls and buildings, and began a fusillade upon the invaders. Eight of the patriots were killed and ten wounded during the firing, while three of the British were wounded, besides Pitcairn's horse. The British drew up in line on the common, fired a salute, cheered, and then continued their march towards Concord. When the first volley rang out on the morning air, Samuel Adams, a short distance away, exclaimed: "What a glorious morning for America is this!" Not he alone, but others, piercing the future, saw the momentous meaning of the great drama that had opened, and which was not to close until the sun of American liberty should rise, never to set again over this broad land.

**A Glorious Morning**

The news had reached Concord hours before, where the excitement was fully as intense as at Lexington. Men and boys rushed from their houses, some of them loading their muskets as they ran; wives helped their husbands in their hasty preparations, and, pausing only long enough to kiss the dear ones good-by, the fathers and sons dashed out of the doors, crowding one another in their eagerness to reach the point of danger. The first man who appeared, gun in hand, was the Rev. William Emerson, but others of the patriots were only a few minutes behind him.

While preparations were made to repel the invaders, others hastened to remove the cannon and ammunition to a place of safety. Minute-men flocked in from the surrounding country and were drawn up on the Common, under the command of Col. James Barrett, a veteran of the French and Indian War. All the bridges spanning the sluggish Concord were guarded. This was hardly done, when messengers came running towards the Common, with tidings that the regulars, to more than double the numbers of the minute-men, would soon be in sight. Colonel Barrett fell back towards a hill in the farther part of the village, and there formed his men into two battalions. Then a consultation was held. Some wished to fight, but the cooler-headed saw that such a conflict meant the massacre of all the patriots; so it was decided to post themselves beyond North Bridge, a mile distant from the Common. It was known that the militia were hurrying in from all directions and there would soon be a force gathered strong enough to offer hopeful resistance to the invaders.

**Gathering of the Militia**

One division of the British entered Concord by the main road and the other over the highway from which the Americans had withdrawn. Troops were sent to secure the bridges, so as to prevent the militia from crossing them, and at the same time to find the secreted ammunition. Tories told the soldiers where these had been hidden, and a large quantity was found and destroyed. Meanwhile, swift horsemen had carried the news through the surrounding country, and the minute-men flocked towards Concord, to the number of several hundreds. Colonel Barrett placed them under the immediate command of Major Buttrick, and ordered him to march to the North Bridge to drive away the British. As Buttrick drew near, he saw the enemy engaged in destroying the bridge. They fired upon the patriots, killing a couple of men, one of whom was Captain Isaac Davis, of Acton. Buttrick now shouted to his company to fire, and three of the British were killed and several wounded. After a few scattering shots, the invaders retreated, and the minute-men took possession of the bridge. By this time, Colonel Smith saw that the country was aroused, and that to delay longer would bring destruction. Accordingly, the eight hundred began retreating in the direction of Lexington. Then it was as if minute-men sprang from the ground by magic. There seemed no spot where they did not appear. Over stone walls, from behind barns and houses, from bushes, trees, fences, and every object that afforded the least shelter, and from the open fields and highways came the jets of flame and the flash of the deadly rifles, while the red-coated soldiers toppled over like ten-pins.

**Retreat of the British**

It was a fearful retreat for the British. The weather was as sultry as if it were midsummer, and the dust was suffocating. The fleeing soldiers were worn to the last stage of exhaustion. Scores dropped panting by the roadside, and were made prisoners, while wagons were filled with the killed and wounded. The time came when the troops would have been forced to surrender to the patriots, but for the arrival of Lord Percy, with reinforcements, a thousand strong. These came in response to the request of Smith, sent early in the morning, and they immediately opened fire upon the militia with cannon. Then a hollow square was formed, into which the exhausted fugitives tottered and for the time were safe. A brief halt was made, in order to give the soldiers a little rest, after which the retreat to Boston was resumed. The Americans harassed them all the way, and there was considerable hard fighting and skirmishing at different points. At

Charlestown, the soldiers were under the protection of the guns of their frigates, and there the pursuit ended. On that eventful day for America, the patriots lost one hundred and three killed and wounded, and the British two hundred and seventy-three.

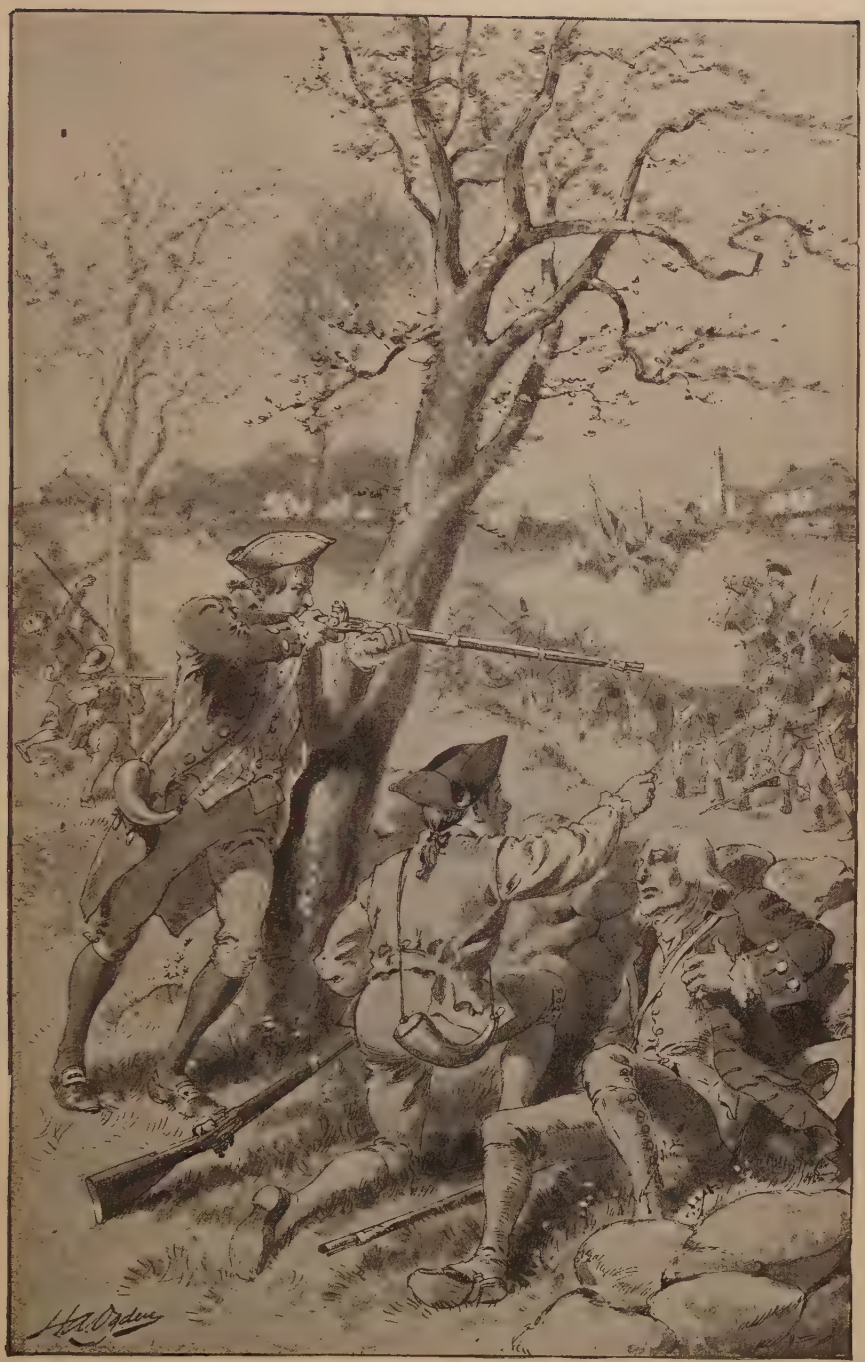
**Patriotism Elsewhere**

The news of the opening of the Revolution was carried as swiftly as the fleetest horses could bear their riders to the other colonies. The response everywhere was the same—a universal, heroic outburst of patriotism, and the resolution to sustain Massachusetts at all hazards in the struggle that had opened. It was determined to send enough soldiers to Boston to hold the British within the peninsula. The assembly of Connecticut sent six thousand men, commanded by Spencer and Putnam; New Hampshire two thousand, led by Folsom and Stark; and Rhode Island, fifteen hundred, under Nathaniel Greene, who proved himself second only to Washington in skill and ability.

Far to the southward, Virginia was aflame with patriotic excitement. A convention of representatives met in Richmond in March, and, after indorsing the action of their representatives in the Continental Congress, declared that they would stand immovable in the defence of their liberties, though they expressed the hope of a speedy reconciliation. At this juncture Patrick Henry, one of the members, could restrain himself no longer. None understood more clearly than he the folly of hoping for reconciliation. America had committed herself to the struggle for independence, and to turn back or hesitate meant subjection and humiliation. He denounced the delusive hope, and asked for the appointment of a committee to see that the province was placed in a proper condition of defence. His motion was however opposed by other patriots, who still clung to the hope of reunion, and expressed the belief that the colonies were too weak to cope with so mighty a power as Great Britain.

**Patrick Henry's Eloquent Appeal**

Henry's eyes flashed fire as he heard this timid counsel, and he bounded to his feet and exclaimed: "What has there been in the conduct of the British ministry for the last ten years to justify hope? Are fleets and armies necessary to a work of love and reconciliation? Have we shown ourselves so unwilling to be reconciled that force must be called in to win us back to our love? Let us not deceive ourselves, sir. These are the implements of war and subjugation; the last arguments to which kings resort. I ask, gentlemen, what means this martial array if its purpose be not to force us to submission?



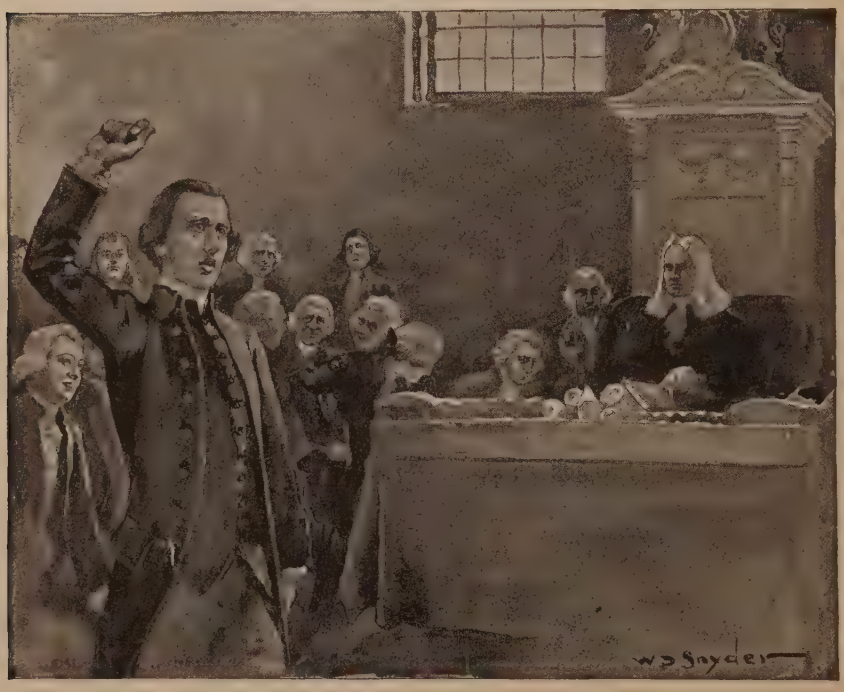
COPYRIGHT 1896.

FROM THE ORIGINAL DRAWING BY H. A. OGDEN

THE BRITISH RETREAT TO BOSTON

PERIOD III
ENGLAND AND FRANCE IN AMERICA
1758 TO 1783

Has Great Britain any enemy in this quarter of the world, to call for all this accumulation of armies and navies? No, sir; she has none. They are meant for us; they can be meant for no other. They are sent over to bind and rivet upon us the chains which the British ministry have been so long forging. And what have we to oppose them? Shall we try argument? Sir, we have been trying argument for the last ten years; have we anything new to offer? Shall we




"GIVE ME LIBERTY OR GIVE ME DEATH!"

resort to treaty and supplication? We have petitioned; we have supplicated; we have prostrated ourselves before the throne, and have implored its interposition to arrest the tyrannical hands of the ministry and parliament. Our petitions have been slighted; our remonstrances have produced additional violence and insult; our supplications have been disregarded; we have been spurned with contempt from the foot of the throne. In vain, after these things, may we indulge the fond hope of reconciliation. *There is no longer any room for hope!*

"If we wish to be free; if we wish to preserve inviolate those inestimable privileges for which we have been so long contending; if we mean not basely to abandon the struggle, in which we have been so long engaged, and which we have pledged ourselves never to abandon until the glorious object of our contest shall be obtained, we must fight! I repeat it, sir; we must fight! An appeal to arms and to the God of hosts is all that is left us! They tell us, sir, that we are weak—unable to cope with so formidable an enemy. But when shall we be stronger? Will it be next week or next year? Will it be when we are totally disarmed and when a British guard is stationed in every house? Shall we gather strength by irresolution and inaction? Shall we acquire the means of effectual resistance by lying supinely on our backs and hugging the delusive phantom of hope, until our enemies shall have bound us hand and foot? Sir, we are *not* weak, if we make a proper use of those means which the God of nature hath placed in our power. Three millions of people, armed in the holy cause of liberty, and in such a country as that which we possess, are invincible to any power which our enemy can send against us. Besides, sir, we shall not fight our battles alone. There is a great God who presides over the destinies of nations and who will raise up friends to fight our battles for us. The battle, sir, is not to the strong alone; it is to the vigilant, the active, the brave. And again, we have no election. If we were base enough to desire it, it is now too late to retire from the contest. There is no retreat but in submission and slavery! Our chains are forged! Their clanking may be heard on the plains of Boston! The war is inevitable! And let it come! I repeat it, sir, *let it come!* It is vain, sir, to extenuate the matter. Gentlemen may cry 'Peace, peace!' but there is no peace! The war has actually begun! The next gale that sweeps from the North will bring to our ears the clash of resounding arms! Our brethren are already in the field. Why stand we here idle? What is it the gentlemen wish? What would they have? Is life so dear or peace so sweet as to be purchased at the price of chains and slavery? Forbid it, Almighty God! I know not what course others may take, but as for me, GIVE ME LIBERTY, OR GIVE ME DEATH!"

This thrilling outburst was irresistible. No wonder that the hesitating convention adopted the resolution by an almost unanimous vote. Patrick Henry, George Washington, Richard Henry Lee,

Thomas Jefferson, and others were named the committee to carry out the resolution. They speedily submitted a plan for the defence of the colony, which was accepted.

Governor Dunmore, of Virginia, was strongly attached to the crown and was filled with anger at the audacity of the rebels. He issued proclamations against them and even tried to terrify the people by covert threats of rousing the slaves to insurrection. One

THE DEMAND UPON GOVERNOR DUNMORE

**Gov. Dunmore's Action**

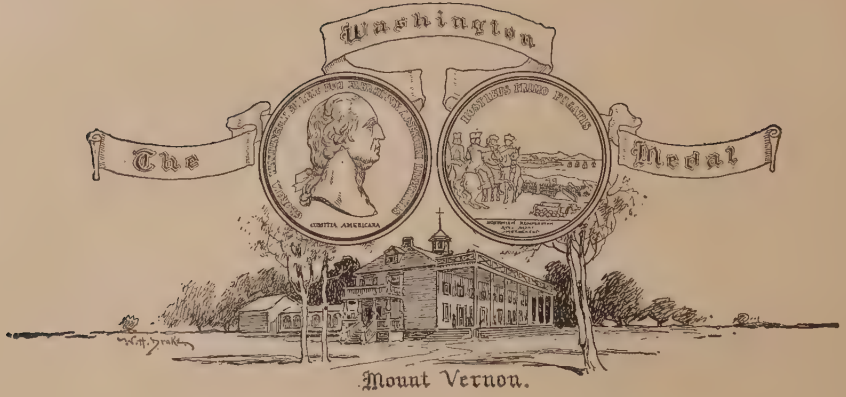
night he caused the powder in the magazine at Williamsburg to be removed secretly to a vessel-of-war in York River. When this became known, the people were so indignant that it was hard to restrain them from laying violent hands on him. Patrick Henry headed a delegation to demand of him an explanation of his action. The governor quieted the discontent by paying the full value of the ammunition, and Henry returned to his home. Governor Dunmore's next step was to call the House of Burgesses together, to consider a conciliatory proposition from the British ministry. The Burgesses

promptly rejected it, and the governor resorted to proclamations again. He declared that if the rebels did not obey the laws, he would free the slaves and arm them against their masters; he surrounded his house with cannon and made preparations to blow up the magazine, if the worst came to the worst. The indignation of the people became so threatening that soon the governor took refuge, with his family, on board a British man-of-war, being the first royal governor to abdicate his office at the outbreak of the Revolution. Others, however, quickly imitated him, so that before the end of the year all royal rule had ceased in America.

It will of course be remembered that the stirring times of which we were speaking were long before the magnetic telegraph was discovered. It took four days for the news of the battle of Lexington to reach New York. Although the day was Sunday, the Sons of Liberty did not hesitate to show their sentiments by open acts. They stopped all vessels in the harbor that were about to sail for Boston with supplies for the British troops, landed a cargo in defiance of the royal collector, and closed the custom-house.

**The Mecklenburg Declaration of Independence**

In the month of May, the towns in Mecklenburg County, North Carolina, sent representatives to Charlotte, who by resolution declared themselves no longer subjects of the British crown. They agreed upon a declaration of independence, so similar in spirit and in some portions in wording, to the immortal Declaration of July 4th, 1776, that much speculation and discussion have been the result, without the matter ever having been set at rest. Patriots by the hundred continued to gather in the vicinity of Boston, their determination being to confine the invaders to the peninsula, or drive them on board of their vessels. By the 20th of April, General Artemas Ward, having been appointed by the Provincial Congress of Massachusetts, assumed command of the American levies, who now numbered several thousands, all filled with an ardent patriotism.



Mount Vernon.

## CHAPTER XXXI

### *EVENTS OF 1775 (CONCLUDED)—BUNKER HILL, ETC.*

[*Authorities:* Though hostilities, as we have seen, had begun on both sides without any deliberate purpose, the colonies finally took steps to act in concert against the mother country and to give legal effect to the measures to which they were now compelled unitedly to resort. In May, 1775, was held the "Congress of the United Colonies," which authorized the raising of a Continental army (at whose head it placed General Washington), organized executive committees to prosecute the war, sent remonstrances to England, opened diplomatic relations with France, created the nucleus of a navy, established a maritime court, and gave a basis of national authority to the financial measures of the Philadelphia Congress. The earliest overt act of the executives of the young nation, after the engagement at Lexington, was to make a demonstration against the enleaguered British troops at Boston and to fortify Breed's Hill, the immediate issue of which was the battle of Bunker Hill. The authorities for the period, besides those cited at the head of the previous chapter, and the journals of Congress, are Niles' "Principles and Acts of the Revolution;" Lodge's "Washington" (American Statesmen Series); Greene's "Historical View of the American Revolution;" Winsor's "Narrative and Critical History of America;" and Goodloe's "Birth of the Republic."]

Independence Hall, Philadelphia

THE fortresses of Ticonderoga and Crown Point, as the reader will have seen, were on Lake Champlain, the former being one of the most valuable in the possession of Great Britain. It contained one hundred and twenty cannon, a large amount of military stores, and cost Great Britain several million dollars. The location of the two and the rumors which reached the ears of the patriots engendered the belief that the British ministry had formed a plan for cutting off New England from the rest of the colonies. When the war had been opened at Lexington, the Americans decided to capture both fortresses. The governor of Connecticut set aside a sum of

AN APPEAL TO HEAVEN
LIBERTY
NORTH CAROLINA CURRENCY
FIVE DOLLARS
No 6496
State of North Carolina
THIS BILL entitles the Bearer to receive FIVE
Spanish milled Dollars, or the Value thereof in
Gold or Silver, agreeable to an Act of Assembly
passed at Halifax on the 8th Day of August 1776
Alexander Gibbs
FIVE DOLLARS
H. A. Ogden

FLAGS, UNIFORMS, CURRENCY AND ARMS OF THE REVOLUTION

money for that purpose, and to effect it he consulted with the leading patriots, John Hancock and Samuel Adams. The enterprise was committed to the care of the brave Col. Ethan Allen, of Vermont, and his "Green Mountain Boys."

Benedict Arnold proposed to the Provincial Congress at Cambridge to capture the two posts, and was commissioned colonel, with power to raise and lead four hundred men against the strongholds. He pushed on and joined Allen at Castleton, Vermont, and though he had but a single man with him, claimed the right to lead the expedition, by virtue of his commission as colonel. The militiamen, however, elected Allen, and Arnold agreed to ride by his side as a volunteer. The expedition reached Shoreham, opposite Ticonderoga, at dusk on the 9th of May. They were disappointed at finding only a few boats in which to cross the lake, but eighty-three men, including Allen and Arnold, crossed, and the craft was sent back for the remainder. The nights were short, and it then became apparent that before the boats could return daylight would be upon them. It was necessary that the fort should be surprised; therefore it would not do to wait any longer. Allen explained the situation to his men, and told them that all who desired to withdraw from the project were at liberty to do so. Every one expressed his wish to follow his intrepid leader.

**Capture of Ticonderoga and Crown Point**

A boy named Nathan Beaman, who was familiar with the place, led Allen and his volunteers up the bank to the sally-port. The startled sentry, when the heads and shoulders of the men rose to view like so many spectres, snapped his gun and dashed into the fortress, with the Americans at his heels. Entering the parade-ground, the patriots, with a cheer, ranged themselves facing each other against opposite walls. The frightened garrison came rushing to the parade, and the minute they appeared were made prisoners. Allen was an old acquaintance of Captain Delaplace, the commandant, and knew where to look for him. He ran up the outside steps, leading to the door of the officers' quarters, and knocked with the hilt of his sword. The captain sprang out of bed and opened the door, his startled wife peeping over his shoulder.

"What is the meaning of all this hubbub?" asked the astounded officer.

"I order you to surrender at once," was Allen's reply.

"By whose authority do you make the demand?"

"In the name of Jehovah and the Continental Congress," was the heroic response of Allen, who knew that that very day was the one appointed for the convening of Congress in Philadelphia. Delaplace would have parleyed, and, looking at the grinning boy, said, "What, Nathan, you here too!" Allen was too much in earnest, however, to permit delay, and checked the commander with a repetition of his order to surrender. The commandant had no choice but to obey, and thus the fortress, with its garrison of fifty men and its immensely valuable stores, came into the hands of the Americans without the loss of a single life. Two days later, Crown Point was also captured without bloodshed.

**Convening of the Second Continental Congress**

On the 10th of May, the second Continental Congress met first in Carpenter's Hall, Philadelphia, soon adjourning to Independence Hall, with representatives from all the colonies present, except Georgia. Her delegates arrived later, in July. Peyton Randolph, of Virginia, was made president, and among his famous associates were Washington, Patrick Henry, John and Samuel Adams, Benjamin Franklin, and Thomas Jefferson. This Congress held a unique position, for it was without any power to enforce a single law. It could not enlist a solitary soldier or raise a penny of taxes. All that it could do was to advise the different colonies as to their course of action.

Although hostilities had actually begun, there was a lingering hope on the part of many of the members that England and her American colonies would yet become reconciled.* They, therefore, hesitated to take positive action, preferring to hold open the door of reunion. They could not wholly throw off at once a fondness for the mother-country, whose glory had been theirs so long, and for whom they had on many occasions fought and shed their blood. But this sentimental hope quickly vanished, as news came of the conflicts

* The readers of these pages, who naturally take the patriotic American view of the quarrel with England, should take care to distinguish between the attitude of the British crown and government and English public opinion at the period. The colonists' view of the troubles was taken by many Englishmen of note, among others, by Lord Chatham and Edmund Burke. The speeches of both these eminent statesmen should be familiar, at least to the historical student, who wishes to do justice to the mother-land, especially Chatham's eloquent protest against the enforcement of the Stamp Tax, and Burke's three great utterances between the years 1774 and 1777, on American Taxation, on Conciliation with America, and his famous Letter to the Sheriffs of Bristol on the Affairs of America.

between the patriots and their oppressors; of the stubborn insistence of King George that his American colonies should be conquered; of his refusal to abate one jot of his oppressive measures; and of the brutality of the royal governors in various sections of the country. The sentiments of Congress were crystallized in the declaration: "Shall the descendants of Britons tamely submit to this? No, sirs! We never shall! while we revere the memory of our gallant and vir

"I ORDER YOU TO SURRENDER AT ONCE!"

tuous ancestors; we never can surrender these glorious privileges for which they fought, bled and conquered. Admit that your fleets could destroy our towns, and ravage our sea-coasts; these are inconsiderable objects, things of no moment, to men whose bosoms glow with the ardor of liberty. We can retire beyond the reach of your navy, and, without any sensible diminution of the necessaries of life, enjoy a luxury which, from that period, you will want—the luxury of being free."

Without any distinct powers being delegated to Congress by the

different colonies, they recognized the right of that body to decide all questions affecting the welfare of the country at large. New York City had elected a committee of one hundred, which asked Congress for direction, when news reached New York that a British regiment was on its way thither from Ireland. Congress told the committee to allow the troops to land, and to live in barracks, but not to permit them to fortify the city. Congress advised further, that General Wooster be invited to come from Connecticut, with his regiment, to aid in defending the city, should it become necessary. This advice was followed, and General Wooster encamped on the Harlem, and took active measures to guard Long Island against British foragers and cruisers.

The Functions of Congress

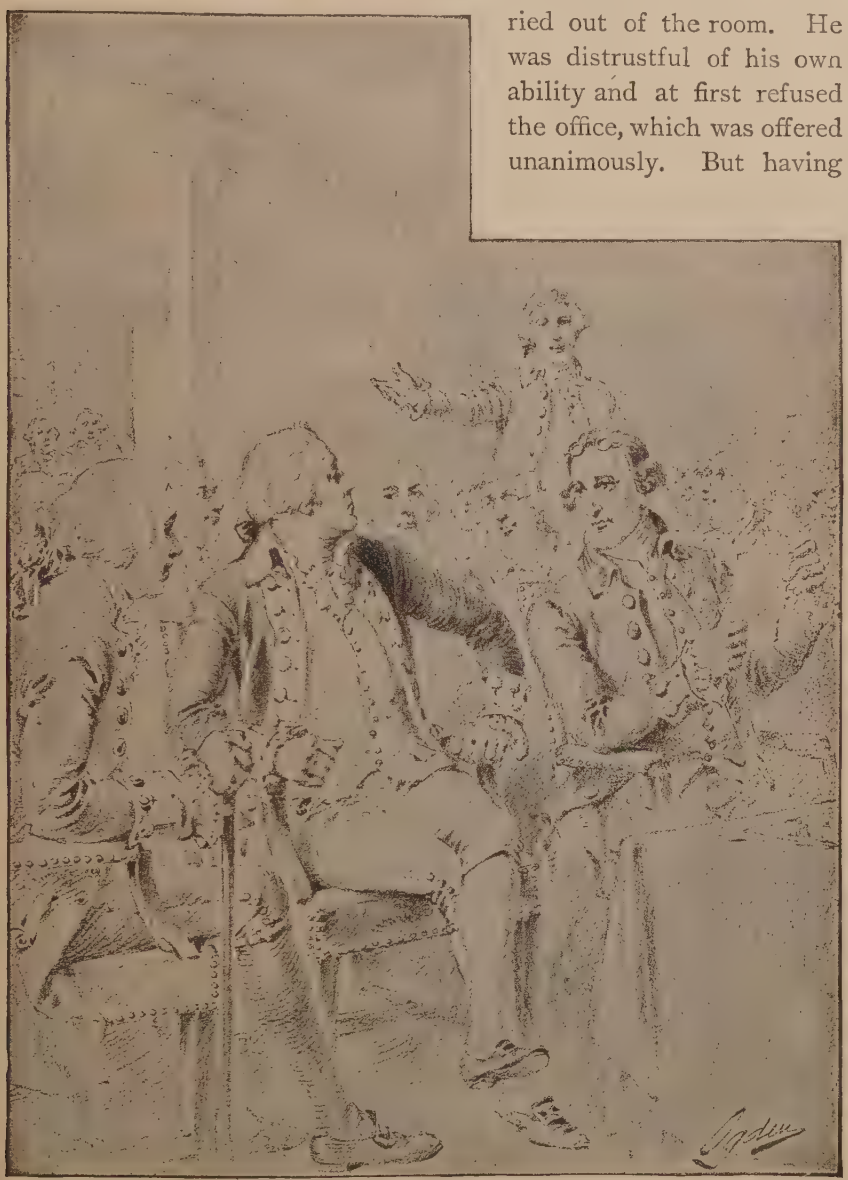
Some time after this, President Randolph was called to Virginia, where he had been elected speaker of the House of Burgesses, and John Hancock was chosen to succeed him. Then Congress addressed itself to the still higher duties which now confronted it. General Artemas Ward was universally respected for his good qualities, but it had become apparent to all that he was too old and timid and too deficient in military genius, to be the commander of the forces that were now concentrating at Boston. Generals Howe, Clinton, and Burgoyne had arrived at that port, and it was evident that Great Britain was making formidable preparations for conquering her colonies. Since the war had assumed, or would shortly assume, a continental character, it was necessary that a general-in-chief should be chosen over all the armed forces. As a first step, Congress voted to raise an army of twenty thousand men, and to issue three million dollars of paper money, for carrying on the war. Thomas Johnson, of Maryland, at the suggestion of the New England delegation, nominated George Washington commander-in-chief of the Continental armies.* Washington was so agitated that he arose and hur-

Arrival of Howe, Clinton, and Burgoyne

* Space may, pardonably, be taken up here, to quote the eulogistic characterization Green, the English historian, passes upon Washington, in his thoughtful and impartial chapter on "The Independence of America," in his "History of the English People." "No nobler figure," writes the historian, "ever stood in the forefront of a nation's life. Washington was grave and courteous in address; his manners were simple and unpretending; his silence and the serene calmness of his temper spoke of a perfect self-mastery. But there was little in his outer bearing to reveal the grandeur of soul which lifts his figure with all the simple majesty of an ancient statue out of the smaller passions, the meaner impulses, of the world around him. What recommended him for command was simply his weight among his fellow-landowners in Virginia, and the experience of war which he had gained by service in border contests with the French and the Indians, as well as

ried out of the room. He was distrustful of his own ability and at first refused the office, which was offered unanimously. But having

**Appointment of Washington as Commander-in-Chief**



NOMINATION OF WASHINGTON AS COMMANDER-IN-CHIEF

been urged upon him, he, with that high sense of duty which always guided him through life, modestly accepted the appointment, and

in Braddock's luckless expedition against Fort Du Qnesne. It was only as the weary fight went on that the colonists discovered, however slowly and imperfectly, the greatness

PERIOD III — ENGLAND AND FRANCE IN AMERICA 1758 TO 1783

henceforward consecrated his life and his energies to the service of his country.

**The Major and Brigadier-Generals**

A few days later, four major-generals and eight brigadier-generals were appointed. The former were: Artemas Ward, Charles Lee, Philip Schuyler, and Israel Putnam. The latter were: Seth Pomeroy, Richard Montgomery, David Wooster, William Heath, Joseph Spencer, John Thomas, John Sullivan, and Nathaniel Greene. It was resolved to issue a sum not exceeding $2,000,000 on bills of credit. The rude plates were engraved by Paul Revere and printed on paper so thick that the British called them "the pasteboard money of the rebels." New issues were added from time to time, so that, at the close of 1779, the total amount in circulation was $242,000,000. They rapidly depreciated, until before the close of the war, when they became practically worthless.

**Strength of the Rival Forces**

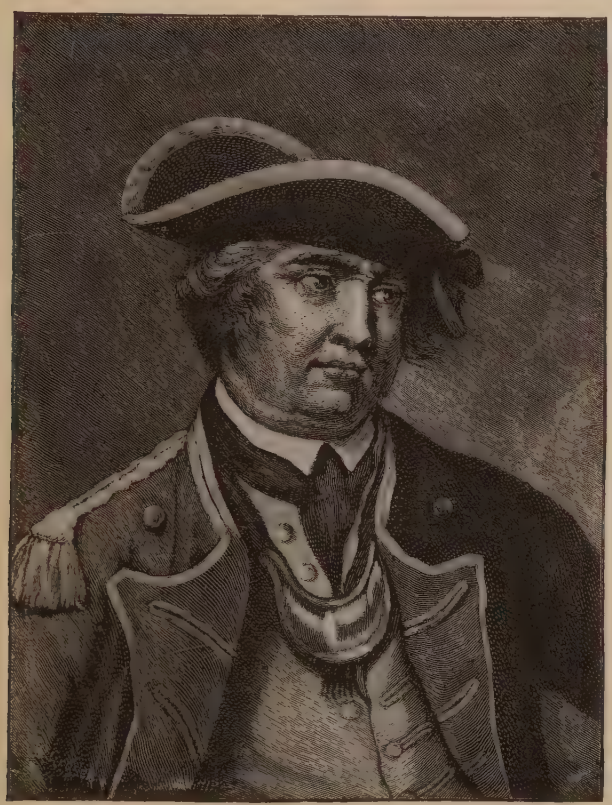
At the opening of the summer of 1775, the Continental forces at Cambridge numbered sixteen thousand New Englanders. General Ward was the commander, while the British army, continually increased by new arrivals, included ten thousand well-disciplined troops, under experienced officers. Generals Howe, Clinton, and Burgoyne were there, all forming plans for the overthrow of the rebel forces. While they were scheming and doing nothing, they awoke to the fact that the American batteries at Dorchester Heights in the south, or on Charlestown Heights in the north, were likely to make their situation soon untenable. They therefore decided to fortify the heights themselves, and thus avert the peril which threatened them.

The Provincial Congress had delegated discretionary powers to the Committee of Safety, the members of which, on learning of the intention of the enemy, determined to fortify Bunker Hill without delay. An order was issued on the 16th of June for the parade of a

---

of their leader, his clear judgment, his heroic endurance, his silence under difficulties, his calmness in the hour of danger or defeat, the patience with which he waited, the quickness and hardness with which he struck, the lofty and serene sense of duty that never swerved from its task through resentment or jealousy, that never through war or peace felt the touch of a meaner ambition, that knew no aim save that of guarding the freedom of his fellow-countrymen, and no personal longing save that of returning to his own fireside when their freedom was secured. It was almost unconsciously that men learned to cling to Washington with a trust and faith such as few other men have won, and to regard him with a reverence which still hushes us in presence of his memory. But even America hardly recognized his real greatness while he lived. It was only when death set its seal on him that the voice of those whom he had served so long proclaimed him 'the man first in war, first in peace, and first in the hearts of his countrymen.'"

large force in camp at Cambridge, at six o'clock in the evening, with intrenching tools. These men were placed under the command of Colonel William Prescott, of Pepperell, who received orders from General Ward to proceed to and fortify Bunker Hill on the Charlestown peninsula. After prayer by Dr. Langdon, president of Harvard College, this force, accompanied by General Putnam, and num-



ISRAEL PUTNAM

bering about thirteen thousand men, at nine o'clock the same evening, marched over Charlestown Neck and towards Bunker Hill. They moved silently, for it was necessary to keep their intention from the enemy. On the road a consultation was held, and it was decided that, since Breed's Hill was nearer Boston, it would be better to fortify that first. Thither the men made their way and at once began work. All through the gloom of night the patriots

**Breed's Hill Fortified**

PERIOD III. ENGLAND AND FRANCE IN AMERICA 1758 TO 1783

plied pick and shovel, and so near the ships-of-war that, when the waning moon rose at midnight, they were in plain sight and the voices of the sentinels were heard as they repeated the hourly "*All's well!*" At daybreak, on Saturday, the 17th of June, the amazed enemy saw a redoubt, at the intrenchments of which the patriots were still busily toiling. The ships opened fire on them, but they continued their labors without harm.

**Success of the Americans**

When General Gage learned what had been done, he called his officers together for council, and a decision was at once reached that the Americans must be instantly dislodged. Accordingly, about twenty-five hundred troops, including infantry, grenadiers, and artillery, with twelve pieces of cannon, passed over the Charles River in boats and landed at the head of the present Chelsea Bridge, near the eastern extremity of the Charlestown peninsula. When the British troops reached this point, it was a little past noon, and Howe allowed his men to dine, while he sent to Boston for reinforcements. Meanwhile, Prescott, having completed the work, and seeing that he was about to be attacked, asked General Ward for additional troops, and, with some reluctance, Ward sent the New Hampshire regiments of Stark and Reed, with several small field-pieces. A few other detachments came up, and with them Dr. Joseph Warren, who had just been commissioned major-general.

**Battle of Bunker Hill**

It seemed as if all the people of Boston, on that calm summer afternoon, were crowded on the roofs, steeples and balconies, breathlessly watching the thrilling sight. It was half-past three o'clock, when the British force, now increased to 3,000 men, with Howe's huge guns, advanced towards the redoubt and opened fire. The troops followed in two columns, under Howe and Pigot. The guns on the ships, and the battery on Copp's Hill, joined in the cannonade, but produced little effect. Amid the crash and roar, the Americans remained as silent as the tomb. "Don't fire till you see the whites of their eyes," was the order that had been passed along the lines. When that moment came, the single word "FIRE!" was shouted, and fifteen hundred muskets outflamed with such terrible effect that whole platoons were mown down, as if by a herculean scythe. The shattered army, in response to the call of the bugles, now retreated to the foot of the hill. There Howe rallied and re-formed them and repeated the attack, receiving the same crushing repulse as before. So many shots were fired from the houses in Charlestown, that, by

COPYRIGHT 1898.

FROM THE ORIGINAL DRAWING BY H. A. OGDEN

THE BATTLE OF BUNKER HILL

the order of Howe, it was shelled by the battery on Copp's Hill. The town caught fire and the thick smoke shrouded Breed's Hill, until swept aside by a strong breeze. Howe with some difficulty rallied his men for a third attack, and General Clinton hurried over from Copp's Hill with a considerable force and joined him. The British advanced at quick step, and under orders to use only their bayonets. These, aided by the artillery, drove the patriots from the breastworks into the redoubt. A murderous fire was again poured from their centre, but this abruptly ceased. The ammunition of the Americans was exhausted, and after a desperate hand-to-hand struggle, they were driven out, fleeing towards Charlestown Neck, where approaching reinforcements had been checked by the enfilading fire from the enemy's vessels. Almost the last man to leave the redoubt was General Warren. He was fighting heroically, when an English officer, who recognized him, seized a musket from a soldier and shot him dead. Among the slain on the British side was Major Pitcairn. The total loss of the enemy in killed, wounded and prisoners, was ten hundred and fifty-four: that of the Americans four hundred and fifty. The British occupied the field until the next morning, when they were taken over the water to Boston. The Americans, after running a gauntlet of fire from the vessels, passed the night on Prospect Hill.

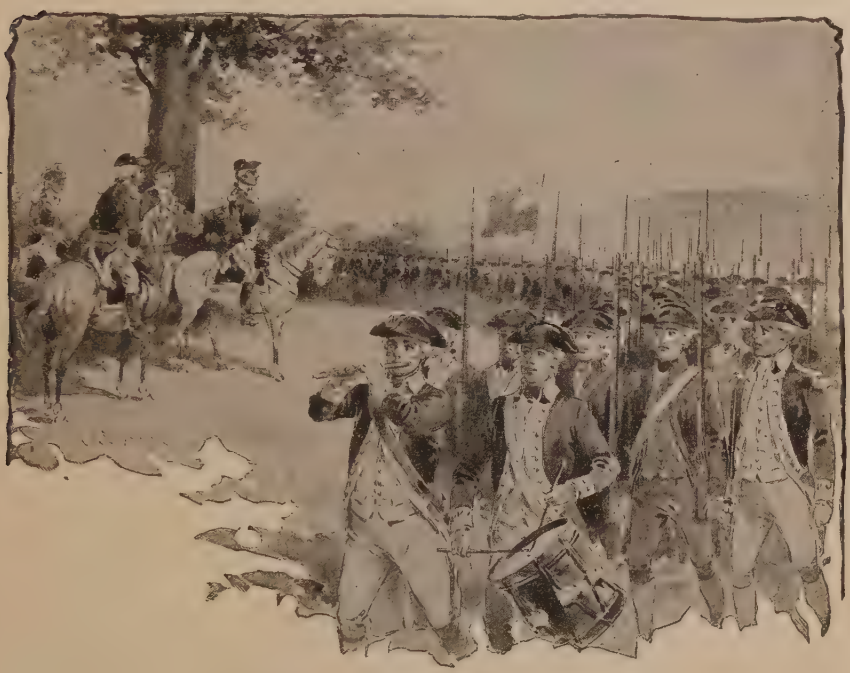
**Defeat of the Americans**

**Washington Assumes Command**

Six days after Washington's appointment to the command of the Continental armies, and, without waiting to visit Mount Vernon, he set out to assume command at Cambridge. His companions were Generals Lee and Schuyler. At Trenton, they met a messenger riding in hot haste, with the news for Congress of the battle of Bunker Hill. Washington made particular inquiries, and was greatly relieved to learn that the militia had fought with so much bravery. The commander-in-chief received proper honors and attention at New York and other points on the way, and arrived at Cambridge on the afternoon of July 2d. The next morning, he appeared with his suite under a large elm-tree, at the northern end of Cambridge Common, and, while the forces were drawn up in line, he stepped forward, drew his sword, and assumed formal command of the army.

Washington began preparations at once for pressing the siege of Boston. Adjutant-General Gates reported nearly seventeen thousand men enrolled, with about fourteen thousand fit for duty. Soon afterwards, Daniel Morgan, with his famous riflemen from Maryland,

Virginia, and western Pennsylvania, joined the army. These troops were disposed of with excellent military skill. The army was arranged in three grand divisions, consisting of two brigades each. The right wing, under General Ward, was stationed at Roxbury; the left, under General Lee, occupied Winter and Prospect hills; while the centre was commanded by General Putnam. Strong lines of intrenchments connected the extremities of the army.



WASHINGTON TAKING COMMAND OF THE ARMY

**Boston Besieged**

The British intrenched themselves on Bunker Hill, with their sentries upon Charlestown Neck. A 20-gun ship was anchored between Boston and Charlestown, and floating batteries were moored in Mystic River. General Howe had superseded Gage, and, with most of his army, was on Bunker Hill, while a large number of Tories and a force of cavalry occupied the city. Thus matters substantially remained throughout the remainder of the year.

It will be remembered that when the American colonies were fighting the battles of England, Canada belonged to France, and several invasions were made, the decisive campaign being fought on the heights above Quebec. Now that Canada belonged to Great

PERIOD III
ENGLAND AND FRANCE IN AMERICA 1758 TO 1783

Britain, the Americans believed that an effective blow could be struck by another invasion of the country. Indeed, as will appear hereafter, this has been a favorite strategic measure, whenever our country has been at war with Great Britain, though its results have not always been gratifying to American valor. The colonies were hopeful that Canada would join them in a struggle for independence.

**Proposed Invasion of Canada**

An invitation was sent by Congress across the border, urging the people to make common cause with us; but the response was not encouraging, and Sir Guy Carleton,* the governor, declared martial law in Canada, sought the alliance of the Indian tribes, and prepared to invade New York, to recover the lake posts that had been seized. Congress, in June, 1775, decided to undertake the conquest of Canada, which seemed an easy task, as it might have been had the invasion been prompt; but valuable time was frittered away.

Ethan Allen was urgent for the movement as soon as Ticonderoga† and Crown Point‡ had been taken, and not doubting that it would be made, he did not wait for formal authority. A company of his Green Mountain Boys captured Skenesborough (now White-

*Sir Guy Carleton, afterwards Lord Dorchester [1724-1808], Governor of Quebec during the Montgomery-Arnold assault upon it, was an Irish officer in the English army, and first saw active service in the second siege of Louisbourg. He was wounded before Quebec in 1759, when in command of Wolfe's corps of Grenadiers. In 1772 he was raised to the rank of Major-general, and three years later was appointed Governor of Quebec. On the failure of the American invasion of Canada, Carleton issued from it and took possession of Crown Point. After a lengthened sojourn in England, he was appointed, in 1782, Commander-in-chief in America, as successor to Sir Henry Clinton and pursued a conciliatory policy up to the evacuation of New York by the British troops. In 1786 he was created Baron Dorchester and reappointed Governor of Quebec, a post he held almost continuously for ten years. On his final return to Engand, he was raised to the rank of general, but lived thenceforth in retirement until his death in 1808. Carleton, though a strict disciplinarian, as well as an able officer, was a man of humane conduct, as his kind treatment of American prisoners during the Revolutionary War and his attemps to check the excesses of the Indian auxiliaries testify.

† This historic fort, situated at the southern extremity of Lake Champlain, was built by the French in 1755; in 1758, the English were repulsed in an attack on it, and in the following year it was abandoned by the French. In the present campaign (1775), it was, as we have seen, taken by American arms, but two years later it was recaptured by Burgoyne, dismantled on his surrender, and in 1780 reoccupied by the British. At the close of the war it was abandoned.

‡ This fort, which came into the hands of the British in 1759, is situated on the west shore of Lake Champlain, about ninety miles north of Albany. It lies adjacent to the town of Ticonderoga, and is noted as the site of Fort Frederic, now in ruins, erected by the French in 1731. With its slender garrison, it was taken in May, 1775, as we have seen, by a detachment of our troops, under Seth Warner, forming part of the force with which Ethan Allen surprised Fort Ticonderoga.

hall), at the head of Lake Champlain, with a number of prisoners, a schooner, and several smaller boats. Benedict Arnold manned the schooner, equipped it with guns from Ticonderoga, and with the smaller boats sailed up the lake to attack the fort at St. John. After destroying several vessels and taking a number of prisoners, he set out to return to Ticonderoga. Meeting Allen, the two held a consultation, and Allen pushed on to occupy the captured fort, but with-

CAPTURE OF ETHAN ALLEN

drew before the approach of a superior force. Then followed a fatal delay by Congress before ordering the invasion of Canada.

**Affairs at Ticonderoga**

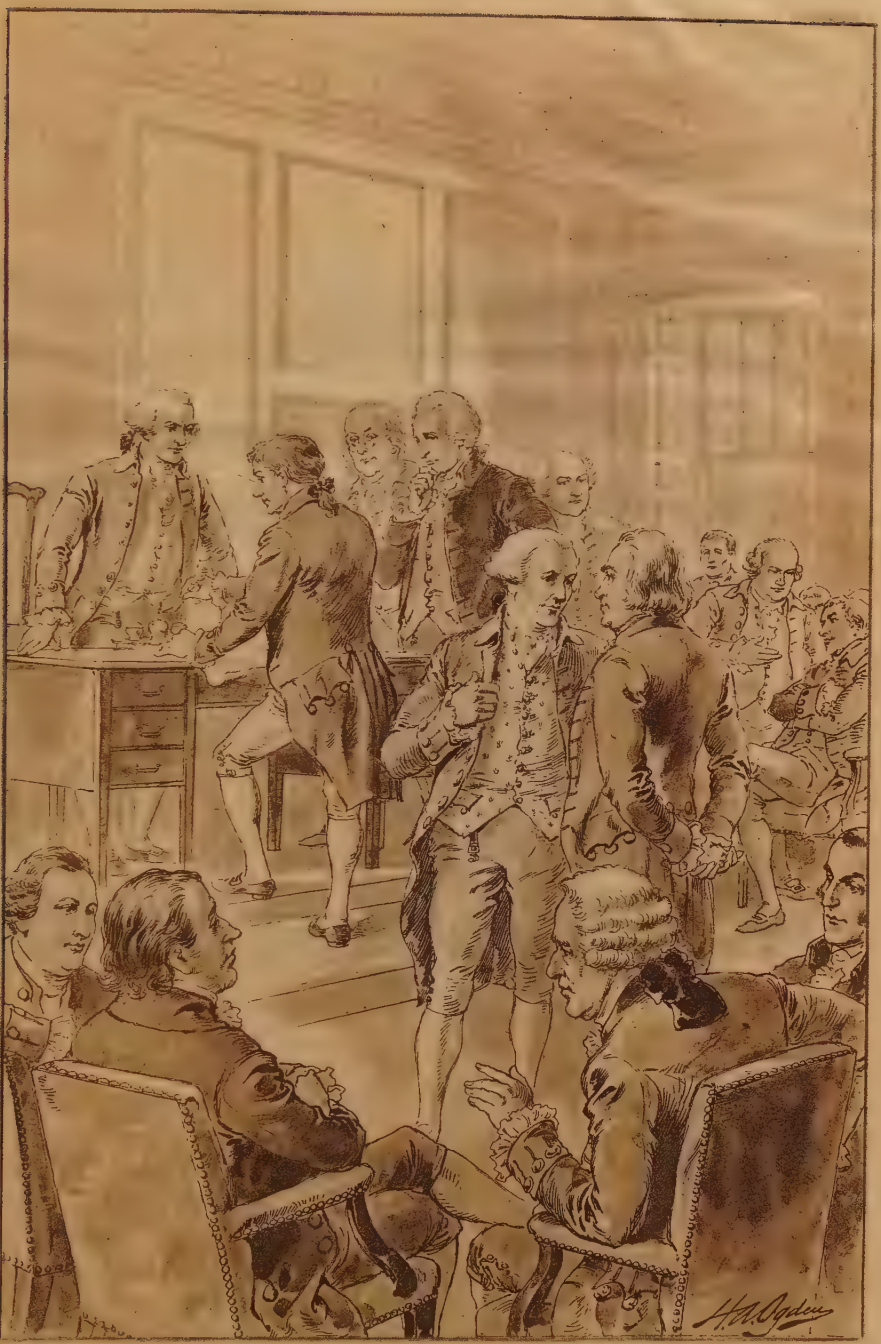
General Schuyler reached Ticonderoga on the 18th of July, and found matters there in great confusion. Colonel Benedict Arnold claimed command, by virtue of his commission from the Provincial Congress of Massachusetts, and many of the Green Mountain Boys were so angered with him that they had gone home. Arnold was quarrelsome, overbearing, and heartily disliked, although his military skill and bravery are admitted. Complaint was made to the body that had commissioned him, and a committee sent to Ticonderoga

to inquire into matters ordered Arnold to submit to Colonel Hinman, then in command, or return to Massachusetts. Arnold, at this, was thrown into a fury, and, swearing that he would be second to no man, threw up his commission and set off to Cambridge to lay his grievances before Washington.

Meanwhile, General Schuyler learned that there were less than a thousand British regulars in Canada, that the peasantry were supposed to be friendly towards the Americans, and that no more favorable time was likely to occur for the invasion of the colony. He therefore devoted his energies to organizing and drilling the soldiers at Ticonderoga with the view to invasion, but the task was a discouraging one. The men were mutinous and tried him sorely, so much so that the campaign was thereby seriously marred. Another cause of grave anxiety was the Indians. They had been tampered with by the English. Sir William Johnson, the British agent, was already winning over the powerful Six Nations and preparing for active measures against the Americans. Congress nominated Schuyler as head of the Indian Commission, and, to meet the responsible duties thus thrown upon him, he placed Gen. Richard Montgomery in command of the expedition for the invasion of Canada. Montgomery arrived at Ticonderoga on the 17th of August, and, with about a thousand men, proceeded to Isle La Motte, to prevent a number of vessels then building on the Sorel River, from entering Lake Champlain. Schuyler joined him early in September, but while in front of the fort at St. John he was prostrated by sickness and obliged to return to Ticonderoga, where he did the best of service by forwarding troops and supplies to Montgomery, who at once invested St. John. The garrison was a strong one and made a brave defence; but on November 2d it was forced to surrender.

**Capture of St. John**

While the siege was in progress, Col. Ethan Allen with a hundred recruits crossed the St. Lawrence to attack Montreal, but was defeated and made prisoner, with all his men. Allen was put in irons and sent to England by General Prescott, to be tried for treason, because of his daring capture of Ticonderoga some months before. He was closely confined, and, it is said, was treated with great severity until the spring of 1778, when he was exchanged. Having taken St. John, Montgomery now moved against Montreal. Carleton knew that he could not hold the fort against a determined attack, and therefore made ready to flee to Quebec with his gar-



**Capture of Montreal**

rison. Montgomery captured the flotilla bearing the garrison at the mouth of the Sorel, but Carleton, by a secret flight at night, escaped to Quebec. Montgomery entered Montreal on the 13th of November, and obtained a quantity of valuable supplies for his men. All that remained to secure the conquest of Canada was to take Quebec, and the brave Montgomery now addressed himself to that task.*

INVASION OF CANADA

It will be remembered that Arnold had ridden off in anger to Washington, at Cambridge, with his complaint of ill-treatment at Ticonderoga. No one understood Arnold better than the com-

* In whatever mood France accepted the loss of her Canadian colony in 1763, she had her revenge for the defeat at Montreal and Quebec, in the Revolution that had broken out in the English colonies on the seaboard, as Montcalm himself had predicted. In turn, however, France "reaped revenge's fitting harvest in her own Reign of Terror, and all the revolutions that have followed, ere she could acquire some capacity for self-government." Whether the lesson is forgotten or not, England, as it has been well said, "trained her children to deal even with revolution as freemen, and not as slaves broke loose."

mander-in-chief, and he commissioned him colonel in the Continental army and placed him in command of eleven hundred troops, selected from those at Cambridge, to co-operate with Montgomery in the conquest of Canada. Washington was pressing the siege of Boston and could ill spare the troops; but he understood the importance of making the invasion of Canada successful. Arnold and his men

**Arnold's Expedition**

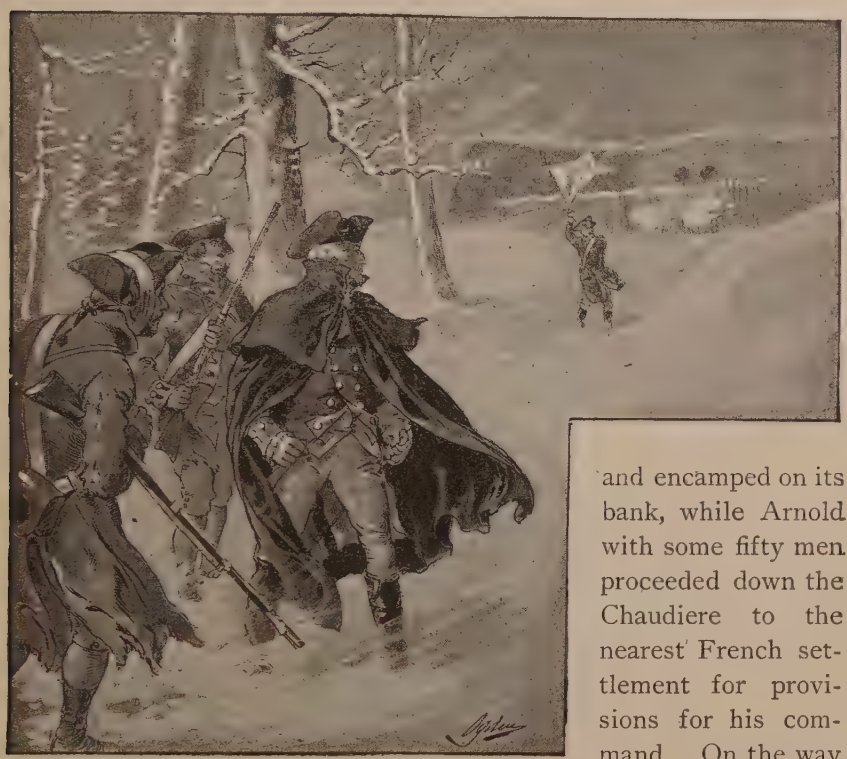
sailed from Newburyport, about the middle of September, for a point on the Kennebec, opposite the present city of Augusta, Maine. The country was an unbroken solitude, with only a few Indians living here and there in the vast stretches of forest. The ascent of the river was begun by means of bateaux, but soon they reached falls and rapids, where it was necessary to take the boats and supplies around to the navigable stream above. The troops carried their provisions on their backs, and oxen drew the boats. The men labored through the swift current until a point was reached where they left the river, and pushed through dense forests and swamps to Dead River, on the watershed between the St. Lawrence and the Atlantic, along which they advanced until confronted by a high snow-capped mountain. At the base of this mountain, late in October, the troops went into camp. The weather was cold and every day it grew colder. The winters being severe in that latitude, the prospect before the invaders was a very gloomy one. Many of the men had deserted, while sickness was on the increase. It was thirty miles to the nearest tributary of the St. Lawrence, down which Arnold had to voyage to Quebec. Before the march began, a cold, driving rain set in. The Dead River became a roaring torrent, filled

**Great Hardships**

with rushing trees and limbs, which overturned a number of the bateaux, and lost to the expedition so much provisions that the food saved was not sufficient to last a fortnight. Matters now assumed so grave an aspect that Arnold held a conference with his officers, at which it was decided to send the sick to Norridgewock, where Colonel Enos was with the rear division. Enos was ordered to hurry forward with provisions for fifteen days. Instead of obeying, he returned to Cambridge with his division. He was tried by court-martial for this act and acquitted, since it had become evident to Enos that nothing but disaster awaited the expedition; but he was never fully restored to public favor.

It would be hard to picture a more dismal, dispiriting, and depressing situation than that of Arnold and his troops. The driving

rain changed to snow, the cold increased, and ice formed continually. All the signs pointed to an early and rigorous winter, but the men resolutely pressed on. Often the only way by which the force could make headway against the current was by wading in the freezing water, waist deep, and pushing the boats in front of them. At last, after untold suffering and labor, they arrived at Lake Megantic



FIRING ON THE FLAG OF TRUCE

and encamped on its bank, while Arnold with some fifty men proceeded down the Chaudiere to the nearest French settlement for provisions for his command. On the way they met with a stirring experience. They knew nothing about the river, and had hardly launched their bateaux when the current whirled them about with such violence that the men were helpless. Plunging among the boiling rapids, three of the boats were overturned and shattered to fragments. The others, having moored in more peaceful water, were able to save the men thus flung into the stream.

**A Narrow Escape**

Now that the troops paused for rest, they heard a steady deep roar coming from a point a short way below them. They set out to

learn what it meant, and to their astonishment found a high cataract over which all would have plunged to certain death but for the mishap which had checked them and which, therefore, proved a blessing in disguise. Embarking again, they continued their way down the angry stream, past rapids and falls, until they reached Sertigan, where food was obtained and sent back by Indians to the main command, which was in sore need of them. They had lost all their boats and provisions, had eaten their last dog some days before, and were now living on roots. Refreshed by the food brought to them, the army resumed its march towards the St. Lawrence.

**In Front of Quebec**

By this time, severe weather had fully come. In the midst of a furious snow-storm, the troops appeared like so many spectres, on the heights of Point Levis, opposite Quebec. The town was thrown into a panic. The drums beat to arms, and the garrison hastily prepared to meet the attack, which they believed would be made without delay. Arnold was confident that a majority of the people in the town were so friendly to the Americans that they would make common cause with them as soon as they appeared before it. He was eager to cross the river, but the elements prevented. A storm of sleet held the Americans idle for four days. On the night of the 13th, over five hundred men crossed the St. Lawrence in canoes, and landing at Wolfe's Cove, climbed up the ravine, and at daylight stood in battle array on the Heights of Abraham, where Wolfe had attacked Montcalm sixteen years before.

The Americans advanced towards the two gates opening upon the plain, and, halting, cheered vigorously, believing that the regulars would march out to attack them, when the citizens would rise and the invaders could rush in and take possession of the city. But the commandant was too prudent to incur any risk like that. He remained at his post, and if the people had any intention of rising, they were restrained through fear of the garrison. Arnold demanded the surrender of the city and issued several proclamations, all of which were treated with contempt. Then alarming news reached him. Carleton was descending the St. Lawrence with a large force of Indians and Canadians, and the garrison were preparing to march out and assail him with field-pieces. Arnold had no cannon, so he retreated up the river to Point aux Trembles and there waited instructions from Montgomery.

**The City Summoned to Surrender**

That gallant officer had meanwhile not been idle. He had placed

garrisons in the forts at St. John, and at Chambly, and, leaving Montreal in charge of General Wooster, he made ready to march against Quebec. But the chief difficulty Montgomery experienced was to hold his men to their work. The enlistment terms of nearly all expired on the 1st of December, and they were already weary of their task. The soldiers refused to re-enlist, and day by day the force dwindled, while the reinforcements so urgently called for by him and Schuyler were not furnished by Congress. Montgomery made the best arrangement possible with the men that were willing to accompany him, so, leaving Montreal late in November, he joined Arnold at Point aux Trembles, on the 3d of December, and assumed at once command of the united troops. He brought with him a quantity of clothing, which was sorely needed by the suffering invaders, now less than a thousand in number.

**Junction of the Forces**

It seemed a grim farce for this weak force to lay siege to Quebec, and we must admire the pluck displayed by the Americans. They appeared before the town on the 5th of December, and the following morning Montgomery summoned Carleton to surrender. The flag of truce was fired upon, whereupon the angered Montgomery sent a threatening notification to the officer who had thus violated the rules of civilized warfare. Carleton refused to hold intercourse with his assailant, and the latter made ready for the assault.

The weather was intensely cold, and the ground under the deep snow was frozen like flint. Spade and pickaxe were useless, so Montgomery filled large baskets with snow, poured water upon this and then allowed it to freeze. In a short time he thus erected a gleaming embankment, several feet high, upon which he placed a battery of six twelve-pounders and two howitzers. The shells from the several mortars which fell in the Lower Town set a number of buildings on fire. Then the cannon opened on the ice battery and sent the fragments flying. The crystal walls were speedily demolished, and the American battery was forced to withdraw. By this time, Montgomery saw that his cannon could make no impression on the massive stone walls, and other means, he concluded, must be devised for capturing the city. His force was so weak that he decided to wait for reinforcements, but two weeks passed and not a solitary soldier appeared. The action of Congress was slow, and the anxious Schuyler had no money with which to obtain either men or sup-

**A Futile Attack**

plies. He even used his own personal credit, but could not procure any recruits. Montgomery was thus left to help himself the best way he could.

That officer had a task on his hands before which the bravest leader would have quailed. In a few days the terms of enlistment of the remainder of his men would expire, and there was little hope of holding them longer. Snow fell almost continuously, and then small-pox broke out and raged with fatal virulence. As if this were not enough, Arnold quarrelled with his officers, who became so incensed against him that they told Montgomery they would leave the service unless they were placed under another commander. Montgomery called all his tact and wisdom into play, and, by his kind, firm words to Arnold and his appeals to the patriotism of the others, healed their differences. It was a dismal Christmas which came to the suffering troops, hundreds of miles from home, in a hostile country, shivering with cold and suffering with hunger, but to their credit be it said they did not shrink from their duty.

**A Dismal Christmas**

A council of war was held, at which it was decided that two attacks should be made upon the city at the same time,—one under the command of Montgomery, and the other under the leadership of Arnold. While Montgomery was to effect the capture of the Cape Diamond bastion, on the highest point of the promontory, Arnold was to attack the Lower Town and burn the British stockade close by the river. No date was fixed, but it was agreed that the assault should be made on the first stormy night, which was certain to come very soon. Another snow-storm set in on the afternoon of December 30th, and it was resolved that the attempt should be made that night. Desertion and sickness had reduced Montgomery's force to about seven hundred men, but he was still as resolute as ever. He energetically completed his plans, and, in the cold and darkness and storm, at two o'clock on the morning of the last day of the year, the troops were in motion.

**The Plan of Assault**

Colonel Livingston was to make a feint against the St. Louis Gate and set it on fire, while Major Brown was to threaten the ramparts of Cape Diamond. Arnold was to lead three hundred and fifty men to attack and set fire to the works at St. Roque, and Montgomery, with the remaining troops, was to advance below Cape Diamond, carry the defences at the base of the citadel, and then push forward and join Arnold. If successful, this would give the assailants

possession of the Lower Town, after which they would unite, destroy Prescott Gate, and dash into the city. The plan was good and well matured, and there is little doubt that it would have met with success, had not a deserter revealed the scheme to Carleton, who caused his soldiers to sleep that night on their arms.

The darkness was so dense that it was necessary for the Americans to adopt some means of recognizing each other. To do this, a piece of white paper was fastened in front of each man's cap. In the face of the blinding sleet and hail, Montgomery led his men along the icy path at the foot of the acclivity until they reached a block-house below Cape Diamond. There was no sign of life there, and, believing that the garrison were unprepared, the impatient leader shouted to his men to follow him. But the traitor from the American ranks had done his work too well. A strong company were on the watch, with weapons ready, and the moment Montgomery's voice rang out in the storm and darkness, they opened fire with grape-shot. In an instant Montgomery, two officers, and ten men were killed. The remainder hurriedly retreated to Wolfe's Cove and made no further effort to reach the gate.

**Death of Montgomery**

Arnold at this time was fighting his way through snow-drifts on the other side of the town, which was in a turmoil. The bells were ringing, and drums were beating to arms, while above the din and tumult sounded the boom of cannon. Arnold, with the dauntless bravery for which he was noted, pushed on, forced by the circumstances we have already explained to lead his men in single file. It was found impossible to drag cannon with them, and they were therefore left behind. The fighting had hardly begun, when Arnold received a severe wound in the leg and had to be carried to the rear. The gallant Morgan then took command, and, after desperate work, captured two batteries from the enemy. He was about to attack Prescott Gate, when the depressing news reached him that the troops stationed near one of the other gates had been made prisoners. Despite the most determined fighting, and after severe loss, Morgan was compelled to surrender with four hundred troops. A force of reserves had meanwhile retreated and were soon joined by others who escaped.

**Decisive Repulse of the Americans**

Carleton and Montgomery had previously fought side by side in the French and Indian War, and the former sent out a detachment to search for the body of his old comrade. It was found, with

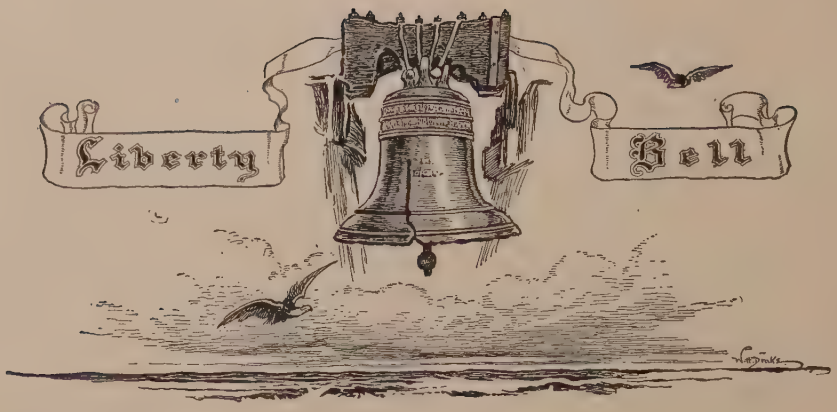
his brother officers, half buried under snow-drifts. All were reverently brought within the city and given burial. Nearly half a century later, the remains of Montgomery were brought to New York, and they now rest under a beautiful monument in St. Paul's churchyard, in lower Broadway. It would seem that this ought to have been the end of the ill-starred invasion of Canada, marked as it was by disaster almost from the beginning. But the remnants of the expeditionary force stayed behind until the following spring. By that time the folly of the whole expedition became so apparent that it was decided to leave the country. Before the sick could be removed, the English, who had been reinforced, sallied out from the gates and scattered the fugitive Americans in confusion. Carleton could feel only sympathy for his enemies. He knew their wretched plight, and humanely ordered troops to search through the woods for the wounded and helpless. All that could be found were brought in and treated kindly. Those that needed aid were sent to the hospital and told that they were at liberty to go to their homes, as soon as they felt strong enough to do so. Finally, the remnant of the shattered and dispirited army proceeded to the shelter of Crown Point, many of them dying on the way thither. Thus ends the sad story of the unfortunate Canadian invasion of 1775.

**End of the Invasion**

COPYRIGHT 1898.

FROM THE ORIGINAL DRAWING BY W. P. SNYDER

THE DEATH OF MONTGOMERY




## CHAPTER XXXII

### *EVENTS OF 1776 (DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE)*

[*Authorities:* In May (1775), before the Battle of Bunker Hill, England had strengthened her forces in America by despatching to Boston Generals Howe, Clinton, and Burgoyne,* with a considerable body of British troops and a contingent of foreign mercenaries, chiefly Hessians. The arrival of the latter naturally intensified the feeling of resentment in the colonies, and drew thousands into the ranks of the New England levies, under Washington, Lee, Schuyler, Putnam, Nathaniel Greene, and other officers. With the Declaration of Independence, the conflict was fairly entered upon, though at first with dispiriting results, due partly to the ill-fortunes of war and the short term of colonial enlistments, and partly to jealousies and contentions among the commander-in-chief's general officers. With the capture of New York by the British, the fall of Fort Washington, and the consequent retreat through New Jersey, the situation grew more alarming, though it was at length relieved by the victories at Trenton and Princeton, which brought the first year's campaigns of the war to a triumphant and more hopeful close. The authorities for the period are those cited at the opening of the two previous chapters. For fuller details of the episode of Nathan Hale—the hero who at his death regretted that he had but one life to lose for his country—see his life by Stuart (Hartford, 1856), and Lossing's "The Two Spies: Nathan Hale and John André" (New York, 1886).]

GENERAL WASHINGTON was meanwhile pressing the siege of Boston, but in the undertaking he was compelled to face every sort of discouragement. The terms of enlistment of all the troops would expire with the year, and unless the fates were more auspicious he was likely to be left a commander without an army. The men were ardently patriotic, but unaccustomed to bearing arms, or to be long absent from their homes. They rushed to battle in the flush of the first excitement, but, as the days and weeks passed, many

* General John Burgoyne [1722–1792] son of Capt. John, and grandson of Sir John Burgoyne, Bt., purchased a lieutenancy in the Thirteenth Light Dragoons in 1740,

BOSTON WITH ITS ENVIRONS IN 1775-1776

PERIOD III
ENGLAND AND FRANCE IN AMERICA
1758 TO 1783

grew homesick. They had all hastily left their families and now felt that they ought to look after those they loved. Some of them, moreover, chafed under discipline, and but for the great tact of the commander he would have been well-nigh helpless. He granted furloughs, listened patiently to their complaints, counselled them wisely, and showed a kindness and sympathy which won all hearts.

**The Siege of Boston**

Congress saw the imperative necessity of preserving the Continental army intact. A committee was therefore sent to Cambridge to consult with the commander-in-chief, and together a plan was fixed upon which proved effectual. Among the disquieting things which the autumn brought to light was the fact that there were only about eight rounds of ammunition for each man. Had this become known to the British, they could have sallied out from the city and at once scattered the besiegers. But while no important movement was made by the Americans, Washington did not allow them to remain wholly idle. Now and then cannonading was indulged in, though little was accomplished. Several skirmishes took place, and Washington strove to bring on a general battle. While not strong enough to make an open attack, he hoped the enemy would attack him, but Gage was too cautious to incur the risk. He resorted to the more

---

and three years afterwards eloped with and married Lady Charlotte Stanley, daughter of the eleventh Earl of Derby. On the outbreak of the Seven Years' War, he obtained the lieutenant-colonelcy of the Coldstream Guards through his father-in-law's influence, and saw considerable service on the Continent, and was sent, later on, to Portugal, as brigadier-general, to assist the Portuguese against Spain. After his return to England he entered political life, and became an *habitué* of fashionable clubs and theatres, and for a time was a successful playwright, meanwhile holding several sinecure military appointments. In 1775, he was sent to America to reinforce General Gage at Boston, and in the following year was attached to the staff of Sir Guy Carleton, in Canada. With Carleton he saw some fighting in the Lake Champlain district, but returned to England later in the year to urge upon the English ministry an active campaign, directed from Canada, upon northern New York. The British authorities, impressed by the scheme, gave Burgoyne permission to engage in it, and in May, 1777, on his return to Canada, he set out from Three Rivers, with a force of 7,000 men, to descend the waterways to the Hudson, and, in coöperation with Clinton's command which was to move northwards from New York, to seek to cut the colonies in twain. Neglecting to keep open his communications with Canada, and Clinton failing to form a junction with him, he was, as we shall presently see, surrounded at Saratoga and captured with his entire command. After this crowning disaster, Burgoyne obtained leave to return to England, where he had to face reproach and attack, against which he defended himself in his "Narrative of the Expedition from Canada." For a time he again entered political life, and was, in 1782, commander-in-chief in Ireland. His remaining years were spent in social success, and in indulging in dramatic writing, for which he had some gifts. He died suddenly, in 1792, and was buried in Westminster Abbey. See his "Life and Correspondence," by Fonblanque.

childish course of indulging in threats, of sending out reports of the formidable reinforcements on their way to join him, and of what he would do when they arrived. He sent cruisers to attack the coast towns of New England, hoping thus to induce Washington to detach troops to their relief. Among the towns burned was Falmouth, now Portland, Maine. In October, Gage was relieved of his command, on the ground of inefficiency, and General Howe assumed charge of the British armies in America. He treated the Whigs and suspected persons in Boston with great harshness, and threatened with death any who left the city without permission.

**Appointment of General Howe to Chief Command**

As was natural, Congress and the country became impatient with the inaction at Boston. Months had passed since the battles of Lexington and Bunker Hill, and there was no substantial change on the part of the two armies confronting each other. None was more anxious than Washington to strike a blow, but as we have seen he was powerless. His army was fast dwindling, and those that were left suffered much from lack of food and clothing. Towards the close of the year, however, something like a reaction of patriotism happily set in. The regiments began to fill up, provisions were supplied, and an air of hopefulness now animated every one. As organized, on the 1st of January, 1776, the new Continental army consisted of ten thousand men, though of this force a large number were still absent on furlough. It was at this time that a new flag was displayed, composed of thirteen alternate red and white stripes, as it is to-day, but the blue ground in the corner contained the united crosses of St. Andrew and St. George, instead of the stars which supplanted them. When it was unfurled in front of the army at Cambridge it was greeted with loud cheering.

**The New Flag**

Not counting the marines on the ships of war, the British troops in Boston were about eight thousand in number. They made themselves at home, with their riding-school in the Old South Church, and the theatre in Faneuil Hall, where one of their plays was founded on the supposed incidents in the siege of Boston, which, in the effusive British loyalty of the time, terminated with the overthrow of the Yankees! Thus the weeks and months went by, with Washington grimly holding the British within the city, until the evening of March 4th, when the patriots took possession of Dorchester Heights, from which a cannonade was opened upon the enemy. Howe would have attacked the patriots the next day but a storm

prevented. Washington continued to improve the time, and finally secured a position from which his cannon fully commanded the city.

The alternative was now forced upon Howe of fighting or retreating, and, seeing this, he began preparations for leaving the place he had occupied so long. The decision spread consternation among the Tories, who had good cause to dread the vengeance of the Whigs, towards whom they had shown great cruelty. They discreetly preferred to go with the enemies of their country and did so. On the

THE NEW FLAG

**Evacuation of Boston**

17th of March, Howe and his troops embarked on board the warships and transports, one hundred and fifty in number, and sailed for Halifax, Nova Scotia, carrying with them more than a thousand "loyalists." Then Washington and his troops marched in and occupied the city amid the heartfelt rejoicings of the people. The event caused much gladness throughout the colonies. Both branches of the Massachusetts legislature voted thanks to Washington and the army, while Congress ordered a commemorative medal to be struck.

This was produced in gold and bronze, and is now in the possession of the Massachusetts Historical Society.

The evacuation of Boston by the British, however, did not mean that they had given up their intention of conquering the colonies. The next blow struck was against the South. Early in June, Admiral Parker, with twenty-five hundred troops, appeared off Charleston, South Carolina, with the intention of capturing the city. The people there expected him and made preparations for the struggle. General Lee had been sent thither by Washington, and his arrival was inspiriting to the patriots. The militia, at the call of Governor Rutledge, flocked in from the surrounding country, and Fort Sullivan was speedily strengthened by the mounting of thirty pieces of heavy ordnance. The fort was made of palmetto logs and manned by over four hundred men, under Colonel Moultrie. The British fleet, numbering nearly forty vessels, carried two hundred and sixty-two guns. The attack began about noon, June 28th, and lasted with slight intermission until nine o'clock in the evening. While the fight was raging, the people of Charleston, who were watching it with intense interest, were thrown into dismay by the disappearance of the flag. Their belief was that the fort had surrendered, but the flagstaff had been cut in two by a cannon-shot from the fleet. Hardly had it fallen, when Sergeant William Jasper sprang through an embrasure, picked up the flag, while the shot were flying round him, re-entered the fort, and, climbing to the parapet, set the sponge-staff to which he had fastened it, firmly in place. The British were defeated and withdrew. They lost considerably over two hundred in killed and wounded, while of the gallant defenders of the fort only ten men were killed and twenty-two wounded. In honor of the valiant commander, the name of Fort Sullivan was changed to Fort Moultrie. The enemy's fleet sailed to Long Island, where, after remaining a few days to repair damages, it joined the forces at New York under General Sir William and his brother Admiral Howe.

**British Attack on Charleston**

**Repulse of the British**

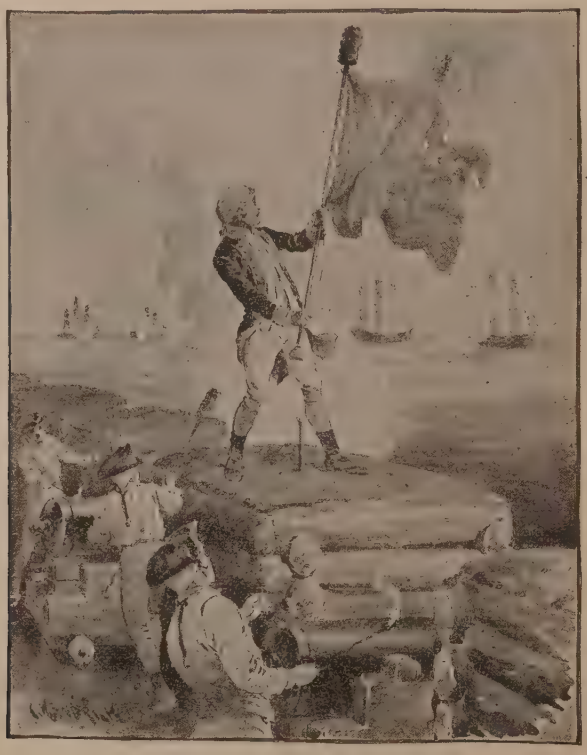
Washington, having driven the British out of Boston, now gave his attention to other threatened points. Some of his troops, as we have seen, went to Canada to help in the ill-fated expedition under Montgomery and Arnold, but a larger number were sent to New York and the neighborhood. It had been known that Sir Henry Clinton would sail from Boston with troops on a secret expedition,

PERIOD III
ENGLAND AND FRANCE IN AMERICA
1758 TO 1783

and Washington suspected that New York was his destination. Governor Tryon, the royalist ruler of North Carolina, had been sent thither by the crown and was ready to lead a demonstration in its favor.

General Lee in New York

General Lee was recruiting at that time in Connecticut, and Washington ordered him to go to New York with his volunteers and there assume charge. He did so, and held the city with an iron hand. Sir Henry Clinton, however, who soon arrived with his fleet,



EXPLOIT OF SERGEANT JASPER

sailed southward to make his unsuccessful attack on Charleston. In June, General Howe * reached Sandy Hook with his recruited army from Halifax, and was soon joined by a large fleet, commanded by his brother, Richard, Earl Howe. Washington soon arrived at New

* Sir William Howe (1729–1814), brother of Earl Howe, the famous British admiral who relieved Gibraltar in 1782, served under Wolfe at Quebec, and was appointed major-general in 1777. He commanded the British forces at Bunker Hill, and was given the

York and pushed forward the defences of the city. Fort Washington was built on Washington Heights, the most elevated part of Manhattan Island, and strong batteries were constructed at other points. The peril of the country was, however, at this juncture so imminent that the commander-in-chief went to Philadelphia to consult with Congress. That body authorized the enlistment of a large body of men and in other respects followed the counsel of Washington in preparing for the vigorous prosecution of the war. The determination to gain their independence was rapidly intensifying throughout the colonies, where there had been many who were hesitating and doubtful. One of the most powerful agencies in the growth of patriotic sentiment was an argument, written by Thomas Paine,* the son of an English Quaker, who had lately come to America. The logic of the pamphlet was perfect, and it was effective chiefly in showing the true relations between England and her colonies. The legislature of Pennsylvania published and circulated the essay and presented Paine with the sum of five hundred pounds sterling, as an appreciation of his services in the cause of liberty.

**The Services of Thomas Paine**

The first distinctive sign of the new-born resolution for independence was the recommendation made by Congress in May, that the various colonies should form governments of their own, in place of those that had been overthrown. The advice was followed, and the colonies thereafter were known as States. On the 8th of June, a resolution was offered in Congress declaring the States free and independent. Virginia had been the first to instruct her delegates to vote for independence, and a committee of five was named to draw

**First Step Towards Independence**

chief command three years later, on General Gage's departure for England. He conducted the withdrawal of the British from Boston in 1776, and in the following year gained the battle of Long Island, and occupied New York. In October 28, 1776, he won the battle of White Plains, and in the following month took Fort Washington. In the autumn of 1777, he was victor at Brandywine, entered Philadelphia, and repulsed Washington at Germantown. Being superseded by Sir Henry Clinton, in 1778, he returned to England, where, after submitting to a parliamentary investigation on his military career in America, which ended in his vindication, he was made a lieutenant-general in 1782, and general in 1786. In 1790, on the death of his brother, he succeeded to the peerage as Viscount Howe, and died in 1814.

* This passionate pamphlet, entitled "Common Sense," was written by an English radical and deist whose reputation has now, for over a century, suffered in consequence of the infidel character of his "Age of Reason" and "The Rights of Man," the latter being a morally and politically disturbing answer to Burke's "Reflections on the Revolutions in France." "Common Sense" is a strong, telling, though somewhat coarsely written, argument in favor of political separation of the colonies from the motherland, and for the founding of an American Republic.

up the declaration. This committee was composed of Thomas Jefferson, Benjamin Franklin, Roger Sherman, and William Livingston. Jefferson wrote nearly every word of the Declaration of Independence, but, as he was not a ready speaker, Adams did most of the talking in its favor. Their work was finished June 28th, and the Declaration itself was adopted July 4th, 1776,—a day which, doubtless, will be celebrated as our grandest and most joyous anniversary to the end of time. The immortal document was received with bonfires, illuminations, and general rejoicing. It was read at the head of the army and nerved the patriots to pledge their "lives, their fortunes, and their sacred honor," in the struggle for liberty and independence. All this was needed, for England was soon to put forth her utmost efforts to conquer her rebellious subjects. She had not only immense armies and fleets, but she hired over sixteen thousand Hessian troops in Holland to assist in the work of subjugation.

**The Declaration of Independence**

When the two Howes arrived at New York, they believed that a single campaign would stamp out all resistance. This belief would seem warranted, when it is remembered that the British army far outnumbered that of the patriots, while the land force was supported by four hundred ships and transports, ten ships-of-the-line, and twenty frigates. With fifteen thousand men, Howe crossed to Long Island, where General Putnam, with five thousand poorly equipped troops, was posted near Brooklyn, then simply a ferry station. Through a blunder on the part of Putnam, his force was nearly surrounded and routed towards the end of August, 1776. Three thousand Americans escaped to Brooklyn, where a fort had been built; but the sluggish Howe lost all advantage by his tardiness. He spent two days debating whether to attack the fort or not. He believed that the Americans would realize their hopelessness and surrender without serious resistance; but a dense fog enabled Washington to withdraw the garrison to New York. Howe followed slowly with his immensely superior force, and Washington fell back, fighting both at Harlem and at White Plains, but with little advantage to either side. Reaching the hills east of the present town of Peekskill, he then turned about and faced the enemy.

**Defeat of Americans on Long Island**

Howe refused, however, to attack and moved into New Jersey. Washington left a part of his army under General Lee, crossed the Hudson, and marched to Fort Lee. Fort Washington, on the north-

ern end of Manhattan Island, was nearly opposite this fort and was garrisoned by Colonel Magaw, with nearly three thousand soldiers. The fort was assaulted by the enemy, November 16th, and captured, after severe loss on the part of the assailants. Washington witnessed the disaster with deep distress, but just then he was powerless to help the assailed force. This defeat endangered the whole army.

INDEPENDENCE HALL RESTORED AS IN 1776

**Capture of General Chas. Lee**

Washington left General Lee to hold the position at Peekskill, and with five thousand men embarked on the Hudson and moved down to a point nearly opposite New York. Early in December, Cornwallis crossed the river with a strong detachment, under orders from Howe to pursue and capture Washington, but the confident earl found the task harder than he had imagined. Washington had sent orders to General Lee to join him, but Lee purposely lagged, to that extent, indeed, that he was captured near Basking Ridge, New Jersey, as he

PERIOD III
ENGLAND AND FRANCE IN AMERICA
1758 TO 1783

wished to be, since his heart had been with the enemy from the first, despite his boasted patriotism and seeming loyal service in the cause of independence.

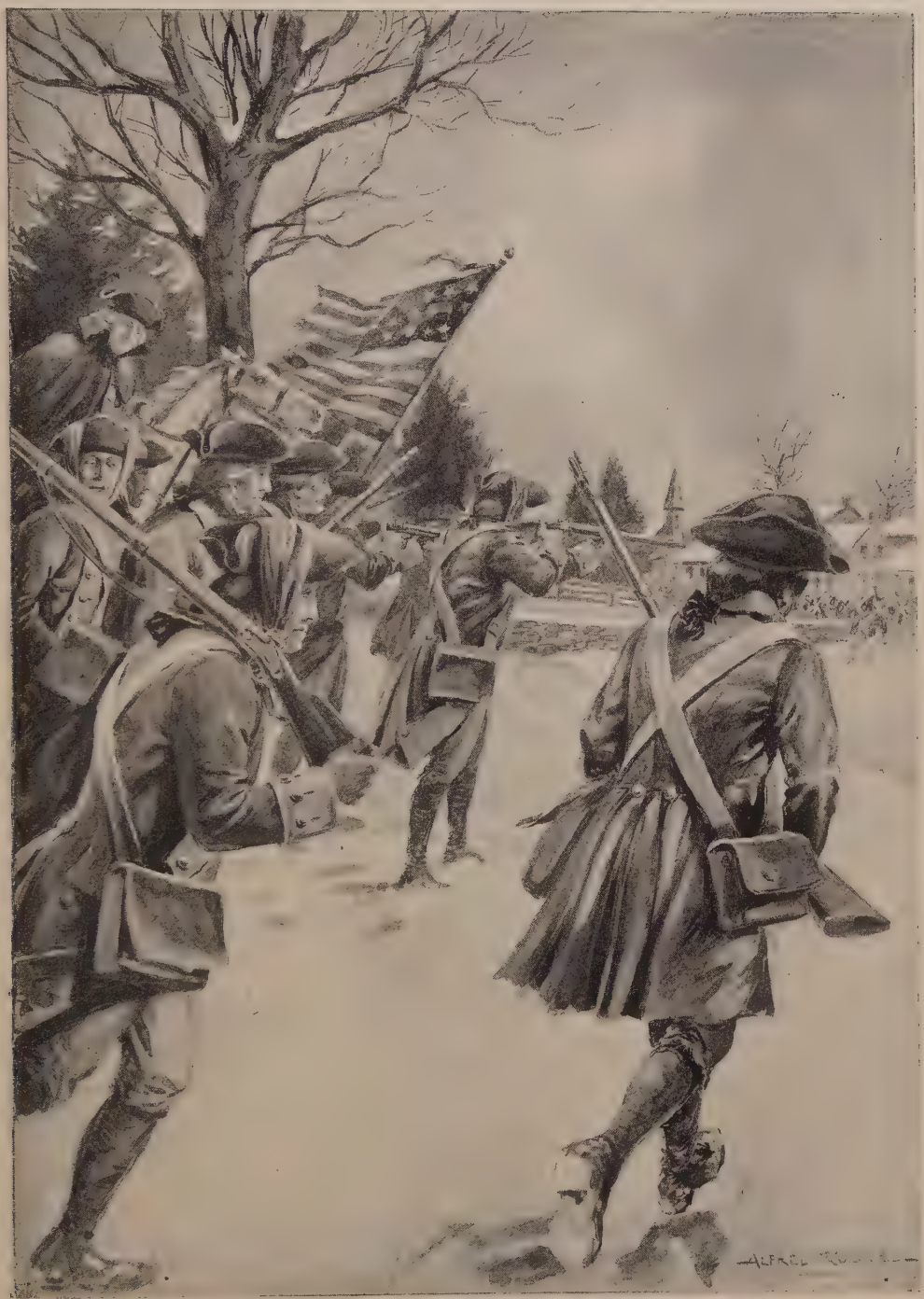
**Dark Days of the Revolution**

Those were the dark days of the Revolution. The Continental army was in rags, and half-starving. It was continually retreating, with the pursuers so close that they often exchanged shots with the American rear-guard. It was now winter, and the ground was covered with snow, and the weather bitterly cold. Many men were even barefoot and left bloody prints on the flinty roads, as they straggled southward. Hundreds, believing the cause of freedom utterly lost, made haste to accept the offers of the crown, and returned to their allegiance.* It seemed to Washington at this time as if his army would melt away before he could reach the Delaware River, and he would be left without a command. Congress abandoned Philadelphia and sought safety in Baltimore, first investing the commander-in-chief with almost supreme power. He, tower of strength as he was, seemed to be about the only person in the whole country who was not in despair. But the hero saw that something must be done to infuse courage and hope in the hearts of his countrymen. It was all important that he should strike a blow that would be a telling one, and he determined to do it. He had meanwhile crossed the Delaware into Pennsylvania and secured all the boats within reach, for fifty miles up and down stream. Cornwallis, on the other hand, had ceased pursuit and went into winter quarters at Trenton, Princeton, and other points in New Jersey, believing it unnecessary to give any further thought to the "ragamuffins," as he called them.

**Crossing of the Delaware by Washington**

On Christmas night, Washington recrossed the Delaware, about eight miles above Trenton, with twenty-five hundred picked men and several pieces of artillery. The weather was still bitterly cold and the air was full of cutting sleet. Dividing his force, the march was taken up for Trenton by two parallel roads, one along the river, and the other several miles inland. It was planned that the two divisions should reach the town at the same time, which was done. As one body of Americans was driving in the pickets on the

*It was believed for a hundred years that among those who sought the protection offered by Howe, was Joseph Reed, Adjutant-General of the continental army, and a trusted friend of Washington. In 1876, however, Adjutant-General W. S. Stryker, of New Jersey, discovered documentary proof that the officer referred to was Colonel Charles Reed, of the Burlington militia.



WASHINGTON'S ADVANCE UPON TRENTON.

Pennington road, they heard the guns of Sullivan near the river, who had attacked the lower part of the town.

There were at the time one thousand Hessians in Trenton, under the command of Colonel Rall. On the night before, he was playing cards and drinking whiskey with Abraham Hunt, whose house he made his headquarters. In the midst of the game, a messenger appeared

"SEE THE OLD CONTINENTALS,
IN THEIR RAGGED REGIMENTALS"

**The Battle of Trenton**

at the door and sent in a letter to the German commander. The latter shoved it into his pocket, intending to read it when the game was finished, but forgot to do so. Had he opened the letter, he would have found that it was from a Tory, warning him that the Americans were approaching the town. When Rall heard the rattle of musketry and the roar of cannon, he rushed out and made a brave effort to rally his men, but he was soon mortally wounded, and, after a brisk resistance, his troops were forced to surrender, a few escaping in the direction of Bordentown. Supported between two of his men, Rall painfully made his way to where Washington was seated

on his horse, and handed him his sword, begging him to show consideration to his men. Washington called upon him, as he lay dying in the house to which he had been carried, and expressed his sympathy for his hapless condition.

**The Turning Point of the Revolution**

It seems odd to refer to the affair at Trenton as a battle, when the Americans lost but four men, two of whom were frozen to death; but it was in reality one of the most important conflicts of the Revolution. By many it is considered the turning-point of the struggle. The blow fell so quick and so sharp and so brilliant and unexpected were its results, that it thrilled the country with new hope. Enlistments quickly increased, and everywhere there was a brightening of faces and a stronger resolve to win the cherished independence.

Having taken his prisoners into Pennsylvania, Washington recrossed the Delaware to Trenton. When this became known, Cornwallis hastened to the town, and it looked as if the Americans were being caught in a trap, from which they could not escape. The river was so full of masses of ice, grinding and crushing together, that it was impossible to force a way through it again. In front was the superior force of Cornwallis, who went to bed that night so sure of "bagging the fox" that he had made his preparations to return to England, where he expected to report that the war was ended.

At nightfall, with only the Assunpink Creek flowing between the two opposing forces, Washington lit his camp-fires and kept them brightly burning and his sentinels pacing back and forth, as if all were in readiness for the events of the morrow. During the hours of darkness, however, he was marching silently by a roundabout course to Princeton, ten miles to the north. That town was held by three regiments of infantry and three troops of dragoons, beside which a large quantity of supplies and munitions of war were stored there. The rear-guard of the British army was at Lawrenceville, about halfway between Princeton and Trenton. The Americans reached the

**The Battle of Princeton**

bridge at Stony Brook, three miles from Princeton, at sunrise. There they made a short cut, while General Mercer took possession of the bridge at the main road. The British forces, under Colonel Mawhood, had just begun their movement towards Trenton, when they came upon the detachment under General Mercer at the bridge. A sharp fire was opened between the two forces, when the British charged with the bayonet, of which the patriots were destitute. General Mercer refused to surrender after being unhorsed and was

COPYRIGHT 1896.

FROM THE ORIGINAL DRAWING BY CHARLES KENDRICK

THE VICTORY AT TRENTON

bayoneted, while his command was put to flight, but the enemy was quickly checked by the regulars under Washington, who exposed himself with great daring. The British opened with their artillery and made a desperate effort to capture two cannon. Fighting fiercely, and with the aid of his bayonets, Colonel Mawhood forced his way to the main road and retreated towards Trenton. The Fifty-fifth British regiment was routed, and a part of the Fortieth took refuge in Nassau Hall, where it surrendered on the approach of the Americans. About thirty patriots were killed or wounded in the battle, while the enemy lost two hundred killed and two hundred and thirty prisoners.

Cornwallis upon hearing the connonading made all haste to Princeton, but he arrived too late. Washington was already marching away from the town. Cornwallis, however, pressed the pursuit, but finding the bridge at Kingston destroyed, returned, afterwards making his way to Brunswick (now New Brunswick), to protect the valuable stores there. Washington withdrew to Morristown, where he went into winter quarters and remained until May.

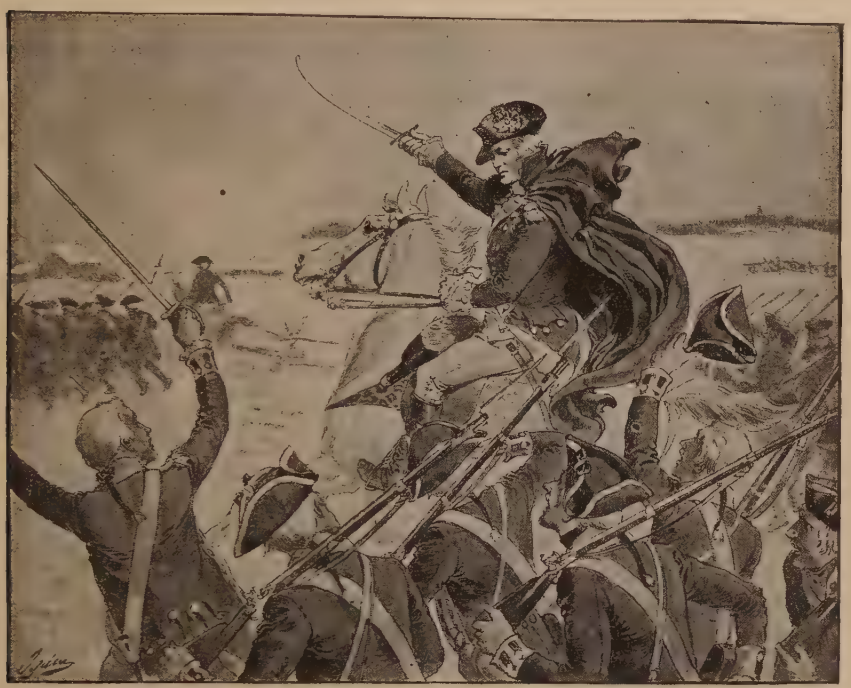
**Washington in Winter Quarters**

History affords no more touching story of exalted patriotism than that of Captain Nathan Hale, the "martyr spy of the Revolution." He was born at Coventry, Connecticut, in 1755, and was graduated at Yale before he was twenty-one years old. While at college, he was noted for his extraordinary athletic skill. One of his leaps on the New Haven green so far surpassed all others that for years it was inclosed within boundary marks. He was in person handsome, and had a winning manner. He was teaching school at New London and preparing to enter the ministry when news came of the battle of Lexington. He enlisted at once and persuaded many others to do so. The next morning he was on the road to Boston, and not long afterwards we find him a commissioned lieutenant in the regiment of Colonel Webb, which was employed in guarding the sea-coast in the vicinity of New London. Later on, the regiment joined Washington in the siege of Boston, and Hale became noted alike for his vigilance and his daring. Before the end of the year, he was promoted to a captaincy. His company in drill and discipline had no superior in the service. The terms of his men expiring shortly after the battle of Long Island, he gave up his own pay in order to persuade them to re-enlist. In the spring of 1776, he led a small body of spirits as daring as himself, and in a small row-boat, and in the darkness of

**Nathan Hale the Martyr**

night, boarded and captured a British vessel, moored within a few rods of a sixty-four-gun ship, held the crew prisoners in the hold, and brought the vessel to the wharf.

The latter part of the summer of 1776, as has been shown, was a period of intense anxiety to Washington. The patriots had suffered a disastrous defeat on Long Island, and the main army had difficulty in escaping to Manhattan Island. The gloomiest period of the war



THE BATTLE OF PRINCETON

was at hand. Desertions were numerous, food and clothing were scarce, and with the increasing sickness there was much dissatisfaction among the men because of the failure to receive their pay. The total army numbered hardly fourteen thousand men. Opposed to them was the British army of twenty-five thousand, in superb condition, under the command of Lord Howe. They were posted across East River, stretching from Bay Ridge eastward as far as Greenpoint, with posts at Bedford, Bushwick, and Flushing, and with their warships riding at anchor in New York Bay. Washington almost felt that the existence of his army and the success of independence

**Anxiety of Washton**

depended upon acquiring an accurate knowledge of the forces of Howe, their disposition, and, if possible, that leader's intended movements. There was but one way in which this could be done: by sending a spy into the lines of the enemy, in the person of a man bright, cool-headed, intelligent, alert, resourceful, and of dauntless courage, for, it may be said, the risk was so great that there was not one chance in ten of success. Colonel Knowlton, to whom Washington stated the case, agreed with him and set out to find the man. Selecting the most daring members of his regiment, he laid the matter before them and urged each to take the risk. Without exception every one declined, until Captain Hale was reached. He volunteered without a moment's hesitation, went to Washington, received his full instructions and set out upon his dangerous mission. He secured a school teacher's garb and left the camp at Harlem Heights. He made his way to Norwalk, where he took off his uniform and put on a brown suit and a broad-brimmed hat. A sloop took him across the Sound, and before it was daylight, he landed on the point of Great Neck, in Huntington Bay, which projects farthest into the water. He passed the day and night with Willliam Johnson at his farm near by, and then boldly entered the enemy's lines. What he did, where he went, what devices he adopted and what adventures befell him up to the time of his capture, of course, can never be known. He was absent two weeks, during which time it is known he visited all the encampments in and near Brooklyn. He passed the enemy's lines twice. When his work was finished in New York, he crossed to Brooklyn, it is believed near South Ferry, and

NATHAN HALE AS A SPY

**Patriotism of Hale**

threaded his way through the lines to Huntington. Accounts differ as to the precise manner in which he was captured; but the common belief is that while he was sitting in widow Chichester's tavern, in Huntington, a Tory relative entered and recognized him. Hale was waiting for his comrades' boat and did not know his peril. The Tory betrayed him to a British naval officer, whose vessel lay in Huntington Bay. Hale walked down to the Point and seeing a boat approaching stepped into the water to leap into it. At that moment, a British officer sprang up and ordered him to surrender, several marines at the same instant covering him with their guns. Hale started to run up the bank, when the officer called again to him to surrender. Looking back, Hale saw there was no chance of escape. He quietly walked back, stepped into the boat (which he had supposed was a friendly one, until the officer and the marines rose to view) and was rowed out to the ship *Halifax*. There he was searched and the fatal papers were found between the soles of his shoes.

THE CAPTURE OF NATHAN HALE

**Capture of Hale**

He was taken back to New York, where he arrived September

21st. On that day occurred a great fire, which burned four hundred dwellings, from Whitehall Slip to Barclay Street. He was taken before Lord Howe, who examined the plans and memoranda found in Hale's shoes. The prisoner denied nothing. He said he was a captain in Washington's army, had been in the British lines as a spy, did not desire a court-martial, and was sorry he had been prevented from getting the information gained to Washington. He was sentenced to be hanged on the following morning, and was at once delivered over to the brutal William Cunningham, Provost-Marshal of the royal army in New York. This Cunningham, it is a relief to state, was himself afterwards hanged; and the miscreant got his due, for he confessed that he had been accessory to several hundred murders. It was he who was responsible for the frightful sufferings of the Federal prisoners confined in the old Sugar House prison, in Rose Street, which was torn down only a few years ago. He threw Hale into a prison cell, refused to unpinion his arms, and cursed him when he asked for writing materials, a light, and a Bible. Afterwards, however, an officer of Hale's guard interceded and secured these favors for him.

**Brutal Treatment of Hale**

Hale spent a part of the night in writing,—one letter to his aged mother, and the other to Miss Hannah Adams, of Coventry, to whom he was engaged in marriage. Then he read his Bible and gave his thoughts to the great change so close at hand. Cunningham entered the cell at daybreak and found Hale ready. He handed the Provost Marshal the two letters he had written and asked as a dying favor that they might be forwarded to their destination. Cunningham opened both, read them through, and then with an oath tore them in pieces and threw them on the floor. When afterwards asked why he committed this brutality, he replied that he did not wish the rebels to know that they had a man who could die with such firmness. While standing with the noose around his neck, Cunningham scoffingly told the prisoner that then was his chance to make his dying speech and confession. Hale gave him one look of dignified contempt, and with a depth of feeling and a touching pathos which melted several of the bystanders to tears, said, amid the awed hush:

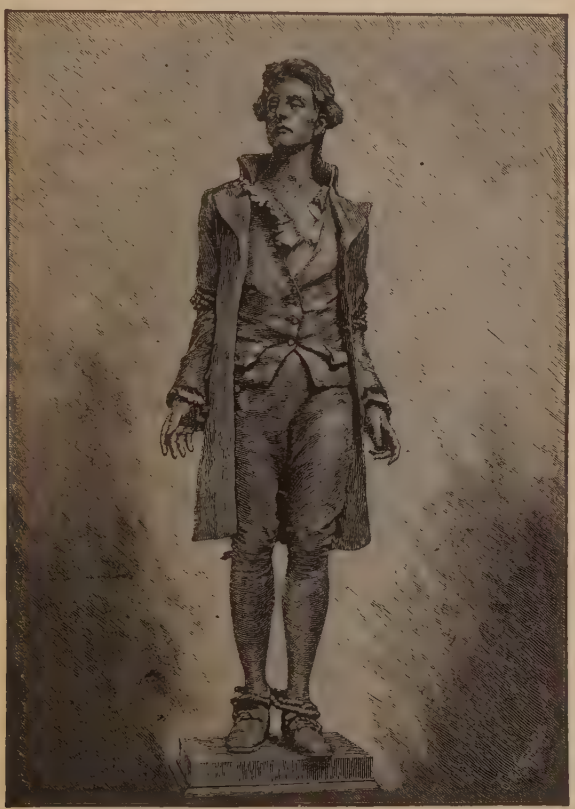
**Execution of Hale**

"My only regret is that I have but one life to give for my country."

"Swing off the rebel!" commanded Cunningham. Half an hour later, the body of the martyr was buried, probably in a grave dug

beneath the gallows, though it was unmarked, and its whereabouts has never become known.

On the 25th of November, 1893, a statue of Hale was unveiled in City Hall Park, New York, with impressive ceremonies, in the presence of an immense assemblage. No wonder that more than one eye flashed with indignation at the thought that, only a few years



THE HALE STATUE IN CITY HALL PARK, N. Y.

**Tributes to the Memory of Hale**

before, a handsome monument had been erected in this country to the memory of Major André, an Englishman, who strove to overthrow the cause of independence in this country, while this martyr, who gave his life for the sacred cause, sleeps in an unknown grave.

The late Henry J. Raymond declared that Nathan Hale furnished the most conspicuous example of patriotism that the history of the Revolution has left us. "The equal of André in talent, worth, and

amiable manners, and his superior in that final test of character—the motive by which his acts were prompted and his life guided—he laid aside every consideration personal to himself and entered upon a service of infinite hazard to life because Washington deemed it important to the sacred cause. Like André, he was found in a hostile camp; like him, though without a trial, he was adjudged a spy, condemned to death, and hanged."

One of the most brilliant and stirring of American lyrics was inspired by this noble patriot's fate and sacrifice. It was written by Judge Francis M. Finch, whose "The Blue and the Gray" is elsewhere quoted, and both as history and as poetry is well worth inserting here as a whole:

NATHAN HALE.

To drum-beat and heart-beat,
A soldier marches by:
There is color in his cheek,
There is courage in his eye,
Yet to drum-beat and heart-beat
In a moment he must die.

By starlight and moonlight,
He seeks the Briton's camp;
He hears the rustling flag,
And the armed sentry's tramp;
And the starlight and moonlight
His silent wanderings lamp.

With slow tread and still tread,
He scans the tented line;
And he counts the battery guns
By the gaunt and shadowy pine;
And his slow tread and still tread
Gives no warning sign.

The dark wave, the plumed wave,
It meets his eager glance;
And it sparkles 'neath the stars,
Like the glimmer of a lance—
A dark wave, a plumed wave,
On an emerald expanse.

A sharp clang, a steel clang,
And terror in the sound!
For the sentry, falcon-eyed,
In the camp a spy hath found;
With a sharp clang, a steel clang,
The patriot is bound.

With calm brow, steady brow,
He listens to his doom;
In his look there is no fear,
Nor a shadow-trace of gloom;
But with calm brow and steady brow
He robes him for the tomb.

In the long night, the still night,
He kneels upon the sod;
And the brutal guards withhold
E'en the solemn Word of God!
In the long night, the still night,
He walks where Christ hath trod.

'Neath the blue morn, the sunny morn,
He dies upon the tree;
And he mourns that he can lose
But one life for Liberty;
And in the blue morn, the sunny morn,
His spirit-wings are free.

But his last words, his message-words,
They burn, lest friendly eye
Should read how proud and calm
A patriot could die,
With his last words, his dying words,
A soldier's battle-cry.

From the Fame-leaf and Angel-leaf,
From monument and urn,
The sad of earth, the glad of heaven,
His tragic fate shall learn;
And on Fame-leaf and Angel-leaf
The name of HALE shall burn!

BETSEY ROSS MAKING THE STARS AND STRIPES.
(Adopted by Congress June 14, 1777.)

# CHAPTER XXXIII

## *EVENTS OF 1777 (BURGOYNE'S CAMPAIGN)*

[*Authorities:* The present chapter fitly opens with an account of the origin and first flinging to the breeze on the field of war of the now glorious national emblem, which was soon, and in a notable degree, to be the augur of victory. Under the unfurled banner, the tide of fortune turned in favor of the Continental arms in northern New York, where the English general, Burgoyne, after repeated discomfitures, was forced to surrender with 6,000 men at Saratoga. Gloom elsewhere was, however, falling on the country, as the result of Cornwallis' taking possession of Philadelphia and the victories of Howe at Brandywine Creek and Germantown. The prospect was nevertheless brightened by the continued successes of the United States flag at sea, and by the promised aid from France. The authorities are the same as those cited in the two previous chapters, to which may be added Burgoyne's Narrative of his Campaign; Beach's "Centennial Celebrations of the State of New York" (Albany, 1879); Benjamin Franklin's Works; and, for a narrative of the naval successes of the year, Maclay's "History of the United States Navy."]

**Birth of "Old Glory"**

LD GLORY," the Stars and Stripes, was born on the 14th of June, 1777, on which day Congress patriotically resolved: "That the flag of the United States be thirteen stripes, alternate red and white; the union be thirteen stars, white in a blue field, presenting a new constellation." It has never been known to what influence we were indebted for the selection of the stars and stripes in our flag. Some have thought that the stripes were of Dutch origin, for they occur in Dutch armorial bearings, while others suspect that they were introduced as a compliment to Washington, on whose coat-of-arms both the stripes and stars appear; but there is no tangible evidence that either supposition is correct. The Father of his Country, nevertheless, had

much to do with designing the first Stars and Stripes. It was he, assisted by a committee appointed by Congress, who directed the preparation of the first design. They called upon Mrs. Elizabeth Ross, in Philadelphia, some time between May 23d and June 7th, 1777, with the request that she should prepare the flag. Her house, 239 Arch Street, is, we believe, still standing at this writing. Washington had a rough draft, in which the stars were six-pointed. Mrs Ross proved that five-pointed ones would look better, and her suggestion was adopted. She had the flag finished by the next day, and it was received with great admiration wherever displayed. She was manufacturer of flags for the government for many years, her children afterwards succeeding to the business.

**How the Flag was Fashioned**

The flag of 1777 differed from that of to-day only in that it had but thirteen stars in the field, which were arranged in the form of a circle. The blue field, it is believed, was taken from the banner of the Scotch Covenanters, to signify the league and covenant of the united colonies against oppression, and symbolizing vigilance, perseverance, and justice. Previous to this, the patriots had fought under a variety of flags. At the beginning of the Revolution, the standard of Great Britain was used, each colony adding some local design. Massachusetts used the pine-tree on her flags and coins, while the armed ships of New York flew a white flag, inscribed with a black beaver, an emblem that now figures on the arms of the State.

Probably no colors were carried by the staunch old patriots at Lexington, but it was not long before they adopted a flag with the arms of Connecticut, bearing the motto: *Qui transtulit sustinet*, ("He who transplanted still sustains.") Tradition has it that at the battle of Bunker Hill a large red flag was displayed with the defiant taunt, "Come, if you dare." A flag that was well known in those days was of blue, with a field of white, quartered by a red St. George's cross.

**The First Flags**

The "Grand Union Flag" was hoisted January 2d, 1776. Its field was composed of the crosses of St. George and St. Andrew, as shown on the British banner, but the fly was made up of thirteen stripes, alternately red and white. This flag was raised on the American camp at Cambridge, and was greeted with hearty cheers and a salute of thirteen guns. It was probably displayed also in the City Hall Park, Boston, July 9th, 1776, when the Declaration of Independence was read in the presence of General Washington.

The two flags most used in colonial days were of the pine-tree and rattlesnake pattern. The pine-tree was taken from the flag of Massachusetts, and the motto, "An Appeal to Heaven," added to it. More famous was the rattlesnake flag, which originated with Franklin, twenty years before the Revolution, when he was editor of the Philadelphia *Gazette*. In an earnest appeal for a union of the colonies against the attacks of the French, he showed a wood-cut, representing a snake separated into parts, each part marked with the initials of one of the colonies, and underneath the motto: "Join or Die," or, "Unite or Die." The design came into general prominence later on, when it was divided into thirteen parts.

**The Naval Flag**

On February 9th, 1776, Colonel Gadsden presented to Congress "an elegant standard, such as is to be used by the commander-in-chief of the American navy." It was of a bright yellow color, the centre bearing the "lively representation of a rattlesnake in the attitude of preparing to strike." The motto beneath was: "Don't tread on me." Congress adopted the design, which was afterwards varied, the snake being used upon a field of thirteen red and white stripes, and also upon thirteen red and blue stripes, in which cases the snake was shown as "undulating across the field."

The first independence flag displayed in South Carolina was at the taking of Fort Jackson, on James Island, September 13th, 1775. It was of blue, with a white crescent in one corner. This was the flag rescued by Sergeant Jasper in the attack of June 28th, 1776. The Stars and Stripes was carried in the battle of Brandywine, September 11th, 1777, eight days after the official promulgation of the flag at Philadelphia. One of the first conflicts in which it was displayed was at the siege of Fort Stanwix, August 2d, 1777. There was no flag in the fort when the enemy appeared, but knowing the pattern adopted, one was constructed from the crude materials on hand. This interesting relic is now in the possession of Mrs. Abram Lansing, of Albany, N. Y., a descendant of General Gansevoort. The first British surrender graced by the Stars and Stripes was at Saratoga, October 17th, 1777.

**An Important Change in Our Flag**

An important change was ordered by Congress, to take effect May 1st, 1795. Then and after the flag was to contain fifteen stars and fifteen stripes, one of each to be added with the admission of every new State. The two were displayed because of the admission of Vermont and Kentucky. The *Constitution*, known as *Old Iron-*

*sides*, was the first ship to carry the fifteen-starred-and-striped banner to sea under canvas. It soon became evident that, with the continual addition of new States, the beautiful symmetry of the flag would in time be destroyed. At the suggestion of Capt. S. C. Reid, commander of the famous privateer *General Armstrong*, Congress, April 4th, 1818, restored the number of stripes to thirteen, and ordered that a new star should be added on the 4th of July succeeding the admission of every new State. The wife of Captain Reid made the first flag, with the old number of stripes, and with twenty stars arranged in the form of a large star.

**The Flags of Other Nations**

Although we are one of the youngest of nations, our flag is among the oldest. The flag of Great Britain, as it at present appears, was adopted in 1801; that of Spain in 1785, while the tri-color of France, also of red, white, and blue, took form in 1794. Portugal did not adopt its present flag until 1830, Italy in 1848, and the German Empire in 1871. Our banner, it may moreover be said, has been through more battles and has waved over more victories on land and sea than any other flag in the world. No European flag has had so many die in its defence. More than a million men have laid down their lives that "Old Glory" should float aloft, and millions more stand ready to-day to rush to its defence against assault from any and every quarter.

**The Formidable British Campaign**

Returning to our history of the events of 1777, the British government formed a plan for crushing the rebellion by means of the most formidable campaign that had yet been undertaken. This was to open communication between New York and Canada and cut off New England from the other States, by sending General Burgoyne, with seven thousand Hessians, including a corps of artillery, down the Hudson to Albany, where he was to be met by a large force from New York. At the same time, Colonel Barry St. Leger (*saint led' jer*) was to ascend the St. Lawrence to Lake Ontario and advance to Albany by way of the Mohawk River. At Crown Point, Burgoyne enlisted a large number of Indians, while St. Leger had other Indians and many Tories under his command. The convergence of these three armies would make an irresistible force, in the form of a vast wedge thrust between New England and the remaining colonies, permanently separating them and insuring the conquest of the country; but what great events flow from slight causes! One of the failures

in this great campaign was due to the blunder of a copyist. The campaign was planned in London, whence orders were sent out for the advance of Burgoyne's and St. Leger's forces from Canada. At first, Sir William Howe was simply informed of the plan, and was given discretionary powers. Then a despatch was drafted, ordering him to co-operate in the movement from New York. A clerk made a copy of the despatch for Lord George Germaine, but it was so carelessly written, and contained so many erasures, that the minister angrily ordered him to make another copy free of mistakes. While he was doing so, Lord George went to his country seat, and was not on hand when the carefully written paper was ready for his signature. It was laid away, and when the minister returned, it seems that he forgot about it. It was not sent to America for a long time,—and then too late to be of any service. Sir William Howe, being left with discretionary powers, confined his attentions to Washington's army near Philadelphia, and took no part in the co-operating movement with Burgoyne. The reason why Howe failed to send an army up the Hudson to Albany was a puzzle to the others who took part. Lord Germaine, conscious of his blame in the matter, kept the secret, and it is only within the last few years that the true explanation came to light.

**The Result of a Clerical Error**

While the armies of Washington and Howe were preparing for offensive movements, each sent out detachments to strike blows, as opportunity offered. The American General McDougall, stationed at Peekskill, burned the property there and retreated before the approach of a strong force. General Lincoln, at Bound Brook, New Jersey, after the loss of more than fifty men, narrowly escaped capture by a large body of troops, despatched by Cornwallis from Brunswick.

Governor Tryon was, as we have seen, a bitter enemy to the cause of American independence. He urged the employment of the most ferocious and intractable of the Indians, in order to strike terror among the rebels. Nothing suited this brutal officer better than to harry the patriots in every manner possible. In the latter part of April, 1777, he sailed up the East River with a force of two thousand men, part of whom were Tories, and, passing through Long Island Sound, landed on the Connecticut shore and marched towards Danbury, where the Americans had collected a large quantity of stores. These were destroyed, the town burned, and the people

**Gov. Tryon's Brutality**

treated with great cruelty. The militia flew to arms, and, under the leadership of Arnold, Wooster, and others, they attacked the invaders so impetuously that Tryon made haste to retreat before his escape should be cut off. Near Ridgefield, a sharp conflict took place, and General Wooster was killed. Arnold's horse was shot, and, as it fell, the rider's foot was caught in the stirrup and he was thrown with his steed. While he was trying to disengage himself, a Tory ran up to him with fixed bayonet.

"Surrender!" he commanded; "you're my prisoner."

**Gallantry of Arnold**

At this moment, Arnold freed his foot and sprang erect.

"Not yet," he replied, levelling his pistol and shooting the Tory dead. Then the daring officer ran for the woods not far off. The bullets were whistling about his ears, and several passed through his clothing, but he was unhurt, and, plunging among the trees, was safe for the time. The gallantry shown by Arnold in this fight incited Congress to present him with a fine horse, in lieu of the one he lost, together with rich trappings for it, and it cannot be denied that he won the gift. The invaders lost three times as many men on this raid as did the Americans. Meanwhile, the latter indulged in a number of retaliatory raids. In the succeeding month, Colonel Meigs crossed Long Island Sound, with a hundred and seventy men in whaleboats, from Guilford, Connecticut, and burned a dozen vessels at Sag Harbor and took nearly a hundred prisoners, without losing a man.

**Daring Capture of Gen. Prescott**

It was General Prescott, it will be remembered, who put Ethan Allen in irons and sent him to England to be tried for treason. This officer made his headquarters at the house of a Quaker, a few miles from Newport, Rhode Island, near the shores of Narragansett Bay. Lieutenant-Colonel Barton, of Providence, with several picked men, crossed the bay from Warwick Point in four small boats, passing stealthily among the British vessels without discovery, and made his way to the farmhouse where Prescott was staying. The night was dark, and, while most of the men stayed behind at a safe distance, the colonel, with several companions, including a burly negro, silently approached the house. A sentinel was seen at the gate, but he did not suspect danger, and was seized before he could give the alarm. Colonel Barton took the musket from his hands and told him that if he made any noise he would be instantly killed. Then they softly entered the dwelling. It was quite late, and the only person about

was the Quaker, who sat in his chair reading. He calmly surveyed his visitors as they gently pushed open the door and showed no sign of alarm at the visit.

"Where is General Prescott?" asked Colonel Barton, in a whisper.

The "Friend" pointed upward, without speaking. Barton nodded

UNLOCKING THE DOOR

his head, and, passing into the hall, cautiously ascended the stairs, with the negro behind him. The door of Prescott's room was locked, and Barton stood for a moment in some perplexity.

"How shall we get that open," he asked in an undertone, "without alarming him?"

"Does yo' want dat doah opened quick?" whispered the grinning African.

"I do, if it can be done."

"Watch me."

Stepping back a pace, the negro bent his head, and with one powerful thrust drove the door inward. Prescott leaped from his bed, startled by the shock, only to find himself confronted by Colonel Barton, with drawn sword, who announced that he was a prisoner. He was assured that he could save his life only by keeping still. He obeyed and soon after was landed at Warwick Point. Thence he was removed in a carriage to Providence, and finally sent to Washington, who was then in New Jersey, where he was exchanged for General Charles Lee. This daring exploit of Barton's received the tribute of a sword from Congress, together with a colonelcy in the Continental army.

**Exchange of Gen. Prescott for Gen. Lee**

Meanwhile, Burgoyne's invading army * reached Crown Point and threatened Ticonderoga, where St. Clair was in command. The British force now numbered seven thousand men, and he had a considerable train of artillery. St. Clair's troops were a little over a third of those of Burgoyne, but he was hopeful of holding him at bay. He did so until the invaders secured command of his position, when he evacuated the fort, after spiking his guns. The Americans were hotly pursued and a number captured, but St. Clair, with nearly two thousand troops, reached Fort Edward.

**Movements of Burgoyne**

The loss of Ticonderoga, with close upon two hundred cannon,

* "The Historic Waters of Champlain," to quote the words of George William Curtis at the Centennial Celebration at Schuylerville, October 17th, 1877, "have never seen a spectacle more splendid than the advancing army—the scarlet host of Burgoyne. The drums of the King's army were joyfully beating in the summer dawn; the bugles rang, the cannon thundered, the rising June sun shone on the scarlet coats of British grenadiers, on the bright helmets of German dragoons, and on burnished artillery and polished arms. The trained and veteran troops were admirably equipped and commanded. . . . On the 1st of July, the brilliant pageant swept up Lake Champlain and the echoes of the mighty wilderness which had answered the guns of Amherst and the drum-beat of Montcalm, saluted the transports and gunboats that, led by a dusky swarm of Indians in bark canoes, stretched between the eastern shore, along which Riedesel and the Germans marched, and the main body advancing with Phillips upon the west. . . . To us, it is a picture. But to know what it truly was, let the happy farmer on these green slopes and placid meadows imagine a sudden flight to-night with all he loves and from all he owns, struggling up steep hills, lost in tangled woods, crowding along difficult roads, at every step expecting the glistening tomahawk, the bullet, and the mercies of a foreign soldiery. . . . We come with song and speech and proud commemoration to celebrate the triumph of this day (the surrender of Saratoga). Let us not forget the cost of that triumph, the infinite suffering that this unchanging sky beheld; the torture of men; the heartbreak of women; the terror of little children, that paid for the happiness which we now enjoy."

and a large number of prisoners, spread dismay through out the country, and Schuyler (*sky' ler*) and St. Clair were strongly condemned by those who did not wait to hear the particulars. They had done all that was possible, while Congress had failed to send the reinforcements so sorely needed by the patriots. Washington, at any rate, understood the situation, and he gave both officers and men credit for having done everything that lay in their power. He saw the need of checking the march of Burgoyne, and, though he could ill-afford to deplete his own army, he directed that a part of the troops then on their way from New England to join him, should ascend the Hudson and give aid to Schuyler, who was at Saratoga when he learned of the disaster at Ticonderoga. He lost no time in hastening to Fort Edward, to bring together the scattered troops and oppose Burgoyne, who was issuing boastful proclamations and ordering the rebels to submit. When Schuyler had gathered every available man, his force was less than one-half that of Burgoyne, but with that he destroyed the bridges and placed many obstacles in the path of the invading army. Burgoyne advanced cautiously, for the British at New York were unable to send garrisons for the lake forts, and his own Indians were beginning to desert him.

**Attempts to Check Burgoyne**

At Fort Edward occurred the touching episode of the death of Jane McCrea, which has been related hundreds of times, though the versions of the story have often lacked truth. Miss McCrea was a beautiful young woman, engaged in marriage to a member of Burgoyne's army, and was visiting Fort Edward at the time of the approach of the British troops. A party of Indians seized her, with the design of carrying her into the British camp on horseback. A squad of Americans started in pursuit, and upon coming in sight of the Indians, fired a volley. One of the bullets struck the young woman and she fell dead from her horse. The Indians then scalped her and carried her luxuriant tresses into camp as a trophy. Her lover was so shocked when he learned of the occurrence, that he left the army, went to Canada, and lived thereafter a life of solitude. Slight as was this incident, when compared with the momentous events then taking place, it nevertheless made a profound sensation throughout the country, and was the cause of hundreds of young men flocking to the Continental army.

**Death of Jane McCrea**

Schuyler now determined to make a stand at Stillwater, where he had established a fortified camp and was receiving many recruits.

The panic caused by the evacuation of Ticonderoga passed, and a feeling of buoyant patriotism brought considerable additions to the ranks of the American army. Furthermore, it was apparent that Burgoyne was growing weaker. He was losing many men by desertion, while his base of supplies was so distant that his army began to suffer for food. The patriots, meanwhile, were gathering round him on all sides and harassing him continually, while with every mile he advanced southward his condition grew worse.

**Growing Weakness of Burgoyne**

Since it was as difficult to retreat as to advance, Burgoyne decided to strike a blow that would encourage the Tories, and enable him to procure horses and cattle, of which his command stood in great need. A strong detachment of British Hessians, Canadians, and Indians, under Lieutenant-Colonel Baum, set out for Bennington, Vermont, and arrived there on the evening of August 13th. Baum saw so many Americans in the neighborhood that he sent back to Burgoyne for reinforcements. Two German battalions, with two cannon, were despatched to his assistance, their advance being through a downpour of rain, which continued for twenty-four hours. While awaiting their arrival, Baum took up position on a hill, some miles west of Bennington, which sloped down towards the Walloomscoick Creek, where he threw up intrenchments.

Colonel John Stark, a veteran of the French and Indian War, was at Bennington with a part of his brigade. He immediately sent to Manchester for the remnants of Col. Seth Warner's regiment, in camp there, and they marched through the same drenching rain which descended upon the reinforcements on their way to the assistance of Baum. The storm finally subsided, and the morning of August 16th was hot and sultry. At three o'clock in the afternoon, Stark divided his forces so as to attack, from every side, the enemy on Walloomscoick Heights. "There they are, boys," said Stark; "we'll beat them to-day, or Molly Stark's a widow!" The impetuosity of the assault struck terror among the Indians, who broke through the American lines and fled to the woods. The fight continued for a couple of hours, when the enemy's ammunition failed, and they attempted to cut their way through the investing lines. Baum was killed, and all his men were made prisoners. At this juncture, the reinforcements from Burgoyne arrived, and almost at the same moment Stark was joined by fresh troops. The engagement was immediately renewed and continued until sunset, when the enemy

**American Victory at Bennington**

retreated, leaving their artillery and wounded behind them. The victory was so complete that it greatly inspirited the Americans, while it caused the gravest alarm on the part of Burgoyne, whose situation now became really perilous. Many more of his Canadians and Indians deserted him, and, for the first time, he saw starvation threaten his troops.

While these stirring events were taking place to the east of Stillwater, others hardly less important were occurring to the westward.

DEATH OF JANE McCREA

Joseph Brant, the famous Mohawk chief, had made a visit to England and was presented to the King (George III.). He was treated with so much consideration that he promised to aid the English in conquering the colonies, and he kept his promise. Early in June (1777), the head of the Mohawks gathered his warriors about him and at once began offensive operations. Schulyer ordered Brigadier-General Nicholas Herkimer, in command of the Tryon County militia, to check any movement on the part of Brant. Fort Schuyler

**Siege of Fort Schuyler**

received a strong garrison, which was soon besieged by St. Leger, with a large force of Canadians, British, and Indians, together with a number of Americans who still adhered to the fortunes of the British. Learning of this, Herkimer marched with a number of the militia to the relief of the fort. He sent word to the commandant of his intention, and a detachment from the garrison simultaneously sallied out and attacked the besiegers, who were routed and scattered in every direction, while a large amount of plunder was taken. One cause of his defeat was the absence of a considerable portion of the investing force, which had gone to meet Herkimer, and of whose approach they knew.

**Bravery of Gen. Herkimer**

At Oriskany, near Utica, Herkimer's militia were marching through the woods, when they were ambushed by the Tories and Indians, who furiously assailed them. The rear-guard broke and fled, but the remainder fought with the utmost bravery. The same bullet that killed Herkimer's horse wounded him mortally, but, the valorous old hero propped himself on the ground against his saddle, and, supported by the trunk of a tree, smoked his pipe, and gave directions as coolly as if he were on parade. A violent thunder-shower checked the fighting for a while, but it was soon renewed. Suddenly, the sound of firing caused by a sortie from the fort reached the ears of the Indians, who fled in a panic, quickly followed by the white men. General Herkimer was carried to his home, where he shortly afterwards died from the effects of his wound.

The siege of Fort Schuyler was pressed; but the garrison held out bravely. The prospect was so gloomy, however, that a messenger was sent to Schuyler begging for relief. That wise commander, though he saw the necessity of beating back St. Leger, in order to insure the impending victory over Burgoyne, could ill spare a man. He, however, called a council of war and recommended that relief be sent, though in this he was opposed by his officers, because, as they thought, they were not strong enough to check Burgoyne.

**The Relief for Fort Schuyler**

At this, Schuyler lost patience and declared that the relief should be given. "Where is the brigadier who will take command?" he cried, looking round in the faces of the officers. Arnold promptly stepped forward and at once announced his readiness. Within the following twenty-four hours, eight hundred volunteers under this leader were marching westward. The manner in which the siege of Fort Schuyler was raised was not paralleled during the Revolution,

for it was daring and unique. The incident recalls an episode in the life of General Oglethorpe, which bore some resemblance to it.

On his arrival at German Flats, Arnold found a Tory prisoner who had been condemned to death for some misdeed. He was a half-idiot, whose mother begged Arnold to spare his life. Arnold consented, on condition that the young man would do a certain thing for him. The delighted fellow announced himself ready for any task, no matter what it was.

**An Ingenious Stratagem**

"You are to go," he said, "with a friendly Oneida Indian to the camp of St. Leger's warriors and make them believe that my army is twice as numerous as theirs, and that I am on my march against them, and that if they wait we shall kill every one of them."

The prisoner eagerly pledged himself to do what was asked, and the piece of strategy was quickly arranged. Several bullets were fired through the clothing of the young man, and he was told to go. Away he sped at his highest speed, so that, on reaching the Indian camp, he was panting and almost exhausted. When the startled savages looked at him for an explanation, he said he had just eluded the Americans, and showed the bullet-holes in his clothing as witness of his story. "They are like the leaves on the trees," he added; "they will soon be here and all who stay will be killed."

While the warriors were listening to these alarming words, the Oneida Indian dashed in among them from another direction, and with the same story. This was enough, and indeed more than enough. The Indians were so terrified that it was impossible for the officers to restrain them. They ran off pell-mell through the woods towards Oswego, quickly followed by the soldiers who shared the panic. Thus ended the siege of Fort Schuyler and the dreaded Indian invasion, without any fighting on the part of the Americans.

The overthrow of St. Leger was a heavy blow to Burgoyne, who saw his hopes of conquest daily vanishing. He felt that defeat was drawing near, and that his grand scheme of invasion which was to be a crushing out of the rebellion was likely to end in overwhelming disaster to himself. To General Schuyler, more than to any other man, was the present success of the American arms due. While preparing to make his triumph complete, General Gates, however, arrived in camp with an order from Congress to supersede him in the command. This was a cruel blow to Schuyler, and unhappily it was the result of intrigue. Washington, when he was asked to appoint a successor to

**Arrival of Gen. Gates**

Schuyler, properly refused, and Congress then commissioned Gates and voted him all the aid for which Schuyler had so long asked in vain. But though he felt the indignity, Schuyler was none the less a patriot. He received Gates cordially, and loyally volunteered to give him all the help he could in conquering Burgoyne.

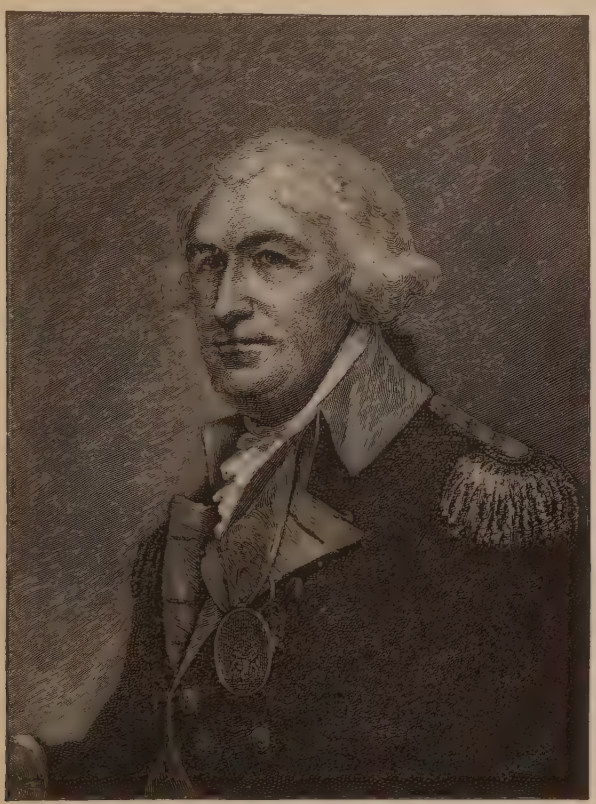
**Battle of Bemis Heights**

Gates was tardy in his movements, and three weeks passed before he moved up the valley of the Hudson with his army of nine thousand men. Upon Bemis Heights, a short distance above Stillwater, he established a fortified camp. Burgoyne, whose army was reduced to less than six thousand, called in his outposts, crossed the Hudson, and encamped on the heights of Saratoga. It was as fatal for him to remain idle as to retreat, so, on the morning of the 19th, he advanced in three columns to offer battle. Gates showed such an indisposition to fight, that it pointed to a lack of personal courage. Arnold and the other officers, on the contrary, were so eager for battle that it was hard to restrain them. In the severe conflict which ensued Arnold distinguished himself, and had Gates granted him the reinforcements for which he asked, he would no doubt have turned the right wing of the British army, but Gates was inexorable. As it was, the invaders would have been compelled to surrender but for the timely aid of their Hessian allies. After a lull, the battle was, however, renewed and with more fury than ever. A charge of the king's troops was repelled so fiercely that the enemy fell back. Arnold was at the side of Gates begging for reinforcements, but the commander stubbornly refused; yet, as we shall presently see, it was Arnold's courage and skill which beyond question saved the American army from disaster. Not less notable were the heroic efforts of others on the field. The gallant Morgan and his riflemen rendered scarcely less effective aid, and yet when Gates sent his official report of the battle to Congress, he did not mention the name of either officer. It was a pitiful example of meanness and jealousy.

**Timidity of Gen. Gates**

Seeing the great work that could be done by following up the advantage gained, Arnold urged that the attack should be renewed the next day, but Gates would not give his consent. Burgoyne, meanwhile, fell back a couple of miles and again threw up intrenchments. While thus engaged, he was cheered by a message from Sir Henry Clinton at New York, who promised to cause a diversion by sending an expedition up the Hudson. Burgoyne, ever confident, replied that he could hold out until the 12th of October. But the

condition of the invaders rapidly grew worse. The Indians were continually deserting; nearly a thousand sick and wounded were in the hospital; the Americans were converging on all sides; and the foraging parties came back empty-handed and often with many of their numbers missing. Volunteers, on the other hand, flocked to



GENERAL HORATIO GATES

the standard of the patriots, whose hopes now rose to the highest point.

Arnold's impatience and quick temper led him to address a note to Gates, complaining of his tardiness, in which he used such plain words that the commander took offence. But the position of things with the British, who now set out to return to the lakes, was desperate. Burgoyne called a council of war, which decided that the only thing to do was to fight. On the morning of October 7th, therefore, he advanced against the Americans. In the battle which followed,

**Burgoyne's Desperate Position**

Morgan and his riflemen did fine service, but all the Americans fought with unsurpassed bravery; so much so, indeed, that a cannon was taken and retaken five times. Finally it remained in the hands of the Americans, and was quickly turned upon the fleeing enemy.

**Arnold's Intrepidity**

Gates had deprived Arnold of a command before the battle, because of his impertinence, and forbade him to take part in any fighting. Arnold, chafing and incensed at his forced inaction, listened to the sounds of the battle until he could restrain himself no longer. Then he leaped into the saddle and sent his horse flying into the thickest of the conflict. The indignant Gates ordered Major Armstrong to follow and bring back his insubordinate officer. He set off to do so, but Arnold, glancing over his shoulder and knowing his errand, quickly left his pursuer behind. The troops broke into cheers when Arnold placed himself at the head of his brigade and plunged with reckless bravery into the fight. Never did soldier fight more dauntlessly! Ah, why did not some good angel, three years later, whisper into the ear of this man, and draw him back from the precipice over which he leaped to the uttermost depths of infamy?

**Defeat of Burgoyne**

The two leaders on the American side who performed prodigies of valor were Arnold and Morgan. On the enemy's side, fully as brave and daring was General Fraser,* of the British army. His voice and example thrilled his men to deeds of valor that compelled the admiration of his opponents. Mounted, in full uniform, on his noble gray charger, he was so conspicuous an object that an American sharpshooter in the branches of a tree singled him out, and brought him mortally wounded from his horse. His fall caused a panic, and, at the critical moment three thousand fresh New York militia arrived on the field. The British lines were broken and the troops retreated to their intrenchments, leaving their artillery behind

* A pathetic interest attaches to the death of this gallant Scottish commander serving under Burgoyne. He belonged to the family of the Frasers of Lovat. The chieftain of the clan, Simon, Lord Lovat, came to the block for complicity in the Scottish rebellion of 1745, and besides losing his head he lost his estates in the ill-fated Stuart cause. General Fraser who was heir to the estates that had become forfeit to the Crown, was, it is said, promised their restoration on the successful issue of the Burgoyne expedition. His death on Bemis Heights extinguished all hopes of revoking the act of attainder in the interest of the Fraser clan. The lamented officer was buried early in the morning after the battle, when the conflict was resumed, and the chaplain who read the service at the grave was, with the officers who assisted at the obsequies, spattered with mud from the cannon-balls that at intervals fell about the group.

them. Arnold now led a charge against them. It was desperately resisted, but nothing could stay him and Morgan's riflemen. When at last Arnold drove the Hessians pell-mell before him, they fired a parting volley which killed Arnold's horse and inflicted a severe wound in the same leg that had been injured at Quebec. Then it was that Major Armstrong, who had been sent by Gates to prevent Arnold doing "some rash thing," managed to overtake the wounded hero and delivered the order for his return to his superior officer. Benedict Arnold won this great victory against the orders of the general in command, who, though he did not appear on the field of battle, received all the credit and glory.

During the night, Burgoyne, with his whole army, retreated to a point a mile north of the intrenchments that were occupied by the Americans. He was naturally depressed, for he then foresaw the inevitable end. He had started out with bombastic proclamations and high-flown promises; but all was to close in disaster and overthrow. After an unspeakably dismal march through a rain-storm, Burgoyne reached the heights of Saratoga on the morning of October 10th. The Americans followed, and the British commander then decided to continue the struggle no longer. The situation, he saw, was hopeless, for besides being hemmed in by the patriots, his army was on the verge of starvation. After holding a council with his officers, he sent a proposal to Gates offering to surrender. The terms were soon agreed upon, and the vanquished army laid down its arms in front of the present village of Schuylerville.

**Surrender of Burgoyne**

Burgoyne's Indian allies had fled long before.* The number of troops that now became prisoners of war was 5,791 officers and men,† among whom were six members of the British parliament. Some of the trophies were a train of brass artillery, of the finest make then known, five thousand muskets, and an immense quantity of ammunition and stores. The Americans treated the prisoners with great kindness, dividing their food with them, and showing them every consideration.

* The reason assigned for this desertion of the Indians is highly creditable to Burgoyne. It resulted from the General's putting a check on the propensity of the savage allies of the British to scalp and plunder the unarmed, though it is known that Burgoyne himself urged the employment of the Indians as auxiliaries of the army.

† Of this surrendered force, 3,379 were English and provincials, and 2,412 German auxiliaries. The strength of the American army at Saratoga on the day of the surrender was 11,098, of which 7,716 were regulars and 3,382 militia.

The capture of Burgoyne and his army was the most substantial triumph that the patriots had thus far gained in the war. It spread dismay in England, where the resentment against Burgoyne was so deep that it was several years before justice was done him. The rejoicing and gratitude among the colonies were correspondingly great. The victory, moreover, was far-reaching in its results. In the autumn of 1776, Benjamin Franklin had been sent to France as commissioner of the United States to the French court, with Silas Deane and Arthur Lee as his assistants. The two latter gentlemen had already been in Paris some time, but had effected little. A change, however, came about after the surrender at Saratoga. The appointment of Franklin was one of the wisest steps taken by our country. He was shrewd, patriotic, abounding in homely wit, and withal a philosopher. The struggle for independence developed no finer or better equipped patriot than he. Dressed in his homely garb, with his genial humor and bright conversation, he quickly became a favorite at the gay court and won friends where we already had many ardent sympathizers.

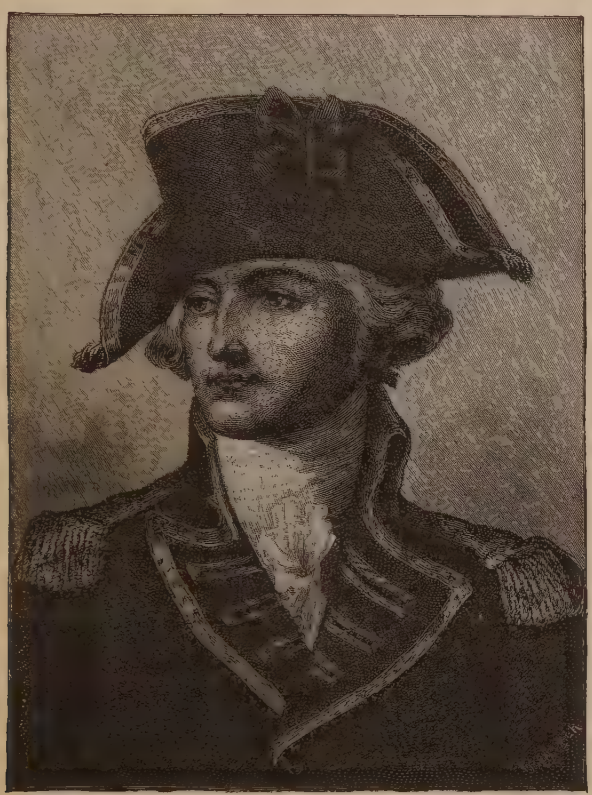
**Far-reaching Results of the Victory**

Early in 1777, the commissioners asked France to make a treaty with the United States for their mutual benefit in peace and war. Aid had already been furnished our country from the French arsenals and public treasury, but it was done secretly. The king wished to wait until some substantial progress, some decisive advantage, was gained by the Americans, before he committed himself unreservedly in our favor, for in doing so he foresaw the certainty of a rupture with England. The surrender of Burgoyne afforded this excuse, and the important step was hence taken. One-third of the British forces in America had been either killed or captured, and France hesitated no longer to recognize our independence. The treaty was signed February 6th, 1778. France acknowledged the independence of the United States, and the two nations pledged themselves to make common cause, each binding itself not to treat with Great Britain for peace without the consent of the other. This was the first treaty made between the United States and a foreign power. In addition, France agreed to send to our assistance a fleet of sixteen war-vessels, under D'Estaing, and an army of four thousand men.

**The Treaty with France**

Great Britain, of course, at once heard of France's action, and now declared war against her, and invited the United States to help her. As an inducement, she offered to give everything that she had

refused three years before, including freedom from taxation, and according representation in parliament; but the offer was too late. The Americans were firmly resolved on independence and snubbed the English commissioners sent to this country. It should be stated that since the ruling families in France and Spain were related, Spain joined France in the war against Great Britain in 1779, and



GENERAL JOHN BURGOYNE

Holland, for commercial reasons, united with those powers in 1780. Thus, as the war went on, Great Britain found her hands full.

**Disaster and Misfortune**

Let us now return to the progress of events in 1777. While everything had gone so well in the North, disaster and misfortune followed fast upon each other with the other portions of the patriot army. After his victory at Princeton, Washington withdrew to the heights of Morristown, where he spent the winter. His lines, fol-

lowing the trend of the mountains, stretched from the Hudson to the Delaware. At first the British line faced him, but in consequence of the hostility of the inhabitants, the invaders gradually drew in around Brunswick and near Sandy Hook. Howe repeatedly tried to induce the Americans to come out, but Washington was too cautious. The British commander had his eye upon Philadelphia, but was afraid to march through New Jersey, lest Washington should attack him on the flank.

Meanwhile, Sir Henry Clinton, whom Howe had left in command at New York, made several diversions in favor of his chief. Situated in the Hudson Highlands were three forts, viz.: Fort Constitution, on a rocky island, opposite West Point, and Forts Clinton and Montgomery, on the west bank of the river, one on either side of a small stream. From Fort Montgomery the Americans had stretched a chain and boom across the Hudson to Anthony's Nose, to prevent vessels from passing up stream. These forts were feebly garrisoned and were under the command of General Putnam, whose headquarters were at Peekskill. They were attacked by so superior a force that many of the defenders were captured and the remainder scattered. The chain and boom were broken, the Americans burning most of their vessels, to prevent their falling into the hands of the enemy, who then devastated both shores of the Hudson. These events took place while the campaign of Burgoyne was in progress, and the marauders were engaged in their work of destruction when the news of the British general's surrender caused them to retreat hurriedly to New York.

**Capture of the Forts on the Hudson Highlands**

Washington now marched to Philadelphia, expecting to meet the British south of that city. In the latter part of August, he learned that Lord Howe's fleet, with his brother's army, was coming up Chesapeake Bay, with the evident intention of attacking the city. Washington marched from Philadelphia on the 24th of August, and the next day was at Wilmington, Delaware, while the British troops were landing at the head of Elk River, a little more than fifty miles from the American capital. They numbered eighteen thousand well-equipped men, while the Americans had hardly eleven thousand, of whom a fifth were Pennsylvania militia. Washington marched beyond Wilmington and took up position behind Red Clay Creek. Sharp skirmishing followed, but Washington outgeneralled Howe and fell back to Brandywine Creek, which he crossed at Chad's Ford, posting

**Advance of Washington**

BATTLE OF BRANDYWINE.

his army on the hills to the eastward. He displayed no little skill in the manœuvring and fighting which followed, but Sullivan, through some misinformation, blundered, and the final result was a defeat of the Americans, with a loss of twelve hundred men. They therefore retreated to Chester, and the next morning (September 12th), Washington proceeded to Philadelphia, and encamped near Germantown. Congress, seeing that it would again be compelled to fly, once more invested the commander-in-chief with large discretionary power. He sought to bring on a battle, but the British eluded the Americans, hurriedly marched to Philadelphia, and took possession of the vicinity September 26th. Congress meanwhile fled to Lancaster, and afterwards to York.

**Capture of Philadelphia**

Washington and his army were at this time about twenty miles from Philadelphia, on Skippack Creek. On the night of October 3d, a stealthy march of fourteen miles was made to Germantown, where they attacked Howe's army at daylight. The whole region that morning was enveloped in a dense fog, but the Americans drove the British pell-mell before them. Howe hurried to the spot only to meet his panic-stricken battalions. A great disaster was impending to his army, when unexpected assistance came to it. A stone building, known as Chew's House, was occupied by a strong force of the enemy, who turned it into a castle by barricading the doors and lower windows. From this fort, they kept up a destructive fire, and could not be dislodged. A long delay resulted from the attempt to capture it. The fog was so dense that men could not see each other a few paces apart; the troops became bewildered, and the confusion was so great that the plans of Washington were disarranged. The Americans, as usual, fought bravely and were on the eve of a decisive victory, when an alarm was created and a disorderly retreat followed. Washington and his Continentals finally took up their winter quarters at Valley Forge, on the Schuylkill, just above Norristown. The invaders marched into Philadelphia, where they held high revel during the terribly severe winter which followed, while the patriots shivered and starved at Valley Forge.

**American Defeat at Germantown**

And now it is necessary to relate some things which are anything but pleasant reading, to those, at least, who may have conceived the notion that the whole country was at the time aflame with patriotism; that our soldiers in the Revolutionary war were always much braver than the enemy; that everybody was honest, moral, and upright; and

PERIOD III
ENGLAND AND FRANCE IN AMERICA
1758 TO 1783

that the Tories were few in number, and hardly dared show themselves except under the protection of the "red-coats."

We cannot give too much glory to the patriots who won our independence. They went through every possible suffering; they starved, shivered with cold, and gasped with heat; the paper money in which they were now and then paid soon became worthless; they tramped through the snow and over frozen roads often barefoot, and they fought, bled, and died with an almost unsurpassed heroism. While this is true, nevertheless it is a fact that, with all the sturdy patriotism, there was jealousy, dishonesty, trickery, meanness, and demoralization, and that to a degree that alarmed all true friends of the country.

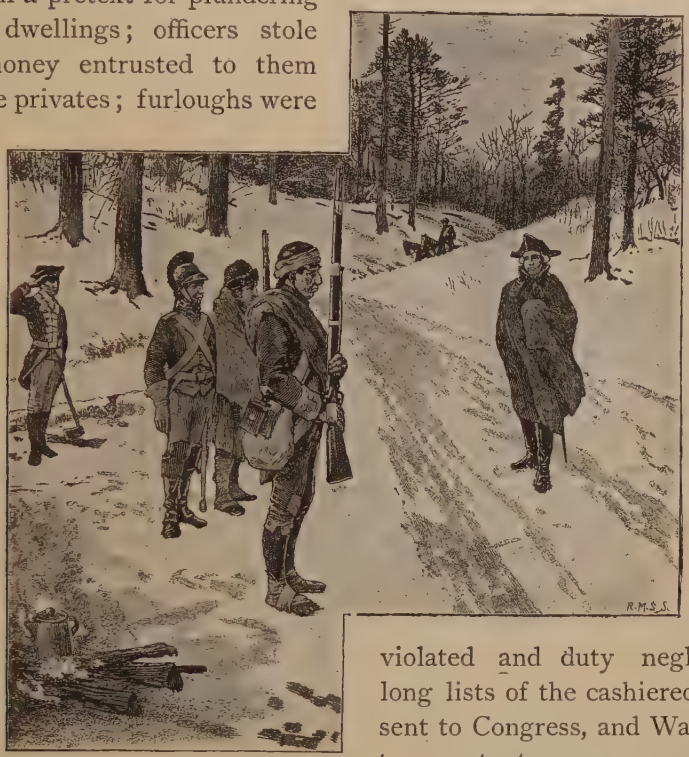
**Shameful Truths**

While the wretched army of patriots were suffering at Valley Forge, Americans hoarded the necessaries of life and contractors became rich. Though days passed without any of the soldiers tasting meat, there was plenty of it for the invaders in Philadelphia. The farmers stole to the city with their choicest products, because they received British gold in payment. Washington was not the meekest of men, when the welfare of his soldiers was at stake. Having obtained authority from Congress, he seized provisions for his troops, paying therefor with scrip, and ordered all the farmers within a radius of seventy miles to thresh out one-half their grain by February 1st, and the remainder by March 1st, under penalty of having it all seized as straw. The churlish farmers refused and burned what they could not sell, to keep it from the famishing patriots. Nor was this the worst that then happened. Men gave up their usual pursuits and plunged into speculation, stock-jobbing, and gambling; official signatures were forged; honest debts were repudiated; patriotism was scoffed at, until the disgusted and grieved Washington wrote: "Idleness, dissipation, and extravagance seemed to have laid hold of most; speculation, peculation, and an insatiate thirst for riches have got the better of every other consideration and almost every order of men."

**Washington's Disgust**

Naturally the people were ardent at first, but many soon tired of the hardships and dangers of real war. During the retreat across New Jersey, it seemed as if every house had a piece of red flannel tacked on the front, as a sign that they were royalists; not a hundred volunteers were picked up on that woful march; half of the Maryland militia sent to Washington's help just before the battle

of Germantown deserted; when Philadelphia was in the hands of the enemy, and the province was overrun by the British, Pennsylvania had barely twelve hundred militia in service. In 1781, one thousand soldiers perjured themselves to escape military duty, a number becoming informers, spies, and guides for the enemy; drunkenness and theft were common; Whigs were accused of being Tories, so as to furnish a pretext for plundering their dwellings; officers stole the money entrusted to them for the privates; furloughs were violated and duty neglected; long lists of the cashiered were sent to Congress, and Washington wrote to one governor that the officers he sent him were not fit to be shoe-blacks. He told another that his officers, as a rule, were from the lowest class, and led their men into every kind of mischief. There were plenty of rogues among the surgeons, too, who took bribes to grant discharges and ate up the delicacies intended for the sick. The officers quarrelled about their respective ranks and positions. John Adams wrote in 1777: "I am wearied to death by the wrangles between military officers, high and low. They quarrel like cats and dogs."



AT VALLEY FORGE

**Quarreling like Cats and Dogs**

Even Washington did not escape envenomed personal attack. A

bitter opposition against him developed. Congress was as exacting as ever, and gave little heed to his wishes. Benedict Arnold was the oldest brigadier-general and was not only entitled to promotion for his brilliant services, but was strongly recommended by the commander-in-chief; yet Congress would not promote him. Stark resented a similar slight by going back to his plough, where he stayed until Bennington brought him to the front again. Gates was appointed adjutant-general without consulting Washington, and the commissary department was reorganized against his strongly expressed wishes. The department could not have worked more wretchedly. It was said that during the distressful march to Valley Forge, when half the men were barefooted, "hogsheads of shoes and stockings and clothing were lying at different places on the roads and in the woods rotting for want of teams, or money to pay the teamsters."

**Injustice to Washington**

Gates was so puffed up by his victory over Burgoyne, and by the flattery of his pretended friends, that he reported directly to Congress, instead of to Washington as was his duty. Had Gates transported his army to Pennsylvania, as Washington urged him to do, there is little doubt that Howe would have been driven from Philadelphia and the capital saved. Finally, a cabal was organized to displace Washington and place Gates at the head of the army. An Irishman, named Conway, who had been sent over from France by Silas Deane, was made brigadier-general by Congress. Washington distrusted the adventurer and protested against his promotion. Nevertheless, he was passed over his seniors and made first of all major-general and then inspector-general.

**The Conway Cabal**

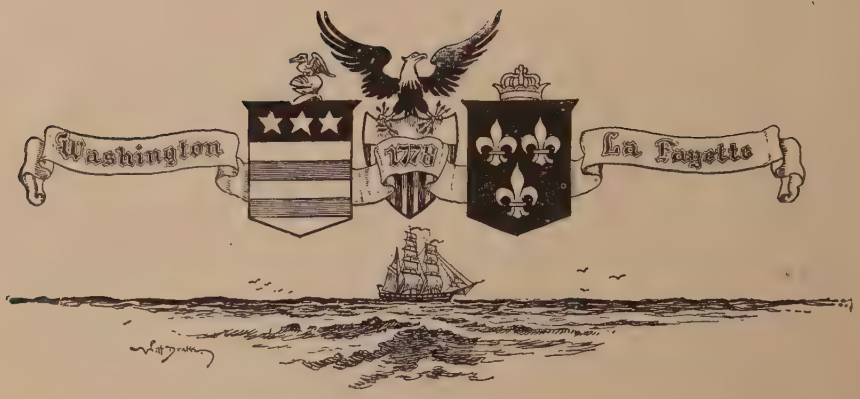
Conway announced that all the disasters were due to Washington's incapacity, and no success was likely until he was displaced by a competent leader. In the plot to remove him were Conway, Gates, Mifflin, and Gen. Charles Lee. They had many supporters in Congress, but, happily, not as many as Washington had. Throughout the whole trying ordeal, that great and good man preserved his lofty bearing, and made no complaint. Treachery, ill-will, and open enmity could not chill his patriotism. In a letter to Patrick Henry, he wrote: "If the cause is advanced, indifferent is it to me where or in what quarter it happens." But the best men implicitly trusted Washington. They resented the plotting of the "Conway Cabal," one of whose chief supporters, Samuel Adams, dared not show himself before the army. General Cadwallader challenged Conway to

ATTACK ON THE CHEW HOUSE.

mortal combat, and wounded him so desperately that he did not believe he would survive, though he finally recovered. In the presence of death, Conway wrote to Washington: "Sir:—I find myself just able to hold my pen during a few minutes, and take this opportunity of expressing my sincere grief for having done, written, or said anything disagreeable to your excellency. My career will soon be over; therefore, justice and truth prompt me to declare my last sentiments. You are, in my eyes, the great and good man. May you long enjoy the love, esteem, and veneration of these States whose liberties you have asserted by your virtues."

When Washington read this pitiful letter he said: "Poor Conway! he never could have intended much wrong; there is nothing to forgive." The cabal, which was so discreditable to all concerned, soon fell to pieces, and the character of Washington shone out with renewed splendor. All saw that the hopes of the country were centred in him, who formed the most striking example in history of the one "indispensable man" in the struggle for independence.

**Washington the Country's Hope**




# CHAPTER XXXIV

## *EVENTS OF 1778 (WYOMING AND CHERRY VALLEY)*

[*Authorities:* Dark as was the era that now opens—with a dwindling, poorly fed, and ill-equipped army, and the country despairing and in financial straits—there were glimpses of a brighter day to reanimate the spirit and rekindle the hope of the struggling and heavily beset nation. Washington, like the patriot and hero he was, strove to keep the army in good spirits and bear the burdens cast upon him until the time came when the righteous cause would triumph. Burgoyne's surrender, backed by American diplomacy at the French Court, did much to put the young nation again in heart, for at this juncture Lafayette, with other foreign officers, came upon the scene; D'Estaing appeared in American waters with a French fleet, and the French treasury gave substantial aid to Congress in its sore financial need. The authorities for the season's campaigns, in addition to those previously cited, are the Lives of Lafayette, Von Steuben, and the Mohawk chief, Joseph Brant (W. L. Stone's), and Headley's "Washington and his Generals." For an account of the Wyoming massacre, see Peck's "Wyoming, its History, and Incidents;" and, if allowance be made for poetic license and exaggeration, see also the poet Campbell's "Gertrude of Wyoming."]

Old South Church.

IT is meet that mention should be made of a number of educated foreign officers who came to the United States and voluntarily gave their services in our struggle for independence. The most prominent of these was the Marquis de Lafayette, a gallant Frenchman, only nineteen years old. He was of a noble family, married and wealthy, with brilliant prospects. Against the objections of his relatives,

**Lafayette**

the protests of the British minister, and the orders of the king, he purchased a small vessel, fitted it out at his own expense, and, eluding the officers, crossed the Atlantic to America. Reaching Charleston, he hastened to Philadelphia and asked permission to serve without pay. A few days later, he made the acquaintance of Washington, and

WASHINGTON AND LAFAYETTE IN CONSULTATION.

a tender friendship was formed between them which lasted through life. Lafayette's valor won for him a commission as major-general before he was twenty-one. He fought valiantly at Brandywine, where he was wounded, but was active through the remainder of the war.

**Other Foreign Patriots**

Among other foreign patriots who joined our armies were Baron de Kalb, a highly trained German general; Kosciusko and Pulaski, two Polish officers; and Conway, an Irishman, who, as we have shown, became an enemy of Washington and joined in plots against him. These arrived in this country during the year 1777. One of the most valuable of our friends was Baron Frederick William von Steuben, who presented himself to Washington when the army was at Valley Forge. Steuben was a thorough soldier. He was born in a Prussian fortress, had passed his infancy and childhood among soldiers, and himself became one when only fourteen years old. He took part on many great battlefields of Europe. On arriving here, he was made inspector-general, in place of Conway, and threw his whole soul into the work of training the army for the battles yet to be fought. He was a man of powerful frame, a rigid disciplinarian, with a fierce temper, which sometimes got the better of him. When he could not express himself with enough vigor, because of his slight knowledge of English, he would turn to one of his officers and beg him to swear at the stupid troops for him. But no one was offended, for all appreciated his worth and unselfishness.

**Disparity of the Forces**

It was while Washington was at Valley Forge that Congress ordered that the army should consist of 40,000 foot, in addition to artillery and horse. In May, 1778, our forces, including those on the Hudson and in other places, were hardly 15,000, those with Washington being about 12,000. At that period, the British had 30,000 troops in New York and Philadelphia, and 4,000 in Rhode Island.

The British commissioners sent to this country to treat with Congress brought with them orders for the transfer of the army in Philadelphia to New York, where it was decided to concentrate the forces. General Howe was superseded in the chief command by Sir Henry Clinton. War with France was now impending, and there was fear of a French fleet entering the Delaware and there shutting in the troops. Besides this, England meant to attack some of the French West India Islands, and with that end in view 5,000 troops were detached from the army, of which 3,000 were sent to Florida,

and the remainder to New York. Clinton had not enough transports to take his men to New York by water. He therefore shipped all he could, including a number of Tories, and set out with the others overland through New Jersey. Washington, who was expecting this, entered Philadelphia with his vanguard on the same day (June 18th) that the British rear-guard marched out. The main army of Americans crossed the Delaware, fifteen miles above Trenton, on the 20th and 21st of June, and pursued the British with so much vigor that Clinton had to change his course, and took the road leading to Monmouth Court House and Sandy Hook. Washington, when he ascer-

WASHINGTON AND LEE AT MONMOUTH

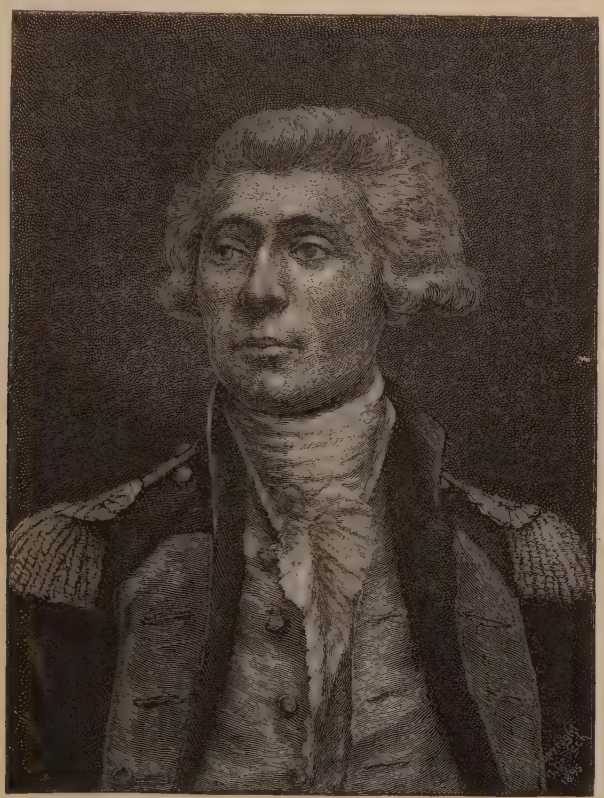
tained this, sent forward Lafayette, followed by Lee, each with a strong force, with orders to attack the enemy whenever the chance presented, while he, a half dozen miles behind, held the main army in readiness to advance to their support.

**Battle at Monmouth Court House**

The heat in those midsummer days was frightful, many of the men in each army being overcome by it. On the 28th, Clinton was encamped at Monmouth Court House, with his baggage train in front, and his most effective troops in the rear. Washington favored attacking the enemy while on the march, but Lee and several of the officers opposed this. Lee had five thousand men under him, exclusive of Dickinson's New Jersey militia and Morgan's riflemen, who were ordered to threaten the right flank of the British. The two armies were five miles apart. When Washington requested Lee to offer some plan of action, Lee replied that he must be governed

by circumstances, but he meanwhile edged a little closer to the enemy with a few hundred men.

At daylight, Clinton began his march towards New York. Knyphausen, the Hessian leader, had charge of the baggage-train and its convoy, and Clinton with his best troops was to follow at eight o'clock. Washington ordered Lee to attack at once, unless impera-



GILBERT MOTTIER, MARQUIS DE LAFAYETTE

tive reasons prevented, and Washington immediately moved forward to his support. Lafayette was equally ardent, but being the junior, yielded the command to Lee, who rebuffed him when he proffered advice. Dickinson's militia made the attack a little before eight o'clock. Believing that he was confronted by the British army, he sent for reinforcements, but the troops in front formed a small flanking-party only, which fell back. The reports to Lee were con-

fusing, and it was not known until an hour had elapsed that the enemy were retreating towards Middletown, when the chance of striking their left flank was thereby lost. Colonel Butler next drove some of the British cavalry through the village, after which he took up position on a slight elevation and awaited the other brigades. He was charged by the British light dragoons, who were, however, repulsed. Affairs now looked critical, when Lee ordered Wayne to

"MOLLY PITCHER" AT MONMOUTH

march to the right and capture the British rear-guard. The other officers, who had received no orders at all, mistook this movement for a retreat, for the enemy were threatening their communication with Wayne. They also fell back and had left their positions before a command reached them from Lee to stand fast. The whole division was in full retreat, observing which the enemy turned about to attack them. Lee watched the Americans until they had crossed a ravine, when he set out to follow them.

**General Lee's Incompetency**

MOLLY PITCHER AT THE BATTLE OF MONMOUTH.

At this moment, Lee came face to face with Washington, who was in a terrible rage. Reining up his horse, he demanded in a voice of thunder what he meant by his action. Lee attempted some excuse, offering to take charge of the troops and lead them again to the attack, but Washington closed his mouth by commanding him to go to the rear. He obeyed, humiliated, angry, and resentful. Lee was afterwards brought to trial by court-martial and suspended from all command for one year. He addressed so insolent a letter to Congress that he was dismissed from the service.* Lee being out of the way, the battle began. The fighting was furious, many of the soldiers succumbing to the intolerable heat and dust. Lieutenant Colonel Monckton, of the Royal Grenadiers, was killed, his body falling into the hands of the Americans. Fortune wavered for a time, but when the fighting ceased, at five o'clock in the afternoon, the advantage was clearly with the Americans. Washington now impatiently awaited the breaking of day to complete his victory, but during the night Clinton stole away, and, reaching Sandy Hook, found Howe's fleet awaiting him. The troops arrived in New York on the 5th of July, while Washington, marching to the Hudson, crossed at King's Ferry and took up position near his old camp at White Plains.

**Victory of the Americans**

The battle of Monmouth had some striking features. In the first place, it was the only battle of the Revolution in which every one of the thirteen colonies had representatives among the patriot forces. One of the British grenadiers killed was the tallest man in the army. He was known as the "High Sergeant," and well deserved the name, for his stature was seven feet four inches. The name of "Molly Pitcher" is inseparably connected with the battle of Monmouth, and the scene which made her immortal is shown in bas-relief on the monument since erected on the battle-field. Molly, who was a woman of powerful physique, was engaged in carrying water from a spring for her husband, who was a cannoneer. The thirst of the soldiers was torturing, for the thermometer stood at 96° in the shade, and the patriotic woman was kept busy. While thus em-

**"Molly Pitcher"**

* That Lee was a traitor to the cause which he pretended to support has been proved beyond question. Some years since, George H. Moore, LL.D., of the city of New York, secured possession of the letter written by Lee while he was a prisoner, and addressed to General Howe. It was penned March 29, 1777, and the offer of his services to the British commander was made in unmistakable terms. That they were not accepted was probably because Howe rated them at their true value.

COPYRIGHT 1898.

FROM THE ORIGINAL DRAWING BY J. STEEPLE DAVIS

THE WYOMING MASSACRE

ployed, she saw her husband fall. She ran to his help, but he was dead when she reached his side. At that moment, an officer ordered the gun to be removed because he could spare no one to serve it. Molly asked that she might be allowed to take her dead husband's place. The officer assented, and she handled the gun with much skill and courage throughout the battle. She was presented to Washington after the victory, and he not only complimented her, but made her a lieutenant, while Congress granted her half-pay for life.

In the city of Carlisle, Pa., is a plain stone monument, mounted on a pedestal, bearing this inscription:

MOLLIE MCCAULEY.
Renowned in History as Mollie Pitcher,
The Heroine of Monmouth.
Died January, 1833, aged 79 years.
Erected by the Citizens of Cumberland Co.,
July 4, 1876.

**Arrival of the French Fleet**

D'Estaing arrived in the Delaware with a French fleet on the 8th of July, 1778. Howe's fleet lay off Sandy Hook ready to co-operate with the army in New York. D'Estaing sailed thither to attack it, but the enemy's vessels were all in Raritan Bay, where the heavy French ships could not follow them, because the water was too shallow at the bar above Sandy Hook. Washington had sent Sullivan to drive out the British force from Newport, and he asked D'Estaing to help in the enterprise with thirty-five hundred land troops. D'Estaing ran past the batteries near the entrance to Narragansett Bay, August 8th. Sullivan's army had been increased to ten thousand men by the addition of New England troops, and arrangements were made for the landing of the French forces on the 10th; but, on the day before, Sullivan discovered that the British outposts at the northern end of the island had been abandoned, and he crossed over from Tiverton. At this juncture, Howe's fleet appeared off Newport, and D'Estaing sailed out to attack it. A violent storm, however, came up and scattered both fleets. D'Estaing sailed to Boston for repairs, while Howe returned to New York.

D'Estaing then came back to Newport. He had promised to land his troops after the engagement at sea to help Sullivan in his attack. Greene and Lafayette, who each commanded a division, visited him

on his flag-ship and urged him to keep his promise, but he refused and sailed away again. Finding themselves deserted by their French allies, the New England troops returned home, and Sullivan was left with hardly six thousand men. Nevertheless, he at once attacked the enemy. Sharp fighting followed, and in one case an American regiment composed of negroes (who had been promised their freedom as a reward) repelled three fierce charges of the Hessians. The following day word reached Sullivan from Washington that Clinton was hurrying to that point with five thousand reinforcements and ordering him to retreat at once. Contrary winds so delayed the English vessels that the American army got safely away.

**French Cowardice**

Howe now sailed for Boston and challenged D'Estaing to come out and fight him. The Frenchman declined, on the plea that his vessels were not fully repaired. When nothing remained to be done, D'Estaing sailed for the West Indies, leaving the Americans to do their own fighting. Previous to this, the anger against the Frenchmen, because of their cowardice, was too strong to be repressed. Sullivan and Greene denounced their breach of faith, and the French officers were insulted on the streets of Boston. A brawl resulted one day in which one of the French officers was killed. While gratitude is due to France for her assistance to us in those trying days, it is not the less a fact that her troops gave us no help until the Yorktown campaign. Whenever they were needed, duty called them, so they said, to the West Indies, where there were colonies to defend against England. Nevertheless, France furnished us liberally with money and supplies.

**The Wyoming Valley**

The Wyoming Valley is one of the most beautiful regions in Pennsylvania, lying between romantic mountain ranges, and watered by the Susquehanna, which winds through it. Count Zinzendorf, the devoted Moravian missionary, was the first visitor to the region, and he spent years laboring for the conversion of the Indians. The first name applied to the place was Westmoreland County, and it was claimed as a part of Connecticut under the grant of Charles II. About forty settlers from Connecticut made their homes in Wyoming, some twenty years before the breaking out of the Revolution. They prospered and increased in numbers, but were alarmed when they learned of the alliance between the British and the Indians. Most of the able-bodied men were absent in the Continental army, and the settlers repeatedly asked Congress to send soldiers to help in

repelling the attack that they knew would soon be made upon them.

John Butler and his son Walter were prominent Tory leaders in northern and western New York and were as merciless as the most ferocious of the Indians. The elder Butler, who was a colonel in the British service, formed a plan for the invasion of Wyoming, whose beauty and helplessness appealed to his brutal instincts. He was visited by Tories from that section, who showed him that the raid not only would yield much plunder but would be attended with little danger to himself. Calling a number of Tories and a large force of Seneca warriors about him, he set out in the latter part of June on his errand of devastation and death. Colonel Zebulon Butler, a cousin of the Tory leader, happened to be in Wyoming, and assumed command of the old men, boys, and a few soldiers with which to defend their homes against the invasion. They took refuge in the structure known as "Forty Fort," where the frightened women and children gathered and prayerfully awaited the issue of battle. Before the arrival of the enemy, whiskey was distributed among the defenders. In those days, as in still earlier Colonial times, drinking was more common than it is now, and the proceeding therefore was a customary one, but the sad fact has been established that some of the patriots drank so much that they were visibly affected at the very time when they needed full command of their faculties.

**Col. John Butler's Expedition against Wyoming**

The demand of the Tory Butler for the surrender of the fort was refused. Colonel Zebulon Butler was in favor of acting on the defensive, but the others clamored to be led against the invaders in the open plain, where the patriots would have to fight a foe three times as numerous as themselves, and with every advantage of position. Colonel Butler was overruled, and, much against his judgment, consented that the motley forces should march out and give the invaders battle. He placed himself at their head, declaring that he would go as far as any of them. The fight was well maintained for a time, and the defenders were encouraged by a fair prospect of victory; but at the critical moment they were thrown into confusion by a mistaken order, and a sudden charge by the Indians caused a panic. This was the beginning of the cruel massacre which has made the name of Wyoming historic. Colonel Zebulon Butler found it impossible to rally his men, of whom four-fifths were cut down while fleeing from their foes. The women and children, seeing the dread-

**The Massacre**

ful disaster that had overtaken their defenders, fled to the woods and mountains, while others flocked to the post known as Fort Wyoming. This was held by Colonel Denison, who, under the pledge of Colonel John Butler that none of the people should be harmed, surrendered. A large number of the garrison and scores of women and children were tomahawked.

**The "Shades of Death"**

Many who knew what the result of submission would be, preferred to face any peril rather than trust themselves to the mercy of either the Tories or the Indians. Plunging into the woods, they hurried towards the settlements on the upper Delaware. Some succeeded in reaching Stroudsburg and other points, but having had no time to make preparation for flight, many perished in the solitudes of Pocono, while others died from hunger, insomuch that the wild region has ever since been known by the gruesome designation of the "Shades of Death."

Deeds too frightful for description were enacted among those that were left behind. During those hot July days and nights the air was heavy with the smoke of burning buildings, which were plundered and fired by the invaders. Men, women, and children were shot down and tortured, the most fiendish passions finding full indulgence, until, it may be said, they exhausted themselves. Hundreds of people were put to death before the dreadful work came to an end.

**Strange Escapes**

It may be doubted whether any episode in the history of our country was ever marked by a greater number of extraordinary escapes than was the case in the massacre of Wyoming. One soldier, overcome by liquor, tumbled down in a wheat-field and fell asleep. He was roused by the shouting of a fugitive, who in fleeing from his Indian pursuers, who were almost upon him, called to the drunken man to fire at them. The soldier mumbled brokenly, wobbled his gun about for a moment, and, without taking any aim, pulled the trigger. The bullet killed the foremost warrior and caused the others to turn and run, under the belief that a party of whites were lying in wait to ambush them. Another fugitive, after hastening for hours through the woods until worn out, knew from the sounds he heard behind him that the Indians were gaining and would soon overtake him. Looking about for some place to hide in, he found a hollow log, into which he forced his way. He had hardly done so, when a spider began spinning its web across the mouth of the log, and was thus at work on its gossamer fabric, when his two Indian

pursuers sat down on the fallen tree. The fugitive heard their voices and the sound of the bullets rattling in their pouches. By and by, it occurred to one of them that the white man whom they were seeking might be hiding in the log. The warrior went to the end of it, stooped down and peeped in, but the spider's web satisfied him that no one had passed inside, and he did not investigate fur-

SAVED BY A SPIDER'S WEB

ther. After the two had been gone for some time, the scared fugitive crept out of his hiding-place, and after much suffering and privation reached his friends in New York State.

"Queen Esther"

Again, sixteen captives were ranged around a large flat stone, while a fury, in the person of "Queen Esther," as she was called, began braining them with a death-maul. Two young men suddenly

leaped to their feet and dashed off at the top of their speed, pursued by several warriors, who, however, did not fire, because they wished to make them prisoners that they might undergo the death meted out to the others. One of the young men tripped in a running vine and rolled down the river bank under the heavy branches of a fallen tree. He lay still and his pursuers passed on without suspecting his hiding-place. Later on, he stole out, and in the darkness made his way to Wilkesbarre. His friend leaped into the river, and, though repeatedly fired upon, managed by diving and desperate swimming to reach the other shore, where he caught and mounted a wandering horse and escaped without any serious wounds. One of the poor fugitives hiding on Monocacy Island was discovered by a Tory, who proved to be his own brother, and who, heedless of his prayers for mercy, put him to death. Some time after the massacre, little Frances Slocum, about six years old, was stolen by Indians and carried off. Her mother searched for her for twenty years, and died without having obtained the first clue of her lost child. Her brothers, who had become prosperous and wealthy men, continued the search for many years without success, and then, convinced that their sister was dead, gave up the search. Yet she was alive all these years, and many a time was within reach of her friends, from whom she carefully hid herself, for she had become an Indian in all but blood. Sixty years after Frances Slocum was stolen by the Indians, she was found by her brothers, between whom and herself affectionate relations were established and lasted till her death.

**Frances Slocum**

Who would suppose that any defenders of the atrocities of the Indians could be found among enlightened people? Yet the British secretary for the colonies praised the savages for their bravery and humanity, and encouraged them to continue their raids at other points on the frontier. In the appropriations for the support of the army was one for "scalping-knives." What a reproach to a civilized nation!

**British Praise of Indian Atrocities**

Other sections beside Wyoming suffered from the ferocity alike of the Tories and the Indians. Urged by the British agents, who stopped at no means of harrying the patriots, the miscreants struck whenever the opportunity offered. Sir William Johnson was the British superintendent of Indian affairs in New York, and possessed great influence over the powerful league of the Six Nations. Through his exertions most of the tribes made common cause

against the patriots, though a number refused to take part, and some even showed a friendly disposition to the Americans. Brant, the Mohawk chieftain, was a relative by blood of Johnson, and gave him great aid in his evil work. Spies and scouts were sent out, and the reports they brought back led to numerous raiding expeditions among the whites on the frontier. Brant organized parties of his warriors on the upper waters of the Susquehanna, whose object was to secure all the white scalps possible. These parties threaded their way through the gloomy forests, with the silence of shadows, and descended like wolves upon the exposed settlements. Often the slumbering pioneer was awakened in the depth of night by the ringing war-whoop and the crack of the red men's rifles. His defence, however brave, was in vain, and he was shot down on the threshold while fighting for his family, who suffered the same fate or were carried off captives to undergo torture and a lingering death. Often the darkness was lit up by the glare of burning dwellings, and the rescue party, hastening to the scene, arrived too late to save the hapless ones, who dreaded the dusky warriors no more than the Tories, many of whom had formerly been neighbors and had eaten at their tables. Even before the fearful visitation of Wyoming Valley, the settlement of Springfield, at the head of Otsego Lake, was laid in ashes. In the following month, Cobleskill was attacked by Brant, who slew most of the troops stationed there and burned the houses. Schoharie County wa skept in a continual state of alarm by these raids.

JOSEPH BRANT

In the month of November, during a driving storm of snow and sleet, a force of Tories, led by Walter N. Butler, and of Indians under Brant, descended upon Cherry Valley, which was unprepared for defence. In this instance, Butler showed himself lacking in every trait of manliness, and equally devoid of mercy. Brant was his superior in those respects, and repeatedly appealed to him to treat the white people with consideration; but Butler turned a deaf ear to his protests. Sixteen soldiers belonging to the weak garrison were killed and twice as many women and children were put to

**The Descent upon Cherry Valley**

death. Then Butler gathered forty miserable men, women, and children as captives. A bitterly cold storm was still raging, and the prisoners were only half-clothed. Their sufferings were beyond description, for when a halt was made, they had no shelter, and could only huddle together on the wet, cold ground, so woe-begone and distressed that death would have been a welcome relief.

**Naval Operations**

The 32-gun frigate *Randolph* was the first of the vessels ordered by Congress, in 1775, to get to sea. She left Philadelphia in February, 1777, with general cruising orders. Some weeks later she put into Charleston with six prizes. She was blockaded in that port until the following year, when she sailed with several State ships of South Carolina. On March 7th, while eastward of the Barbadoes, the 64-gun ship *Yarmouth* was sighted. By order of Captain Nicholas Biddle, of the *Randolph*, the weaker consorts made all sail, while he stayed to fight the formidable antagonist. The battle had continued an hour, when a shot entered the *Randolph's* magazine and she blew up, sinking in a few seconds. Out of her three hundred and fifteen men, only four escaped, and they, after floating about on some spars for five days, having only rain-water to quench their thirst, which they imbibed by means of a saturated blanket, were picked up by the *Yarmouth*.

**Paul Jones**

Paul Jones towers head and shoulders above all the other naval heroes of the Revolution. In command of the 18-gun ship *Ranger*, he sailed from Portsmouth, N. H., on November 1, 1777. He secured a number of prizes, performed many heroic deeds, and to strike a decisive blow at the British resolved to set fire to the shipping in Whitehaven, a city of fifty thousand inhabitants, in Cumberland, and thus "put an end, by one good fire in England of shipping, to all burnings in America." These words are quoted from Captain Jones' memorial to Congress.

Late on the night of April 22d, two boats, containing thirty men between them, left the *Ranger*, Jones commanding one and Lieutenant Wallingford the other. There were streakings of light in the east, as the boats parted company at the outer pier of the harbor. When Lieutenant Wallingford reached land, his candle was burned out, and he gave up the attempt he had in view. Meanwhile, a weak fort on the south side of the harbor was captured by Jones, the guns spiked, and the garrison made prisoners. Jones directed a squad of

men to set fire to the shipping, while he and the others of the attacking expedition ran to a second fort, a quarter of a mile away, where the guns were also spiked. Hurrying back, he was incensed to find that his orders to set fire to the shipping had been disobeyed. The excuse offered was that the candles had gone out.

The situation was exasperating, but Jones was not the man to be balked in this manner. The sun was above the horizon and the alarm had been spread, it is believed, by one of his own men, who deserted the boats after the landing was made. Jones himself ran into the houses at hand, got a light, and began the work of destruction by boarding a large vessel, starting a fire in her hold, and throwing a barrel of tar over the flames, which burned furiously. Fully one hundred and fifty other vessels inclosed this ship, some of them of large size, and it looked for a time as if all were doomed. Despite the great peril of the Americans, they embarked with coolness at the end of the pier, while Jones, facing about, held his pistol levelled at the crowd gathered at the other end of the wharf, and kept them at bay until the ship that had been fired was ablaze. Then he quietly stepped down into the boat and was rowed to the *Ranger*. The townspeople then rushed to the endangered shipping, and, by dint of vigorous work, succeeded in preventing the spread of the flames. The withdrawing boats would have been fired upon, with the result probably of many casualties, had not the guns been spiked. As a consequence not a man in them was injured.

**Jones' Descent upon Whitehaven**

Jones had another purpose in his descent upon this part of the coast. He intended to capture the Earl of Selkirk, a Scottish nobleman, whose country-seat was on the Isle of St. Mary, at the mouth of the Dee, and hold him as a hostage for the better treatment of the Americans in English prisons. The house was secretly surrounded at night, but, luckily for the earl, he was absent. The men, without the knowledge of Jones, brought away several hundred dollars' worth of silver plate, all of which was returned by the captain with a letter of apology for the misconduct of his crew.

**Failure of the Attack**

Even so daring a man as Paul Jones saw that it would not do for him to remain much longer in that neighborhood, for the country was fully aroused and cruisers from various quarters were hastening to attack the *Ranger*. On April 24th, therefore, he crossed over to Carrickfergus, in the hope that the *Drake*, an English sloop-of-war at anchor there, would fight him. The Englishman accepted the battle, and the

engagement took place in mid-channel, "in sight of three kingdoms." The *Drake* had a crew of one hundred and sixty, who at the end of an hour struck their flag to the *Ranger*, whese men numbered only one hundred and twenty-three. A month after starting upon this cruise, Jones returned to France, arriving there May 8th, having accomplished more than had hitherto been done in the dauntless annals of American seamanship.

Despite the many successes of the American navy, the country lost a great many cruisers. When the year 1778 closed, we had only fourteen vessels of war, with a total of three hundred and twenty-two guns. Against this insignificant force was to be set the one hundred and eighty ships of England, of which eighty-nine, with a total of 2,576 guns, were stationed in American waters.

**Financial Distress of the States**

Congress had returned to Philadelphia in July, after its evacuation by the British, and devoted a portion of each week to financial matters. Fifteen million dollars in bills of credit were issued in September, but their value depreciated, so that the only resource seemed to be an appeal to France, which had shown so friendly an interest in the struggle of the colonies for independence. A humiliating plea was made to the king of that country, and an agent was sent to the Netherlands to negotiate a loan at The Hague. The financial distress of the States awakened the belief in England that the war could be pushed to a speedy conclusion. Congress gave up its hopeless task of conquering Canada, and decided that Washington should act on the defensive, except in making retaliatory expeditions against the Tories and Indians.

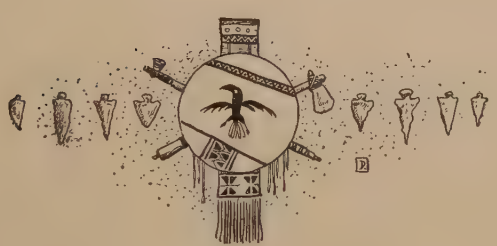
It will be observed that the war which had opened in Massachusetts was steadily drifting southward. Great campaigns had been fought in what are known as the Middle States, which continued to be the theatre of operations for several years. In the extreme South, matters were in a deplorable condition. Tories were numerous, and in many places civil war reigned. The patriots were so few in numbers that the enemy prepared a careful campaign for the capture of Savannah and the conquest of Georgia. Five thousand additional troops were to be landed at Charleston, and a strong force of Indians was to be brought from Florida and Alabama to assail the frontier settlements, while the commandant at Detroit was to send others to join them from the Northwest.

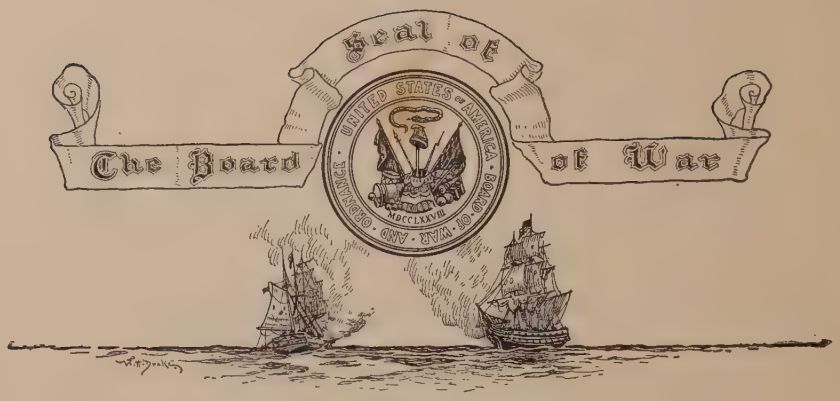
**The War in the South**

General Prevost, who was in command of a mixed force of regulars, Tories, and Indians in East Florida, sent two expeditions in the autumn of the year from St. Augustine, Florida. They committed many outrages and brought away an enormous amount of plunder. In the latter part of November, Clinton despatched Lieutenant-Colonel Campbell, with two thousand troops, to invade Georgia. The troops went by the sea and landed at Savannah, on the morning of December 29th. The patriot general, Robert Howe, of North Carolina, with less than a thousand dispirited men hurried up from Sunbury, and three miles below Savannah, at Brewton's Hill, fought a battle with a much superior force and was badly defeated. In the flight through rice-fields and streams, a hundred patriots were drowned and four hundred made prisoners. The others who succeeded in escaping took refuge in South Carolina, while the enemy occupied Savannah.

**Close of the Campaign**

The lack of money and credit compelled the closing of the campaign in the autumn of 1778. The relative position of the invaders and patriots was much the same as at the close of 1776. The headquarters of the British were in New York, and those of Washington in New Jersey. The patriots, however, had learned much in the science of war; they were still strong and ardent in their resolution to be free, and, fortunately, they at length gained the help of one of the most powerful nations of Europe.






# CHAPTER XXXV

## *EVENTS OF 1779 (ON LAND AND SEA)*

[*Authorities:* The policy of the British Government and the war movements of the royal commanders in America during 1779 were a perplexity to Washington. Attention had been turned by the British to the South, where it was supposed the monarchical feeling was still strong, and Tory influence was active. Georgia was overrun by the royal troops, while from New York, also in British hands, Sir Henry Clinton * kept an eye on weak points in the North, in the hope of striking a blow that might wipe out the memory of the surrender at Saratoga. The Hudson was specially menaced, yet here General Wayne ("Mad Anthony," as he was called) was able to retake Stony Point, "one of the most brilliant achievements of the war," as Washington Irving remarks. General Sullivan was able also to carry terror into the Indian cantonments in the Genessee Valley and so checkmate Tory designs, in concert with their savage allies. Roger Clarke's successes, moreover, in the Illinois country, and Evan Selby's expedition against the Chickamaugas had their good effects in repressing Indian raids and violence. On the other hand, the country suffered severely from the stress of the situation generally, and particularly from the marauding expeditions of the British both up the Chesapeake and along the coast of Connecticut. At sea, the year, however, brought its triumphs in the daring heroism of Paul Jones,† whose harrying of the British coasts and destruction of English shipping were happy offsets to American embarrassments and losses on land. The authorities for the period, besides the general histories already mentioned, are the lives of Paul Jones and Maclay's "History of the United States Navy."]

**General Lincoln in the South**

GENERAL BENJAMIN LINCOLN, of Massachusetts, had been appointed to the chief command of the patriot troops in the South, and arrived in South Carolina early in January, 1779. He made his headquarters at Purysburg, twenty-five miles north of Savannah, where he set to work to form an army to resist the British invasion. He had poor material to draw from, consisting of raw recruits, a few Con-

* Major-General Sir Henry Clinton, K.B. [1738–1795], who figures prominently in

† Paul Jones [1748–1792], familiarly known as Commodore Paul Jones, though his

tinental regiments, and the remnants of the defeated troops of Howe.

Campbell was in high spirits over his capture of Savannah, and pushed his conquest of the region with great vigor. He promised to protect all the inhabitants on condition that the able-bodied men among them should rally to his support, and the prisoners who refused this were thrust into filthy prison-ships, where many died of disease. His bitter persecution, however, only made the patriots here, as elsewhere, more determined in their struggle for independence. In August, Campbell, with a force of two thousand men, advanced up the Georgia side of the Savannah River to Augusta, to help the Tories, open communication with the Creek Indians in the

**Campbell's Cruelties**

---

the events of the Revolutionary War as commander-in-chief of the British forces in America, was the son of Admiral George Clinton, Governor of Newfoundland, and from 1743 to 1753 Governor of New York. At an early age, he served in the New York militia, and in 1751 became a lieutenant in the Coldstream Guards, and later colonel in the Grenadier Guards. With the latter corps he first saw active service in Hanover during the Seven Years' War. In 1775, he came again to America, with Generals Howe and Burgoyne, and took part in the battle of Bunker Hill. In the following year he was appointed second in command to Sir William Howe, whom he afterwards succeeded, and was present at the battle of Long Island and the capture of New York. When he attained to full command of the king's forces in America, he made New York his headquarters, and thence sent our predatory expeditions in various directions, chiefly on the New England and Southern coasts. In May, 1781, Clinton resigned in favor of Sir Guy Carleton and returned to England, where he published, in reply to Cornwallis' strictures, a "Narrative," reciting his connection with affairs in America. Subsequently he entered Parliament, but, on being appointed Governor of Gibraltar, he proceeded thither, and, about eighteen months afterwards (December, 1795), died at that post.

**Sir Henry Clinton**

---

family name was Paul, was a Scottish seaman, early engaged in trade with America, and at one time mate of a slave-ship in the West Indies. In 1773, he appears to have settled in Virginia, where he had inherited property, and there took the name of Jones. Two years later, on the breaking out of the Revolutionary War, he became a lieutenant in the United States Navy, on board the *Alfred*, and subsequently was appointed her commander. In the North Atlantic, and especially in Acadian and New England waters, Jones carried terror to many a British merchant craft, bringing several prizes into American ports. Subsequently, Congress gave him the command successively of the *Ranger* and the *Bonhomme Richard*, in both of which he conducted audacious expeditions in British seas, carrying his conquests into French ports, and made several daring descents on the coasts of both England and Scotland. In 1779, his command extended over a small squadron of ships, which did much havoc among vessels flying the British flag, capturing or destroying as many as twenty-six vessels. His most signal conquest was the one narrated in the text, the sanguinary combat with the *Serapis* and her consort, off Scarborough. This achievement practically ended his career in the United States service, for after the war he entered the Russian navy as an admiral and served against the Turks in the Black Sea. Falling into disfavor at the Russian court, he was shortly afterwards relieved of his command, whereupon he retired to Paris on a pension, where he died in 1792.

**John Paul Jones**

West, and crush all patriots who dared to resist him. A band of Tories, while on the way to join the royal troops, devastated a portion of the South Carolina border. The patriots rallied under Colonel Andrew Pickens, and chasing them across the Savannah, killed a hundred of them. A few days later, Pickens defeated them again on Kettle Creek, killing seventy of the Tories, including Boyd, the commander, and taking seventy-five prisoners. Of the latter, five were hanged on a charge of treason. Francis Marion, the "Swamp Fox" of the Carolinas, also struck many effective blows, for he and his men were familiar with the country, moved swiftly and secretly, appearing in the most unexpected places, and inspiring terror by their dispatch and daring. Lincoln was encouraged by the success of Pickens, and gathered three thousand men in camp. He sent General Ashe, with two thousand troops and several pieces of cannon, to drive Campbell from Augusta, and to keep the invaders in the low and unhealthy regions along the coast. Crossing the Savannah near Augusta, Ashe pursued Campbell towards the sea as far as Brier Creek, forty miles distant, where he went into camp, with his flanks protected by swamps. Prevost, who was marching with a strong force to the help of Campbell, discovered Ashe, and by a wide detour gained his rear. Then, March 3, 1779, he made an unexpected attack on the patriots, who fled in every direction, after suffering severe loss. So complete was the overthrow that only a few hundreds rejoined Lincoln. Prevost now declared the re-establishment of royal authority in Georgia, which became virtually a reconquered province of the crown.

**The Conquest of Georgia**

Meanwhile, the British Major Gardiner had been sent from Savannah to take possession of Port Royal Island, preparatory to a march upon Charleston; but early in February he was defeated with severe loss by General Moultrie, after which Moultrie with his men joined Lincoln at Purysburg. On the 23d of April, Lincoln marched up the Savannah with the main body of his army, but Prevost had dispatched a detachment of his troops into South Carolina to check the invasion. He had with him twenty-five hundred soldiers, besides a considerable body of Indians. Moultrie, who was at Black Swamp with about one-third as many men, made a politic retreat, burning the bridges behind him. After this many of his troops deserted, and the situation in South Carolina thus became extremely critical.

**Critical Situation in South Carolina**

Emboldened by the position of affairs, Prevost pushed into South Carolina, with the intention of capturing Charleston. The city made every preparation to resist the attack, and Prevost decided that the chances of success were too slight to warrant the risk, so he withdrew, and the hot weather prevented any important movements until autumn. In September, it was determined to make an attempt to recapture Savannah, and D'Estaing, who returned from the West Indies, agreed to help. He appeared at the mouth of the river with twenty-two sail of the line, a number of small vessels, and six thou-

CAPTURE OF STONY POINT

sand troops, and demanded the surrender of the city. Prevost asked for a suspension of hostilities, and unfortunately it was conceded. The delay granted gave Prevost time to complete his already strong defences, to mount his guns, and to receive a reinforcement of eight hundred men from Port Royal. He now replied to D'Estaing that he would defend the place to the last. Reinforcements had also, meanwhile, reached D'Estaing, consisting of the troops of Lincoln, Colonel McIntosh, and Count Pulaski. The bombardment which ensued was continued for several days, but produced so little effect that the attempt was made to carry the works by storm. The assaulting troops consisted of three thousand French and fifteen hundred

**Failure to recapture Savannah**

PERIOD III
ENGLAND AND FRANCE IN AMERICA
1758 TO 1783

Americans, who fought with splendid bravery. D'Estaing led his own men, and displayed the highest heroism, being twice wounded. Count Pulaski was mortally hurt, and the brave Sergeant Jasper, of Fort Sullivan fame, fell. The battle raged for over an hour, when the assailants were driven back, with the loss of more than a thousand killed and wounded, while the British had less than fifty killed. The siege was finally abandoned, the Americans recrossing the Savannah and returning to Charleston, while the French fleet again sailed to the West Indies. The failure of this enterprise cast a gloom over the Union, especially in the South.

**The Campaign in the North**

In the North, the campaign made little progress. Clinton sent out marauding excursions, which either plundered or burned Norwalk, Fairfield, and New Haven. The brutal Tryon was the leader in the latter expedition, and declared that he had shown undeserved mercy to the rebels in allowing a single house to remain standing on the New England coast. General Putnam was at Horse Neck when Tryon arrived in the neighborhood. He hurriedly gathered a few militia, greatly annoyed the British, and, when compelled to flee, dashed his horse down a precipice, whither the British dragoons dared not follow.

**Capture of Stony Point**

General Wayne, often called "Mad Anthony" because of his reckless daring, performed one of the most brilliant exploits of the war in the summer of 1779. He learned the countersign at Stony Point from a negro, who was in the habit of selling fruit to the English. In the darkness of a sultry night, the troops followed the negro to the causeway leading over the submerged marsh around the foot of the hill on which the fort stood. The guide gave the countersign to the sentinel, who was seized the next moment and gagged. Passing over the causeway, Wayne and his men reached the base of the hill undetected Then they formed in two divisions, with unloaded muskets and fixed bayonets, and stealthily made their way to the top. They were not discovered until almost in front of the picket, when fire was opened on the Americans. Wayne was at the head of his troops and fell wounded. He asked his men to carry him into the fort that he might die there. Before they could do so, he changed his mind and "decided not to die." Joining in the resistless rush, the patriots swept everything before them. The fort was taken, with the loss to the defenders of six hundred in killed, wounded, and prisoners.

WAYNE AT STONY POINT.

The atrocities of the Indians at Wyoming, Cherry Valley, and other places kept the settlers in a state of constant terror. Resolved to end this woful condition of affairs, General Sullivan was sent into the Indian country with an effective army, against which no successful opposition could well be made. This formidable campaign was against the Iroquois, or Six Nations, all of whom, with the exception of the Oneidas and a few Mohawks, had been guilty of

FIRST NAVAL BATTLE OF THE UNITED STATES

frightful outrages. An opposing force was routed (August 29th) near where Elmira now stands, and then Sullivan completed his work with appalling thoroughness. He left more than forty Indian villages in ashes, and laid waste the harvest fields so ruthlessly that during the severe winter which followed many of the savages died of starvation and disease. A fertile, well-cultivated country was thus, in a single campaign, turned into a desert.

**Punishment of the Iroquois**

One of the most important successes of the war was that of George Rogers Clarke, in the Illinois country, begun the previous year. Clarke, like Washington, was convinced that the many Indian

outrages that had taken place were due to some direct inciting cause. He discovered that the British posts of Detroit, Kaskaskia, and Vincennes furnished the savages with the arms and ammunition with which they devastated the surrounding country. At his request, Governor Patrick Henry, of Virginia, authorized him to move against the Indians of the West. He gathered a company of Virginians from the Holston, with three companies of Kentuckians, and set out for the hostile country. A fort was built on Corn Island, at the Falls of the Ohio, and, landing at the mouth of the Tennessee, they marched across the present State of Illinois to Kaskaskia.

**Clarke's expedition**

By a brilliant dash, the garrison was surprised and disarmed without the loss of a man on either side. Pressing on, Clarke captured Fort Cahokia, a French post, where the French, learning that their country had acknowledged our independence, cheered for America and freedom. Hurrying forward to Vincennes, that post (Fort St. Vincent) surrendered without firing a gun, and the garrison took the oath of allegiance to Virginia. When the British governor, Hamilton, at Detroit, learned of this, he was indignant, and with a strong force recaptured Vincennes in the following December. Two months later, Clarke was there again and compelled the garrison a second time to surrender. Finding proof that Governor Hamilton, who was now a captive, had been active in persuading the Indians to commit their cruelties, Clarke sent him to Virginia in irons. In making this march from Kaskaskia to Vincennes, Clarke and his men had to wade through icy swamps, where for miles the water rose to their waists and even to their shoulders. They cheerfully endured the severest hardships, but nevertheless moved with a celerity and effectiveness that marked their achievements as among the most remarkable in the records of the war. It has been truly claimed that but for this march and conquest by Clarke, the western boundary of the United States, at the close of the Revolution, would have been the Alleghany Mountains instead of the Mississippi River.

**Col. Shelby's Exploit**

A war party of Chickamauga Indians marched against the Carolina frontier, whereupon Colonel Evan Shelby, with a thousand men from the Holston and Wautauga settlements, passed down the Tennessee in boats, in April, 1779, and destroyed the homes of the savages and nearly all their provisions. This blow and that of Clarke severed the bond that had existed between the Northern and Southern Indians, and brought peace to the sorely harried region.

COPYRIGHT 1899.

BATTLE OF LAKE CHAMPLAIN

FROM THE ORIGINAL DRAWING BY WARREN SHEPPARD

## AMERICAN PROWESS ON THE SEA

**A Glorious Theme**

Any narrative of the history of our country would be singularly incomplete without some record of the prowess of American seamen at successive eras in the national annals, and an account of the origin and growth of the now formidable United States Navy. We have no intention of slighting in these pages the achievements of this important branch of the fighting arm of our country. The work it has done has been such as no patriot could fail to feel pride in, besides the substantial advantages it has obtained for the nation as an aggressive as well as a defensive force. Happily, the subject—in the writings of Maclay, Mahan, and other able and well-informed chroniclers of the United States Navy—is now being treated adequately, and with an appreciation of the service that American seamen have rendered at important eras in the national history. Hitherto, it has been the theme of the novelist rather than of the historian; and it has been to Fenimore Cooper that the people have in the main turned for vivid and entertaining narratives of maritime exploits on the high seas by the country's naval defenders. Without doing injustice to maritime romance, as furnished by high-spirited and patriotic writers such as the author of "The Pilot," "The Red Rover," and "The Two Admirals," it is more fitting that what has to be said of the contests at sea between the United States and her enemies should be related with the gravity as well as with the truth of history rather than with the picturesque effects but fictional glowings of romance. The story told as history, however, will lack little of the fascination which novelists have thrown around the subject, for the real is often no less thrilling than the unreal—fact no less marvellous than fiction.

**The Mistress of the Seas**

It seems hardly necessary to say that, at the opening of the Revolution, the colonies had no thought of competing with the large and powerful navy of Great Britain. England was mistress of the ocean, and a contest with her on the sea would have been much like a struggle between a mouse and a lion. And yet this relative situation was not without its advantages to Americans. They had many skilful sailors, and it was easy to build swift-sailing vessels, which, venturing stealthily out from the harbors, were never compelled to go far without descrying some of the shipping of the enemy. A sudden

dash, a daring attack, and the gallant deed was done. On the other hand, the multitude of British frigates and men-of-war had to grope along the coasts or over the waters in their search for the audacious privateers, and were liable to spend weeks in the hunt without success. The patriots, of course, were familiar with their own inlets and numerous secure hiding-places, to which they could flee when pursued. The prospect of securing valuable cargoes and prize-money was ever before the commanders of American cruisers, and, combined with their ardent patriotism, the most powerful incentive that can be imagined was theirs to impel them to the utmost efforts.

The news that two British transports, containing arms and ammunition, had sailed from England for Quebec stirred the Continental Congress to action. If the cargoes of those vessels could be captured, it was obvious that they would be of immense value to the patriot armies, which were sorely in need of supplies. Accordingly, on the 13th of October, 1775, Congress authorized a committee to fit out and arm two swift vessels for the purpose of waylaying and attacking the ships of the enemy. The date named, therefore, may be accepted as marking the birth of the American navy. It was then a weak, puny infant; but it had life, and was destined, in the fulness of time, to become a veritable giant that was to strike Titan blows on all the waters of the globe.

**Birth of the American Navy**

On the 30th of the same month, Congress decided to fit out two more vessels, strongly armed. It must be borne in mind that, at this period, Congress did not believe that a final separation from the mother country was inevitable. This belief was a restraining influence at first. The land and sea forces were ordered to refrain, as far as possible, from open acts of rebellion. The result was other than was anticipated, for the enemy accepted such moderation as timidity. The town of Portland (then known as Falmouth) had, as we have seen, been laid in ashes, and other settlements were attacked with a fury that added much to the growing resentment against England. Awaking to its mistake, Congress, on the 25th of November, authorized the capture of any armed vessel used against the colonies, or any tender or transport employed in carrying munitions of war for either the British army or the navy.

**Action of Congress**

Four days later, the first battle was fought in which a regularly commissioned American war-vessel was engaged. The action was between the Massachusetts State cruiser *Lee* and the British armed

transport *Nancy*. The *Lee* had a commission from General Washington authorizing her to cruise in the vicinity of Boston to intercept supplies for the British. Several other cruisers were commissioned by Washington for the same purpose. After a brisk fight, Captain John Manly, in command of the *Lee*, captured the *Nancy* which had a valuable cargo of war supplies.

**More Decisive Steps**

The slight successes so quickly obtained encouraged Congress to take more decisive steps towards the establishment of a navy. On the 13th of December, the construction of five ships of 32 guns each, five of 28 guns, and three of 24 guns, was ordered, with injunctions that they were to be completed by the following April. Other laws were passed for the purchase and equipment of cruisers. A list of officers was approved in the same month, with Esek Hopkins as commander-in-chief. Hopkins left Philadelphia in January, 1776, in command of a squadron of eight cruisers, of which the *Alfred* was the flagship. He sailed up and down the coast, looking for the British squadron that had inflicted great damage; but, failing to sight it, headed for the town of New Providence, where he knew that considerable military supplies were stored. These were captured with little trouble, and Hopkins carried away a number of leading citizens to be held as hostages for the good treatment of certain prisoners in the hands of the enemy.

**Our First Naval Battle**

On his return, late on the evening of the 6th of April, Captain Hopkins, when off Long Island, became involved in a fierce fight with the enemy. After a few minutes, his ship, the *Cabot*, was disabled, Captain Hopkins and several of his men being badly wounded, and others were killed. The *Alfred*, on which John Paul Jones was first lieutenant, came up and took a hand in the fight, while another American cruiser secured a position off the stranger's lee quarter and opened an effective fire. Finding matters becoming too hot, the enemy made her escape in the darkness. This was the first naval battle in which the United States took part.

The result of Captain Hopkins' cruise was the censure of Congress for having exceeded his instructions by going to New Providence. Furthermore, he had demonstrated that he was lacking in courage, and his name was dropped from the list of officers, early in 1777. Previous to this, on the 23d of March, 1776, Congress issued letters of marque, and all public and private cruisers of the colonies were authorized to capture any armed or unarmed vessel which flew

the British flag. This gave an impetus to privateering, and the exploits of the infant navy were of the most daring and successful nature. Paul Jones gave such proof of his dauntless courage and consummate seamanship that he was made commander of the twelve-gun brig *Providence*. He became a captain in October, 1776, his astonishing exploits keeping pace with his advancement.

The importance of Lake Champlain as the only route for inland communication between Canada and the American colonies roused both sides to early attempts to secure control of its waters. In the autumn of 1776, the American fleet included fifteen vessels, with a total of eighty-eight guns, and eight hundred and eleven men, of whom only about seven hundred were on duty. The fleet was under the command of Benedict Arnold, who declared that a more unfit and worthless lot of seamen could hardly have been brought together. The British squadron, carrying eighty-nine guns, was manned by six hundred and ninety-seven officers and men, who were the flower of the British navy. Nevertheless, Arnold made the best preparations possible for the attack of this vastly superior force. The British employed a large body of Indians to fire upon the Americans from the woods along the shore. When the shots from these redskins became too galling, the Americans would turn one of the cannon in that direction and send the savages skurrying among the trees. This fight took place on the 11th of October and was indecisive; but the British commander determined to renew the attack in the morning with a vigor, it was said, that would destroy every vessel of the American squadron.

**The American Fleet on Lake Champlain**

No one could have shown greater bravery than Arnold, and his example inspired his men, but he saw that it would be folly to continue the battle on the morrow. He, therefore, made an attempt to steal through the enemy's lines at night, with the hope of reaching Crown Point. At daylight the squadron was nine miles distant. Two of the gondolas were so shattered with shot that they were sunk, while the remainder were hastily fitted up and pressed on for Crown Point. The British commander began the pursuit as soon as the flight was discovered. Arnold kept up a running fire as long as possible, and, when all hope was gone, he ran his vessels ashore, destroyed them, and fled with his men to Crown Point. The American loss was eighty killed and wounded, while that of the enemy

**Defeat of the Americans**

was about half that number. The prisoners were almost immediately released on parole at Ticonderoga.

The English authorities of the time admitted that the damage to the West India trade alone amounted, in 1776, to two million dollars, while more than three hundred vessels were captured in that year by the American cruisers.

**Daring of the Privateers**

It was in the order of things that the American privateers which had been so successful in defending their coasts and intercepting the supplies of the enemy, should be tempted into still more daring ventures. So they spread sail and sped across the Atlantic, where, as may be supposed, their arrival caused no little consternation. Some of the exploits of these cruisers are almost incredible. The greater the danger the greater the attraction. The *Lexington*, in September, engaged the *Alert*, and the battle raged for two hours; but the high sea rendered the fire comparatively ineffective. Unfortunately, the Americans were caught unprepared and several broadsides were discharged by firing muskets at the vent of the cannon. When the ammunition was exhausted, the *Lexington* withdrew, but the *Alert*, after some hasty repairs, gave chase, and in four hours overhauled her. For an hour the American had to lie in sullen silence and receive the fire of the enemy. Then, as there was no hope left, she struck her flag. She was taken to Plymouth and the officers and crew were thrown into prison on the charge of treason. They were subjected to the most brutal treatment and often were upon the verge of starvation. In their desperation they began tunneling under the prison, and succeeded in gaining their liberty one dark night and boarded a vessel in London, bound for Dunkirk. Sad to say, they were recognized by a press gang and once more imprisoned. Richard Dale had been master's mate on the *Lexington*. He and his companions remained another full year in captivity, and then one day he walked out when the sun was shining. He was in a British uniform and passed the guards without suspicion on their part, finally reaching home in safety. He doubtless was helped by some English friend, but Dale would never reveal the name of the good Samaritan.

**A Remarkable Escape**

Who would suspect, in studying the accounts of the recent and present experiments in submarine warfare, that the invention was made during the early years of our Revolution, and by one of our own citizens? Such, however, is the fact. In 1777, David Bushnell, of Saybrook, Connecticut, made a submarine boat, which he

called the *American Turtle*. From his description, as given in a letter to Thomas Jefferson, it appears that it was large enough to hold a man, who could navigate the odd craft under water for half an hour without coming to the surface. With it the operator could fasten a magazine, made of two pieces of oak hollowed out, and filled with one hundred and fifty pounds of powder, to the hull of an enemy's frigate. Within this magazine was a little machine which would run any desired length of time under twelve hours, when it unpinned a strong lock and ignited the powder. By that time, of course the *American Turtle* would have returned to shore and be beyond the reach of danger.

**The First Submarine Boat**

Not only was this curious invention constructed, but its merits were put to the proof. In August, 1777, the British frigate *Cerberus*, while cruising through Long Island Sound, on the lookout for Connecticut poultry and beef, anchored off New London. About eleven o'clock at night, a line was discovered trailing astern, and, on hauling it in, "a machine too heavy for one man to haul up was found." A boat was lowered and the machine lifted upon deck. Much puzzled to understand what it was, the people were examining it closely, when it exploded, killing three men and blowing one overboard. In his report of the occurrence, the British officer wrote angrily of "the mode these villains must have taken," adding that "the ingenuity of these people is singular in their secret modes of mischief."

**Peril of Lafayette**

Lafayette, whose good service in the American struggle will never be forgotten, decided to visit his native land, to aid our commissioners at the French court. The 32-gun frigate *Alliance* was set apart for that purpose, and placed under the command of Capt. Pierre Landais, one of his countrymen. It was hard to fill out her complement of sailors, for seamen were then few, andt here was a general dislike to serving under a foreign officer. To meet the difficulty, Massachusetts offered liberty to a number of English seamen, who had been cast ashore from the wreck of the *Somerset*. The offer was gladly accepted, and the *Alliance*, which sailed from Boston, January 11, 1779, took with her a motley crew of Englishmen, a few French sailors, and a number of American volunteers.

There was misgiving among the friends of Lafayette when they bade him good-by, for the English Parliament had during the conflict offered a liberal bounty to any of her sailors who should bring

PERIOD III
ENGLAND AND FRANCE IN AMERICA 1758 TO 1783

an American vessel into port. This was known to the seventy or eighty English seamen, who speedily formed a plot for the capture of the vessel. They were so much more numerous than the others, that they had good reason to believe they would succeed. The plot was made known to one of the sailors supposed to be an Irishman, because he spoke with a Celtic brogue. In truth, however, he was an American, who had been in Ireland long enough to acquire a peculiarity of accent. He pretended to favor the scheme, and thus learned the particulars. An hour before the time for striking the blow, he revealed the plot to the officer of the deck, naming also those who would remain faithful and stand by the flag. Prompt measures were taken and the mutineers were overawed and they begged for mercy. About half of them were put in irons and placed in prison on the arrival at Brest, but the kind-hearted Lafayette interceded and they were afterwards exchanged.

**A Friend in Need**

Not always, however, was good fortune on the side of the Americans. The English had erected a naval station near the mouth of the Penobscot, which became so great an annoyance that Massachusetts resolved to dislodge the enemy, without asking assistance from the government. With this view, fifteen hundred militia, under Gen. Solomon Lovell, were embarked in thirteen privateers and transports, which were accompanied by the 32-gun frigate *Warren*, the 14-gun brig *Diligent*, now flying the stars and stripes, and the 12-gun brig *Providence*, the whole marine force being under the command of Captain Saltonstall, of the *Warren*.

McLean's Station, as the place was called, was on the eastern shore of Penobscot Bay, nine miles from the sea. It stood on a peninsula, covered with a dense forest. While McLean was clearing a way in the wood, he learned of the expedition, and when the American vessels appeared, on July 25th, his three sloops of war opened fire. Three days passed before the patriots were able to land, during which McLean wrought hard to strengthen his fortifications. General Lovell erected a battery about half a mile from the enemy, and pounded away for nearly two weeks, without doing more than making a great noise. Then he began preparations for an assault. When everything was ready, news reached Lovell that Sir George Collier was coming up the bay with a considerable naval force. How Paul Jones would have welcomed such a chance! but to Captain Saltonstall the news came like the knell of doom. He hurriedly embarked his troops and can-

**Cowardice of Captain Saltonstall**

THE BONHOMME RICHARD AND THE SERAPIS

COPYRIGHT 1896.

FROM THE ORIGINAL PAINTING BY WARREN SHEPPARD

non in the night, hoping that he might escape, but the enemy pursued, and many of the ships were burned or blown up. Leaping ashore, the men plunged into the trackless woods, and set out for their homes, hundreds of miles away. Many died on the road, and those who succeeded in reaching civilization were starving, exhausted, and in the last stages of emaciation.

**A "Red Letter" Year**

The year whose story we are relating, however, will always be a "red letter" one in the history of our country, for in the early autumn took place one of the most important sea-fights in the naval annals of the world. Captain Paul Jones had fought his way to the head of the American navy, when, by his express desire, he was given command of the 40-gun ship *Duras*, whose name, in deference to his wishes, was changed to the *Bonhomme Richard* (*bon-num' rē-shar'*). This was in compliment to Dr. Benjamin Franklin, between whom and the redoubtable Paul Jones there was a warm friendship. The *Bonhomme Richard* was a dilapidated East India merchantman, which Jones patched and changed so that, when all that was possible had been done, she carried forty-two guns. The *Alliance*, which had brought over Lafayette, was commanded by Captain Landais, under the orders of Captain Jones. The *Pallas* of thirty guns, the merchant brig *Vengeance*, and the 18-gun cutter *Cerf* were added to the expedition. The scarcity of seamen made it hard work to man these vessels, and when it was completed the mongrel crews included seventeen different nationalities.

**Jones' Squadron**

The squadron sailed from L'Orient on June 19, 1779, Captain Landais sullen and resentful, because the command was not given to him. The jangle of tongues and lack of discipline on board the ships caused a collision between the *Bonhomme Richard* and the *Alliance*, which compelled a return to port for repairs, from which sail was not again made until August 14th. It was a fortunate accident, for while the repairs were under way, one hundred and nineteen exchanged American prisoners arrived in a cartel ship at Nantes. Nearly all of them enlisted on board the *Bonhomme Richard*, adding greatly to her strength and discipline. Among them was Richard Dale, master's mate in the *Lexington*, escaped from Mill Prison in the uniform of a British officer. As soon as he learned of Jones' enterprise he hastened to him and offered his services. Jones made him his first lieutenant.

Captain Landais showed so much insubordination, and acted so strangely, that Captain Jones became convinced that he was not in

his right mind, but he bore with him. While several prizes were taken a number of disturbing incidents occurred. The English coast was in consternation and the utmost excitement prevailed. Captain Jones had sent so many of his crew home in charge of prizes that only three hundred and twenty men were left. Doubling Flamborough Head, the *Bonhomme Richard* was joined by the *Pallas* and the *Alliance*. While chasing a brigantine, about noon on September 21, a large sail, followed by others, rounded Flamborough Head from the south. Still others came in sight, until in less than half an hour the astounded Americans found themselves in the presence of a fleet of forty-two ships.

**The Fleet of the Enemy**

It was a critical situation, but after studying them through his glass, Jones discovered that there were only two vessels of war in the fleet. Accordingly he gave the signal to make chase. In doing so, he was obliged to abandon his own pilot-boat, which was pursuing the brigantine, so that the crew of the *Bonhomme* numbered three hundred and four men in all. The unarmed vessels scattered like a covey of quail, while the large English frigate made ready for battle. At this critical stage, the American was exasperated by the insubordination of Captain Landais, who disregarded his signals, while Captain Cottineau, of the *Pallas*, was almost as disobedient, though later he altered his behavior and gallantly supported the dauntless American. The delay prevented an approach to the enemy until near dusk, when there was much manœuvring before the *Bonhomme Richard* and her enemy began edging toward each other. The latter was the frigate *Serapis* (*Se-rā'pis*), carrying fifty guns, with a crew of three hundred and twenty men, under the command of Captain Pearson. When within pistol-shot in the darkness, a hail came from the *Serapis:* "What ship is that?" Jones wished to close before opening fire, and to gain time called back: "I do not understand you." The hail was repeated in a louder voice: "What ship is that? Answer or I shall fire into you," but no reply was returned, and the only sounds were the rippling of water from the bows of the huge vessels, and the ominous preparations on board the American for the death-grapple.

**Opening of the Battle**

A sheet of flame burst from the sides of the two frigates at the same instant. Forty guns had been discharged, and round-shot, grape, and canister splintered the timbers on their errand of death and destruction. Two of the six 18-pounders on the lower deck of the *Bonhomme Richard* burst, killing nearly all who were working them and

splintering the deck above. This calamity caused the abandonment of the American's heaviest battery, since the men refused to handle the other cannon. Jones forged ahead and crossed the bow of the *Serapis* to leeward, the latter filling away and coming up on his port quarter. Then the frigates worked nearer each other, until once more within pistol-shot. They were wrapped now in a dense volume of smoke, which was continually lit up by the red flashes from the guns. Not only did these flames spout from the cannon, but there was a continuous rattle of musketry from the rigging of both, and, amid the appalling crash and roar, could be heard the shrieks of the wounded and dying, and the cheers of those that were as yet unhurt.

**A Terrific Struggle**

The men fought as if they were tigers. Within the first half-hour, the *Bonhomme Richard* was struck several times below her water-line and began leaking badly. The loss of the battery of 18-pounders compelled Jones to rely upon his smaller armament of 12-pounders. By and by this battery of fourteen guns was silenced, and seven of the quarter-deck and forecastle guns were dismounted, leaving the frigate with only two 9-pounders on the quarter-deck. By hard work, a 9-pounder was dragged over from the starboard side and the three guns were loaded and fired under the direction of Jones. The deck of the *Serapis* was swept with murderous effect, and the American guns were then double-shotted and pointed at the mainmast.

The battle had raged for an hour when the moon rose. The *Serapis* sought to work across the course of the *Bonhomme Richard*, so as to rake her, but she miscalculated the distance, yawed, put her helm a-lee, and the American overtaking her shoved her bowsprit over her stern. Each expected the other to board, and in the momentary lull, Captain Pearson called: "Have you struck?" "Struck! no!" shouted back Jones, "I haven't begun to fight!" The frigates swung apart, and, while the *Serapis* was striving again for position to rake her rival, her jib-boom fouled with the starboard mizzen shrouds of the *Bonhomme Richard*. With his own hands, Jones lashed the spar to his rigging, seeing that his only chance was to fight at close quarters, but the lurching of the vessels broke the bowsprit, and at the same moment the spare anchor of the *Serapis* caught on the *Bonhomme Richard's* quarter and held. The Americans hurriedly passed a hawser over the stump of the enemy's bowsprit and aro ınd

**"I Haven't Begun to Fight"**

their own mizzenmast. Thus the frigates were interlocked as may be said, in each other's arms, and fought more fiercely than ever. Fearful that the Americans would board through the lower ports on the engaged side of the *Serapis*, they were closed. Since the lids swung outward, they could not be opened, so the enemy fired through them, blowing away the lids. So close indeed were the frigates

WHAT WON THE BATTLE

**Desperate Plight of the Richard**

that the gunners of each, in loading, had to push one end of the rammers into the ports of the other vessel. The blazing wads set the *Bonhomme Richard* on fire in several places, but the flames were put out before making much headway. The enemy prepared to board, but, finding the Americans drawn up and awaiting them, abandoned the attempt.

It looked now as if the *Bonhomme Richard* was helpless. Her

lower battery of 18-pounders was destroyed by the first broadside, while the fire of the English gunners was incessant from the opposite battery. They smashed the six ports into one huge gap, through which the crimsoned waves continually washed, some of the shot tearing entirely through the *Bonhomme Richard* and dropping into the sea beyond. As the only thing that could be done to check this, all the Americans were distributed on the upper decks and in the rigging, where their markmanship drove every officer and sailor out of sight, while the 9-pounders and two 12-pounders that had been brought into action again silenced in time the upper batteries of the *Serapis*.

**What Won the Battle**

At this fearful crisis in the fight, one of the American seamen did a thing which really decided the battle. He had crept out on the main yard of the *Bonhomme Richard* with a bucket of hand-grenades, which he began throwing on the decks of the enemy, wherever he saw any men. As the sailors withdrew below decks, he flung the grenades into the hatches. At last, taking careful aim, he hurled one through the main hatchway into the gun-room below. It fell upon a pile of ammunition, which instantly exploded, killing or wounding thirty-eight, twenty of whom were blown to fragments. Just then the *Alliance* came up, and Captain Jones felt that his victory was won; but, to his dismay, the *Alliance* deliberately fired a broadside into the stern of the *Bonhomme Richard*. Captain Jones shouted to him for God's sake to stop, but Captain Landais fired again. Signals were displayed to apprise him of his horrible mistake, but he circled round the *Bonhomme Richard*, firing repeatedly, killing and wounding several of the Americans, and sending in a number of shots below the water line. The attack was so vicious that it was believed the *Alliance* had been captured by the enemy and had come to the assistance of the *Serapis*. Finally, however, she stood away, and Jones kept his shattered flag still flying.

**Treachery of Captain Landais**

But the *Bonhomme Richard* was by this time sinking, and fire had broken out again. Between one and two hundred prisoners were set free. All was in inextricable confusion. The released men ran hither and thither, and the expectation was that the frigate would be blown up, for the fire was close to the magazine. Lieutenant Dale ran to the quarter-deck to haul down the colors, but they had been shot away, whereupon the gunner dashed to the taffrail and shouted for quarter.

With his ship settling in the water and certain soon to sink, with the fire fast eating its way to the magazine, with more than a hundred prisoners skulking about the decks, waiting for a chance to strike from behind, with the dead and wounded everywhere, and all his officers urging a surrender, who would have held out with the belief that a grain of hope remained? No man except John Paul Jones.

To the hail from the *Serapis* asking whether he had surrendered, Jones thundered back, "No!" Then the hero shouted to his prisoners that the *Serapis* was sinking and their only hope was to keep the *Bonhomme Richard* afloat. The panicstricken Englishmen flew to the pumps and toiled with might and main. Thus they helped to float the frigate, to check the fast-spreading fire, and had no opportunity to strike a blow against their captors. Then Captain Jones drew his pistol and declared he would shoot the first man who refused to obey his order to work the guns. All knew him and obeyed.

**Paul Jones' Intrepidity**

Captain Pearson was amazed at the action of the American, whose fire increased, and the shots were of deadly effectiveness. His own vessel was on fire, and, finding himself helpless, Pearson himself at half-past ten hauled down his flag. Within the following five minutes his mainmast fell over the side, dragging the mizzen-topmast with it. Captain Jones stopped firing, and Lieutenant Dale, by order of the American commander, sprang aboard, followed by several others, and took possession. It required the joint efforts of both crews to keep the *Bonhomme Richard* afloat through the night, while the wounded and prisoners were transferred to the *Serapis*. On the morning of the 25th, the *Bonhomme Richard* plunged downward, bow foremost, and passed out of sight forever. The remaining ships of the squadron repaired their damages and arrived at Texel on the 3d of October.

**Surrender of the Serapis**

Maclay in his "History of the United States Navy," upon whose spirited account of the engagement we have drawn, gives the following summary of this most remarkable fight:

COMPARATIVE FORCE AND LOSS.

| | Guns. | Lbs. | Crew. | Killed. | Wounded. | Total. |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Bonhomme Richard | 42 | 557 | 304 | 49 | 67 | 116 |
| Serapis | 50 | 600 | 320 | 49 | 68 | 117 |

Time of battle: 3 hours, 30 minutes.

The other British frigate, the *Countess of Scarborough*, made a gallant defence, but was compelled to strike her flag to the *Pallas*, under Captain Cottineau, after an action lasting about two hours.

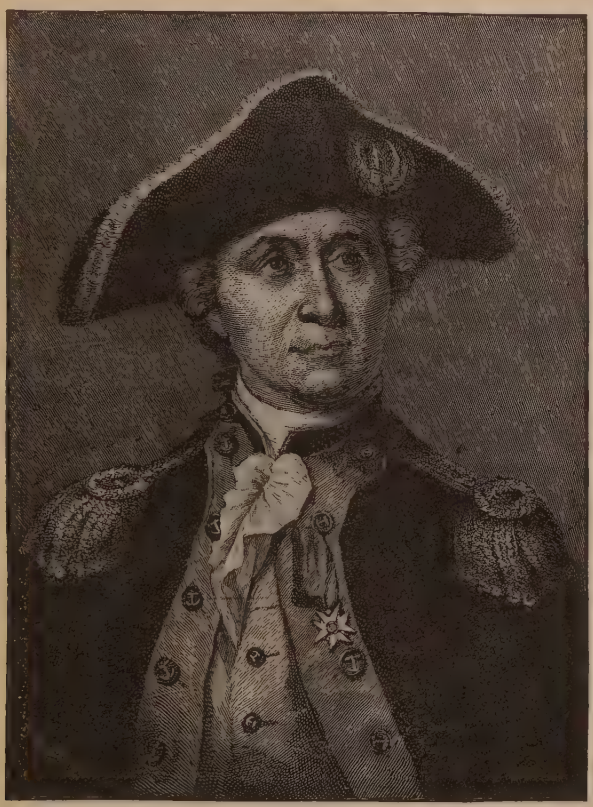
The conduct of Captain Landais caused intense indignation both in France and America, but, afraid of offending the French government, whose aid we so much needed, our commissioners refrained from pressing the charges against him. However, he was dismissed from the French navy and ordered to quit the country. Congress also dismissed him from the American service, while the general belief in his insanity prevented harsher measures. Almost equal credit for skill and bravery must be given to Captain Pearson, commander of the *Scrapis*. Naturally he was depressed when he handed his sword to Jones and made an ill-natured remark, but Jones complimented him on the gallant defence he had made, and said that he was sure his sovereign would reward him. So it proved, for the king knighted him. When this was told to Jones, he smiled and remarked: "He deserves it; if I fall in with him again, I'll make a lord of him!"

**A Merited Compliment**

Since this was the last important service rendered by Paul Jones to the United States, the reader will doubtless be glad to learn something more about him. He was born of humble parents and named John Paul, in Kirkcudbrightshire, Scotland, in 1747. He went to sea at the age of twelve, but when twenty-five years old he inherited a valuable estate from his brother in Virginia. He took possession of it, and, for some unknown reason, added the name of "Jones" to that of John Paul. He lived quietly on his property for two years, when war was declared with England. He promptly offered his services to the Continental government, and, as we have learned, served with great distinction from the first, and without even pay or allowance. England officially declared him a "traitor, pirate, and felon," and put a price of ten thousand guineas on his head; but he was no more of a traitor, pirate, or felon than was George Washington, "Mad Anthony" Wayne, or Thomas Jefferson, for, like Jones, all of these were born British subjects. It is strange that, even in later years, Jones has been referred to as a privateer, a sea rover, and a bold marauder, which is equivalent to calling him a pirate. Let it be remembered that all this applies to a man who headed the list of first lieutenants appointed in the navy of the colonies, on December 22, 1775; who held the first captain's commission granted under the United States, August 8, 1776; who received the thanks of Congress in 1781; who was unanimously elected by Congress to be the first officer of the American navy in 1781, and who received a gold medal

**The Career of Jones**

from the same body, similar to that presented to Washington; who was presented with a gold sword by Louis XVI., of France, and also with the Grand Cross of the Order of Military Merit, never before given to a foreigner. Greater than all these was the loving esteem in which he was held by Washington, Franklin, Jefferson, and La-



PAUL JONES

fayette. Who will dispute the belief that Jones was an unswerving patriot and one of the most daring of men?

**Death of Jones**

In 1788, Jones was made a rear-admiral in the Russian navy and fought against the Turks, receiving from the Empress Catherine the Order of St. Anne. He died in Paris in 1792. Now, one of the most interesting experiences that one can have is to see a great person just as he is. It is not every famous man who can stand a close scrutiny. It has been said that Washington was almost the only one whose private life, the closer it is studied, makes the

greater demands upon our admiration and love. Others have weaknesses, some of them so glaring as to be the cause of pain to their admirers; but where these failings are slight and harmless, they serve to draw rather than to repel us. We do not esteem Washington the less because he sometimes misspelled his words when writing letters, and we rather like him the more when we learn that at the battle of Monmouth, upon the discovery of the treachery of Lee, he flew into a towering rage and denounced him in such terrible words that even Lafayette was awed.

**True Heroes**

Our government owns many manuscripts so precious that no sum in the world would buy them. Among them are a number of letters written by Paul Jones, which were mostly collected and preserved through the efforts of President Jefferson, who was a life-long correspondent of Jones. One of these letters is here appended, just as it was written by Jones. It is addressed to Mr. Hewes, member of Congress from South Carolina, to whom the writer was indebted for his commission, and is an account of the cruise of Commodore Hopkins' squadron, in which, as will be remembered, Jones served as first-lieutenant on the flagship *Alfred:*

APRIL 4th, 1776.

**A Characteristic Letter**

Agreeable to your kind request, I have taken up my pen to give you the particulars of our Cruise from the Capes of Delaware. On the 17th of Feb'y the Fleet put to Sea, with a Smart North East wind. In the night of the nineteenth (the Gale having increased) we lost Company with the Hornet and Fly tender. We Continued Steering to the Southward without seeing a Single Sail or meeting with anything remarkable till the first of March when we Anchored at Abaco (one of the Bahamia Islands) having previously brought too a Couple of New Providence Sloops to take Pilots out of them—by these People we were informed that there was a large Quantity of Powder with a number of Cannon in the two Forts of New Providence. In Consequence of this Intelligence the Marines and Landsmen to the number of 300 and Upwards under the Command of Captn Nicholas Embarked in two Sloops. It was determined that they should keep below Deck 'till the Sloops were got in Close to the Fort and they were then to land instantly and take possession before the Island could be alarmed—this however was rendered abortive as the Forts Fired an alarm on the approach of our Fleet. We then ran in and anchored at a small Key, 3 Leagues to Windward of the Town and from thence the Comodore dispatched the marines with the sloop Providence and Schooner Wasp to cover the Landing. they landed without oposition and soon took possession of the Eastern Garrison, F. Montigne, which (after Firing a few shot) the Islanders had abandoned. The Next morning, the Marines marched from the Town and were met by a messenger from the Govr. who told Captn Nicholas that "The Western Garrison (F. Nassau) was ready for his reception and he might march his Force in as soon as he pleased." This was effected without firing a Gun on our side—but the Govr has send of 150 barrels of Powder the Night before. Inclosed you have an Inventory of the Cannon stores, &c., which we took Possession of and brought off in the Fleet we continued at N. Providence till the 17th ulta and then bro't off the Govr and two more Gentn Prisoners—our Cruise was now directed back for the Continents, and after meeting with much bad

weather, on the 5th Inst off Block Island we took one of Captain Wallace's tenders the Hawke schooner of 6 guns the next morning we fell in with the Glasgow man of war and a Hot Engagement Ensued the particulars of which I cannot communicate better than by extracting the minutes which I entered in the Alfred's Logbook, as follows.

At 2 A.M. Cleared the Slop for action at ½ past do the Cabot being between us and the Enemy began to Engage and soon after we did the same—at the third Glass the Enemy bore away and by crouding sail at length got a considerable way ahead made signals for the of ye English Fleet at Rhoad Island to come to her Assistance and steered directly for the Harbour. The Comodore then thought in Imprudent to Resign our Prizes &c. by Pursuing further, therefore to Prevent our being decoyed into their hands, at ½ past six made the signal to leave off Chase and hauled by the wind to join our Prizes. The Cabott was disabled at the 2nd broadside—the Capt. being dangerously Wounded; the Master and several men killed—the Enemy's whole Fire was then directed at us, and an unlucky shot haveing carried away our Wheel Block and Ropes the Ship broached too and gave the enemy an opportunity of Rakeing us with serving Broadsides before we were taken in Condition to steer the Ship and Return the Fire. In the Action we Received several shot under the Water which made the ship Verry Leaky—we had besides the Main mast shot thro' and the upper works and Rigging very considerably damaged—Yett it is surprising that we only lost the 2nd lieutenant of Marines and 4 men of whom, a Midshipman prisoner Martin Gellingwater who was in the Cockpit and had been taken in the Bomb Brig Bolton yesterday—we had no more than three men dangerously and 4 slightly wounded.

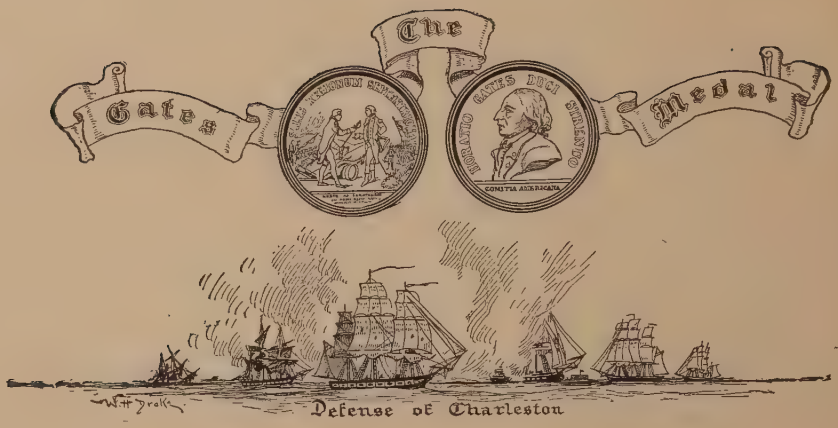
The following paragraph in brackets is marked out, but perfectly legible:

[It is your province to make the Natural Comments arising from the subject I wish to avoid Cencuring Individuals—the utmost delicacy is necessary and highly becoming in my situation—I therefore Content myself with relating Facts only, and leave wiser heads the privilege of determining their propriety.]

I have the pleasure of assuring you that the Commr in Chief is respected thro the Fleet and I verily believe that the officers and men in general would go any length to execute his Orders. It is with pain that I confine this plaudit too an individual—I should be happy in extending it to every Captain and officer in the Service—praise is certainly due to some—but alas! there are Exceptions. It is certainly for the Interest of the Service that a Cordial Interchange of Civilities should subsist beween Superiour and Inferiour Officers—and therefore it is bad policy in Superiours to behave toward their inferiours indiscriminately as tho' they were of a lower Species. Such a Conduct will damp the spirits of any man. Would to heaven it were otherwise but in sad truth this is a Conduct too much in Fashion in our Infant Fleet—the ill Consequences of this are obvious—men of liberal minds, who have been long accustomed to command can Ill brook being thus set at naught by others who pretend to claim a monopoly of sense. the rude ungentle treatment they experience, creates such heart burnings as are no wise consonant with that chearful ardour and spirit which ought ever to be the Characteristic of an Officer—and therefore when he adopts such a line of conduct in order to prove it—for to to be well obeyed, it is necessary to be esteemed—whoever thinks himself hearty in the service is widely mistaken.

The Fleet having been reinforced with 200 men lent from the Army is now in condition for another Enterprize and we expect to embrace the first wind for Rhode Island when I hope we shall meet with better success as we understand that the Scarborough is now there, it is Proposed to clean the ships at Rhode Island or Providence that our detention there will admit of a return of letters from Philadelphia meantime with a grateful sense of Past favours I have the honour to be with Much Esteem

Sir Your very obliged
Most humble servant
J. P. JONES.




## CHAPTER XXXVI

### *EVENTS OF 1780 (CAMPAIGN IN THE SOUTH)*

[*Authorities:* In spite of French aid to the Continental cause, the British, having command of the sea, continued, during the year 1780, to keep Washington's anxieties on the strain as to the objective points of royalist attack. At one time, there would occur a feint in the direction of Newport, at another a descent would be made on Georgia and the Carolinas; while from the British base at New York, the Highlands of the Hudson were constantly the objects of menacing movements. The brunt of the year's fighting, however, fell upon the South, Sir Henry Clinton capturing Charleston, while Gates' command had to yield to Lord Rawdon at Camden, and to Lord Cornwallis at Clermont. The situation for a time brightened with the victory at King's Mountain, only to fall into temporary gloom again over Arnold's miserable betrayal of his trust. That at the hour of the nation's dire extremity treason should enter the breast of Benedict Arnold is, considering his services to his country, one of those strange fatalities difficult to account for in the careers of some men. Disappointments and the irritation of slights had, it would seem, long preyed upon an envious and uneasy mind, and led its victim to resort to clandestine correspondence with the enemy, with the result of covering Arnold's name with eternal infamy. The authorities for the Arnold episode are Sparks' Memoir (Library of American Biography), and the Life, by I. N. Arnold; also Winthrop Sargent's "Life and Career of Major John André," and Lossing's "Two Spies—Hale and André."]

**A Severe Winter**

THE winter of 1779–80 was one of the most terrible in the history of our country. In the North the snow lay for months to the depth of several feet; men were frozen to death on the highway, and hundreds of wild, and very many domestic, animals perished. All the ordinary channels of trade were closed and military operations suspended. The Continental troops at Morristown suffered not only from the Arctic cold, but even from lack of food. Washington was forced to make levies on the people, but he did it carefully, seeking the aid of the civil magistrates, and giving certificates to those from whom sup-

WINTER QUARTERS AT VALLEY FORGE.

plies were taken. The farmers showed more willingness to befriend the army than those at Valley Forge, and the hardships of the patriots, as a consequence, were less severe than during the year previous.

Sir Henry Clinton was determined to capture Charleston. Towards the close of the year 1779, he embarked from New York with seventy-five hundred men, leaving Knyphausen in command of the city with a small force, for Washington had sent so many of his troops south that he could give the enemy little trouble. Several raids were made by both opposing parties. Lord Stirling burned a number of houses and vessels on Staten Island, while the British de-

MARION IN AMBUSH

stroyed the Presbyterian church and court-house at Elizabethtown. These forays could have no effect on the general struggle, but served to intensify the resentment of each side.

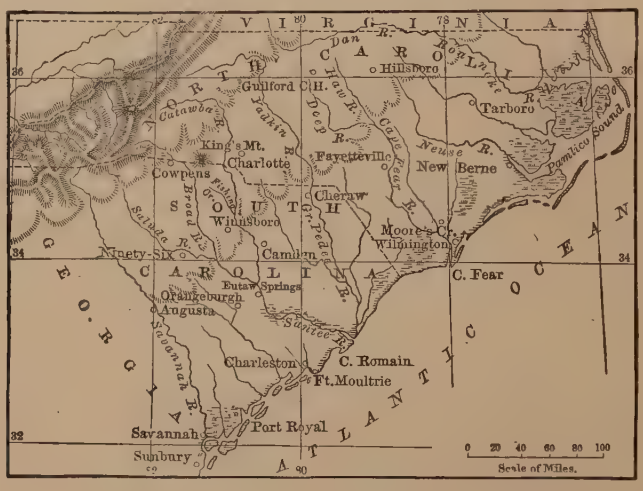
**The British Expedition against Charleston**

The British expedition southward encountered such tempestuous weather that it did not reach Charleston until the close of January. On the route thither, the American cruisers captured several transports and supply vessels, while so many of the horses died that Clinton did not land on St. John's Island, thirty miles south of Charleston, until the 11th of February. He then advanced to St. James' Island, and a part of his fleet returned to blockade Charleston. General Lincoln had a garrison of three thousand troops, with which he was confident of holding the city against any approach from the

land side. Commodore Whipple had nine small vessels in the harbor, which, with the strong guns of Fort Moultrie, he was certain could prevent the British fleet from crossing the bar.

**Siege of the City**

The fleet entered the harbor April 9th, without resistance from the fort, while the troops had appeared before the American earthworks on the 29th of March. A demand for the surrender of the city was made April 10th, and being refused, the siege began. The situation became so critical that a council was held on the 13th, to consider the propriety of evacuating the town. Before a decision was reached, evacuation became impossible. The cavalry sent out to keep open the communication with the country were scattered,




MAP OF THE CAROLINAS

**Surrender of Charleston**

and Cornwallis arrived from New York with about three thousand fresh troops. Fort Moultrie was obliged to surrender May 6th, but another summons to the city was refused three days later. A cannonade was opened, and, on the 12th, all hope being gone, Lincoln surrendered. The disaster was a crushing one. Clinton gained five thousand men as prisoners of war. North Carolina lost all her regular soldiers and was defenceless. Indeed, the whole South was virtually conquered. Clinton stationed a strong force at Ninety-six, a second at Camden, and a third at Augusta. Then he issued a proclamation offering pardon to all who would swear allegiance to the English government. Many accepted the offer, but still more remained true to the cause of freedom.

About the only ones left to do battle for their country were the partisan rangers, under General Marion the "Swamp Fox," Colonel Sumter, Pickens, and other daring leaders. All fought like heroes against the Tories and the invaders and did patriotic service; but like the raids elsewhere, they had little effect upon the war itself. General Gates, the conqueror of Burgoyne, was sent South to assume command of that department. He selected a position, with such forces as he could collect, at Clermont, S. C., while Lords Rawdon and Cornwallis were at Camden. By a singular coincidence each force formed the same plan for a night attack upon the other, and on

**Battle at Camden**

ANDRÉ'S DISAPPOINTMENT

the 16th of August they met at Sander's Creek. The Americans fought well for a time, but the militia were wholly untrained, and the veterans too few to hold their ground. A decisive defeat was the result.

In this disastrous affair the brave De Kalb fell, pierced with eleven wounds. His comrades fought desperately over his body, but could not withstand the overwhelming forces hurled against them. The patriots were so scattered and disorganized that they could not be rallied, and for the time being all organized resistance in the South to British rule ended. Gates made his way to Charlotte,

N. C., where he was superseded by Gen. Nathaniel Greene, one of the best officers in the American service. He did all that was possible with the scant material within reach, but for a while could accomplish little.

The governor of North Carolina appealed to the backwoodsmen of East Tennessee to help the Old North State. They responded gallantly, and nine hundred men, as brave as ever sat in the saddle, rode out to meet Colonel Ferguson. On the top of King's Mountain, October 7th, was fought one of the most famous battles of the war. Ferguson was a fine soldier, and had the larger force and the stronger position. He fought bravely and with much skill, but the mountaineers with their unerring rifles forced him back, and finally the leader was killed. Still the riflemen pressed on, until the enemy, after three hundred had been killed, laid down their arms. The victory was an inspiriting one. Jefferson called it "the joyful turning of the tide," and Bancroft, the historian, observes that "the victory of King's Mountain, which in the spirit of the American soldiers was like the rising at Concord in its effect, like the success at Bennington, changed the aspects of the war."

ANDRÉ

**Patriot Victory at King's Mountain**

It will be observed that military events steadily drifted southward. Little was done in the North, though the year will always be memorable because of the most hideous occurrence of the war. Benedict Arnold was among the bravest of those who drew sword in defence of their country. At Quebec and at Saratoga he had fought with the heroism of a lion and won praise from all. He was wounded more than once, and at his own request was left in command at Philadelphia, after its evacuation by Clinton, so as to give his wounds time to heal.

**Benedict Arnold as a Patriot**

Arnold was proud, overbearing, and insolent. He married a Tory lady, and the couple lived far beyond their means. He was so detested in Philadelphia because of his oppressive acts, that he was once mobbed on the streets. Charges were repeatedly preferred against him, and he was sentenced to be reprimanded by the commander-in-chief. Washington did his duty with much delicacy, for

CAPTURE OF ANDRÉ

COPYRIGHT 1896.

FROM THE ORIGINAL DRAWING BY J. STEEPLE DAVIS

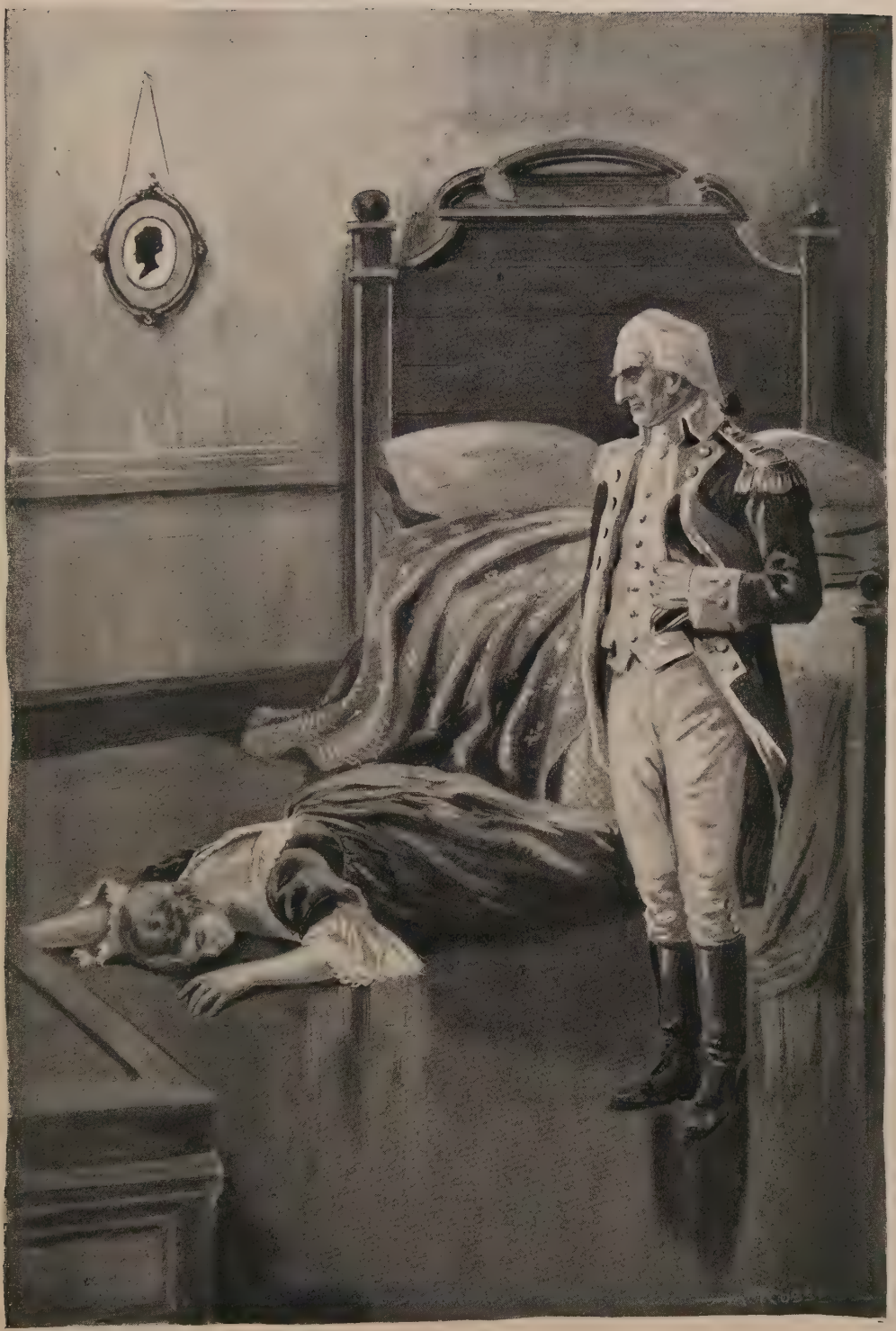
he respected the bravery of the man, who had not received at all times from Congress the consideration to which he was entitled. Arnold was angered, and to appease his wounded feelings he deliberately resolved to betray his country. At his own request he was given command of the post at West Point, one of the most important in the country. Previous to this, he had been holding a secret correspondence with Sir Henry Clinton, and matters had gone so far that it was necessary for a third party to meet Arnold and arrange the details of the betrayal. Clinton sent his favorite officer, Major André, up the Hudson, on the sloop-of-war *Vulture*, warning him not to go ashore under any circumstances. Since the utmost caution was necessary on the part of all, and especially on that of Arnold, he waited in the woods on the shore below West Point, while André, disobeying the order of Clinton, was rowed from the sloop at night and met the traitor in the woods. There they talked for hours, and the plans for the surrender of West Point and its garrison were completed.

**Arnold's Plan of Betrayal**

But the interview had lasted so long that it was daylight when it was finished. In the mean time the *Vulture* had been fired upon by the Americans and had dropped down stream, so that André could not get back to her. Thus he was left within the American lines, but it seemed an easy matter to return to New York. Arnold furnished him with a pass, while he would have no trouble after reaching his own lines. Thus provided, and in the character of an American merchant named John Anderson, he mounted a horse and set out to ride back to New York by following the course of the Hudson. All went well until he reached Tarrytown. There three patriots were seated among the bushes at the side of the road playing cards. Their names were John Paulding, Isaac Van Wart, and David Williams. When the young horseman came round the bend in the highway, Paulding sprang up, and, presenting his bayonet, ordered him to stop. His two companions followed close behind him and André had no choice but to obey.

**Capture of André**

Now, it so happened that one of these men had been a prisoner some time before and wore a British coat which he brought away with him. Observing this, André supposed that the three were loyalists, and committed the fatal blunder of acting on that belief. Seeing his error, the three encouraged it, until finally André declared that he was a British officer engaged on important business.



ARNOLD REVEALING HIS TREASON TO HIS WIFE.

They then compelled him to dismount; and, taking him to one side of the road, carefully searched him. In his stockings were found the papers which proved him to be a spy. André offered any amount of money for his release, but the patriots, poor as they were, could not be bribed. The three young men conducted their prisoner to Lieutenant-Colonel Jameson, in command of the nearest military post at North Castle. That officer examined the papers, and then, with a stupidity which is beyond comprehension, sent the particulars of the arrest of André to Benedict Arnold. Seeing that discovery was certain, Arnold told his wife the truth, kissed his sleeping infant, darted out of the house, sprang into the saddle, and rode headlong to the river, where he sprang into a boat and was rowed to the *Vulture*. She immediately made sail for New York, where she arrived with the traitor, who was rewarded for his treachery by a colonelcy in the English army and the sum of £6,315.*

**Escape of Arnold**

Much sympathy was felt for André, but there could be no denying the fact that he was a spy. Every possible effort was made to save him, Clinton making a strong appeal to Washington; but the latter, who would have been glad to exchange the prisoner for Arnold, felt that to show mercy would be not only undeserved but an act of weakness. Nathan Hale had been brutally gibbeted, and André, who was tried at Tappan by fourteen general officers, was found guilty and sentenced to be hanged. He wrote to Washington asking that he might be shot, but even that pitiful boon could not be granted. He was hanged October 2, 1780. Congress rewarded his

**Execution of André**

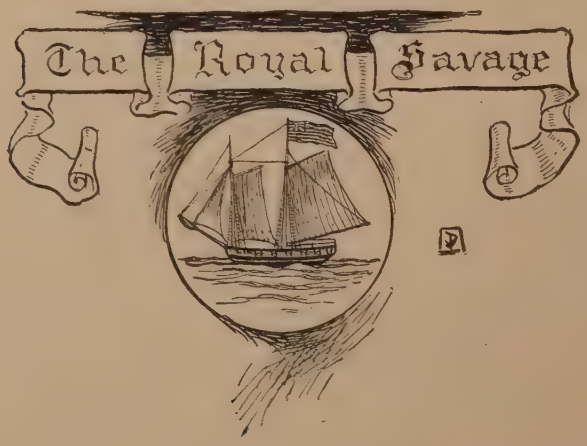
* When Benedict Arnold, who was despised in London almost as heartily as by his own countrymen, died, he left four sons and one daughter. Edwin Shippen Arnold became a lieutenant in the Sixth Bengal Cavalry of the British Army and paymaster at Muttra, India, dying in 1813, at Singapore. James Robertson Arnold, another son, was a lieutenant-general in the British Army. He died in 1834, and his widow in 1852. George Arnold was lieutenant-colonel of the Second Bengal Cavalry and died in India in 1828.

The only son of Benedict Arnold who left any children was William Fitch, who was also an officer in the British Army, being a captain in the Nineteenth Lancers. He died in 1846 and left six children, of whom two were sons. The second son, William Trail Arnold, was a soldier like his father, grandfather, and all of his uncles. He attained the rank of captain and was killed at Sebastopol. Edwin Gladwin Arnold, grandson of Benedict Arnold, is at this writing an honored and revered clergyman of the Church of England. All four of the daughters of William Fitch Arnold married clergymen of the Church of England, and the record of every son and grandson of the traitor is that of a daring, high-minded honorable man, while their posterity are distinguished and universally respected for their worth, a fact which no one can regret, since they could not be in any way responsible for the sins of their misguided ancestor.

three captors with a vote of thanks, a commemorative medal, and two hundred dollars a year for life. A marble monument rests over the burial-place of each, while a monument was erected to the memory of André in Westminster Abbey.

**Decline of the American Navy**

There was little left of the American navy at the opening of 1780. Despite the brilliant successes that marked the beginning of the Revolution, the overwhelming power of England, the mistress of the seas, had virtually annihilated the gallant privateers and American vessels of war. Great Britain had suffered such loss of her shipping and commerce that she refused in future to exchange prisoners and voted 85,000 men for her navy during the year 1780. The French fleet, under Count d'Estaing, having sailed to the West Indies, it was well-nigh impossible for the American vessels to get to sea. Nevertheless, a few succeeded and added more than one stirring achievement to the many already made.



## CHAPTER XXXVII

### *EVENTS OF 1781 AND CLOSE OF THE WAR*

[*Authorities:* With this chapter the drama of the Revolution terminates. It opens in gloom but closes in triumph. The surrender at Yorktown not only shattered England's attempt to wield autocratic power over her colonies, but gave them their well-earned independence. "Whatever might be the importance of the event in the history of England," writes Green, the historian, "it was of unequalled moment in the history of the world. If it crippled for a while the supremacy of the English nation, it founded the supremacy of the English race. From the hour of American independence the life of the English people has flowed not in one current, but in two; and while the older has shown little signs of lessening, the younger has fast risen to a greatness which has changed the face of the world." Much, however, as we shall see, was yet to be wrought before the young Republic was set on its feet. What lay before it, it set about sturdily, though not without misgivings, to accomplish. The authorities, American and English, for the period are those already enumerated. For the story of the Tory loyalists, for whom, unfortunately, there was no amnesty, and who were now to be driven, by the soreness of revolutionary feeling, from their homes, see Sabin's "Loyalists of the American Revolution," and Jones' "Revolutionary History of New York."]

THE seventh year of the War for Independence abounded with striking events, one of the first importance being a remarkable display of patriotism on the part of the Continental troops. Congress was weak and dilatory. It passed strong resolutions but was lax in carrying them out. As a result the army was wofully lacking in clothing and in money. The British held hundreds of prisoners and exchanges were slow. Many of those taken on Long Island and at Fort Washington, in 1776, underwent horrible sufferings in the three sugar houses and in the Prevost prison, where the brutal Marshal Cunningham delighted to inflict all manner of cruelties upon them. Un-

**Sufferings of the Patriot Army**

numbered bones of the patriots, who died on the filthy prison-ships, are lying to-day at the bottom of Wallabout Bay, and the treatment of the hapless captives forms one of the darkest episodes in the history of the Revolution.

There was bitter complaint among the soldiers over the meaning of the words of their enlistment "for three years, or during the war." The soldiers claimed (it would seem with justice, for such was the interpretation of similar terms for enlistment in the war for the Union) that this meant for three years, if the war lasted so long, or less if the war should end within three years. Congress declared the meaning to be that the term was for three years, or to the end of the war, no matter how long it should last. Nothing seemed lacking to bring discontent among the poor soldiers. They received their pay only at long intervals, and even when paid, the Continental money was worth little more than waste-paper—the currency having so greatly depreciated. Angered beyond all bearing by the neglect or indifference of Congress, thirteen hundred of the Pennsylvania line revolted at Morristown on the first day of the year, and prepared to march to Philadelphia and compel Congress to do them justice. General Wayne did his utmost to restrain them. He appealed to their patriotism, and, drawing his pistol, threatened to shoot the first man who moved. The soldiers presented their bayonets at his breast and declared that, while they loved and honored him, they would kill him if he fired.

**Revolt of the Pennsylvania Line**

"I will not fire," replied the brave man, "but I will go with you."

He rode with them to Princeton, where they gave him a written list of their complaints and demands. They were reasonable. Under his promise to lay them before Congress, the troops returned to Morristown. Congress saw that it would not do to trifle, and the demands, as far as possible, were complied with. Most of the Pennsylvania line was disbanded for the winter, new recruits taking their place in the spring.

When Sir Henry Clinton in New York heard of the revolt he was delighted. He crossed over to Staten Island to abet the mutineers, and sent two agents among them, with a Tory, who offered to pay the men in cash every dollar they claimed if they would march to New York, where he would take them under his protection. The indignant soldiers seized the emissaries and handed them over to Wayne, with the request that he would hang them as spies. General Wayne

**True Patriotism**

REVOLT OF THE PENNSYLVANIA LINE

COPYRIGHT 1896.

FROM THE ORIGINAL DRAWING BY H. A. OGDEN

PERIOD III
ENGLAND AND FRANCE IN AMERICA
1758 TO 1783

gladly complied. The reward that had been promised for the detection of these secret agents was offered to the soldiers. "No," was the reply; "necessity forced us to demand justice from Congress, but we want no pay for doing our simple duty." A few weeks after this revolt, a part of the New Jersey line followed the example of the Pennsylvanians. Washington saw that his army would dissolve unless he took stern repressive measures. Two of the ringleaders were hanged, and then all trouble of that nature ended.

**The War in the South**

The chief theatre of events was now in the South. Beginning in New England, the tide of war had steadily rolled southward, and the closing scenes were to take place on Southern soil. General Greene, now in chief command of the patriots, set himself to a herculean task with his usual address and skill. His army was formed in two divisions. He took post with the main body at Cheraw, east of the Pedee, while Gen. Daniel Morgan, with a thousand men, was stationed near the junction of the Broad and Pacolét rivers, in western South Carolina. Thus Cornwallis, who was preparing to march again into North Carolina, found himself between two bodies of patriots. The British commander sent Tarleton with a superior force to capture or rout Morgan, who fell back to The Cowpens, near the North Carolina line. Although opposed by a more numerous enemy, the partiots demanded a chance to wipe out the disgrace of Camden, and no one could have been more pleased to comply than their leader.

**Battle of The Cowpens**

Hostilities opened on the morning of January 17th, and the affair quickly became a furious engagement. Morgan manœuvred and fought with so much skill that Tarleton was utterly routed, his cavalry being pursued for twenty miles. The loss of the Americans was but seventy-two killed and wounded, while that of the enemy was more than three hundred, with five hundred prisoners, and an immense amount of supplies. The victory was a crushing one, and caused considerable consternation in the camp of Cornwallis when the news reached him. Morgan crossed the Broad River with his prisoners, intending to make his way to Virginia. Cornwallis meanwhile started with his whole army in pursuit. He was confident of heading off the patriots at the fords of the Catawba, but reached there two hours after Morgan had crossed. It was late in the afternoon, and, feeling sure of his game, he waited until morning, when he received a reminder of his experience with Washington at Trenton, four years before. Morgan was gone, and a heavy rainfall had

so raised the stream that the British commander was held idle for several hours, during which Morgan reached the banks of the Yadkin, where Greene joined him, having left his troops at Cheraw in command of General Huger. On his way, however, Greene learned of the pursuit by Cornwallis, and sent orders to Huger to break camp and unite with Morgan at Salisbury or Charlotte.

The movements which followed were among the most remarkable in our history. Greene was making for Virginia and Cornwallis chased him for two hundred miles. The pursuer had been held sev-

CAPTURE OF A REDOUBT AT YORKTOWN

eral hours at the Catawba, but, crossing at last, he renewed the chase after Morgan, and reached one bank of the Yadkin, February 3d, as the Americans on the other side were forming in line to continue the march southward. And, lo! the Yadkin was rising rapidly just as the Catawba had done. The impatient Cornwallis had to linger until the next day, while the Continentals leisurely marched off on their course. They were joined at Guilford Court House by the troops from the Pedee, but being far inferior to their pursuers in numbers, they continued their retreat to the Dan, which was already rising, when on the 13th of February they crossed and entered Halifax County, Va. By and by, when Cornwallis came again in view,

**A Skilful Retreat**

he found himself stopped for the third time by high water. Disgusted with the turn of affairs, he wheeled about and, marching through North Carolina, reached Hillsborough, where he made his headquarters.

Having rested and recruited his men, Greene recrossed the Dan ten days later. His army was now recruited to about five thousand, and he sought a meeting with Cornwallis. A battle of two hours' duration was fought at Guilford Court House on the 15th of March. It, too, was of the fiercest character and proved disastrous to both sides. The Americans lost four hundred killed and wounded, while a thousand deserted and went home. The British losses were six hundred men. When the news reached England, a member of Parliament exclaimed: "Another such victory will ruin the British army." Cornwallis now retreated towards Wilmington, on learning which Greene pursued him to Deep River, but turned back towards Camden, determined to strike a blow for the recovery of South Carolina from the enemy.

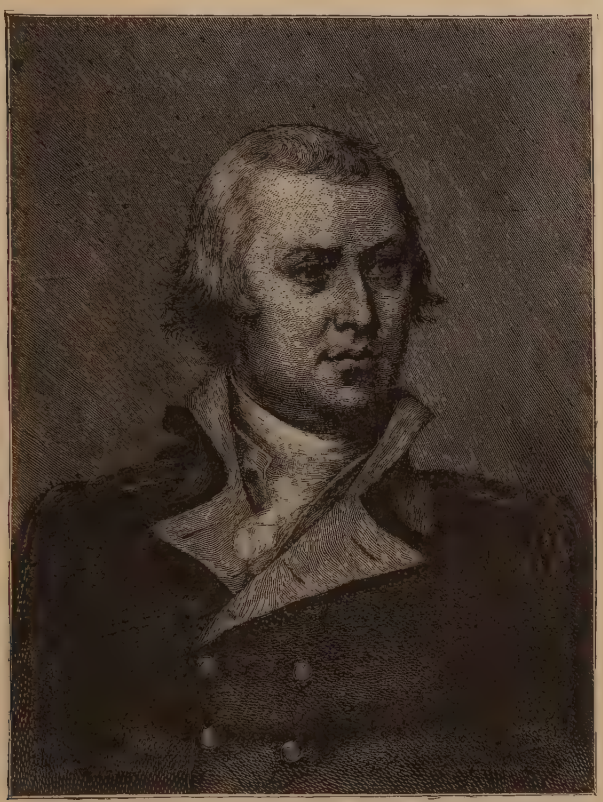
**Battle at Guilford Court House**

Meanwhile, Benedict Arnold was striving to earn the reward that had been paid him for his treason. He was now fighting "with a rope around his neck," for he knew that if he fell into the hands of his former comrades, they would make short work with him. He was sent from New York to Virginia, with about sixteen hundred British and Tories and several armed ships. His purpose was to compel Virginia to bring back the troops which had been sent to the help of the Carolinas. Arnold ascended the James River and landed about a thousand men at Westover, January 2, 1781. The Baron de Steuben was at this time in Virginia collecting recruits and training them, and there was a hurried gathering of the militia to meet the traitor. The Baron kept his small force to the south of the James, under the belief that Petersburg was the object of Arnold's attack, but, instead, he pushed on to Richmond, the greater portion of which he laid in ashes. Then he retreated to Westover and set out on another raid down the river. He was pursued by the militia, but fled up stream to Portsmouth, opposite Norfolk. The Americans tried hard to capture Arnold. Jefferson, governor of Virginia, offered five thousand guineas for his arrest, and Washington sent Lafayette with twelve hundred men to help catch the recreant. General Phillips arrived in March and superseded Arnold in command of the British troops. He took with him two thousand picked men,

**Arnold's Raid**

and plundered many plantations, sending hundreds of slaves to the West Indies. While the movements were converging against Arnold, Cornwallis himself arrived and assumed command. The earl held the traitor in such contempt that he sent him back to New York, where he was not compelled to meet or to speak to him.

Cornwallis caused a wholesale destruction of property, but fell



GENERAL NATHANIEL GREENE

back before the advance of Lafayette, Steuben, and Wayne, to Williamsburg. There orders reached him from Clinton in New York, to send three thousand of his troops thither for its protection against the combined French and American armies. Cornwallis was also directed to select some suitable place and fortify it. The earl was made very angry by the reception of this command, for he believed Clinton did it purposely to break up the active campaign he had

**Movements of Cornwallis**

begun in Virginia. Nevertheless, he had no choice but to obey. After sending away such a large detachment of his troops, he saw that his safety lay in selecting a good position and making it as strong as possible. At Yorktown, therefore, on a high and salubrious plain, he erected his fortified camp, throwing up military defences also at Gloucester, on the opposite side of the river. Here we will leave him for a time while we take a brief glance at military events occurring elsewhere.

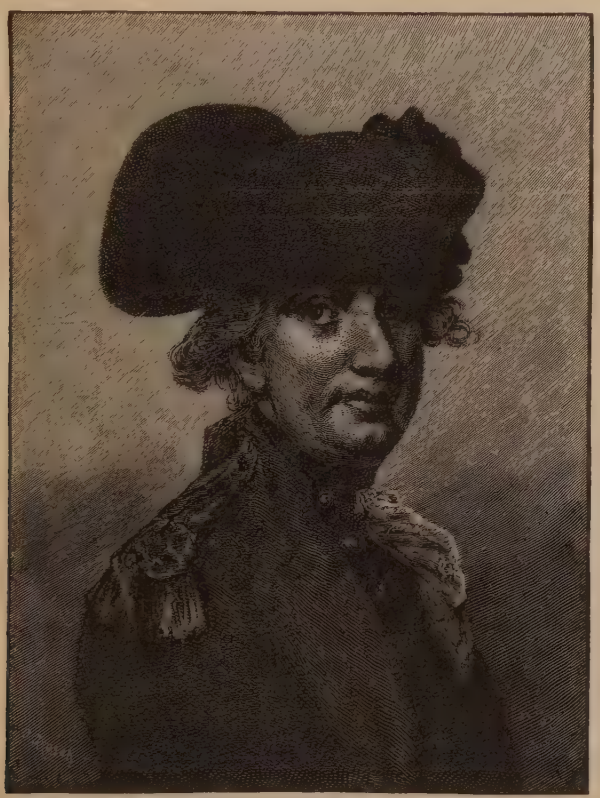
**Defeats and Successes in the South**

Lord Rawdon was at Camden with nine hundred men, strongly intrenched. To gain possession of the interior of South Carolina, General Greene saw that he must capture Camden and Ninety-Six. Giving up the pursuit of Cornwallis, he marched against Rawdon. His position was too strong to be attacked, and while Greene was waiting for reinforcements, Rawdon marched out and attacked him on the morning of April 25th. Greene was taken partly by surprise, but he fought bravely and with much skill, though compelled in the end to retreat, the loss on each side being about equal. Lee and Marion captured Wright's Bluff, on the Santee, the next day, thus cutting the communication of the enemy with Charleston, upon which they had to rely for supplies. This compelled Rawdon to leave Camden and retreat to Eutaw Springs.

Greene now laid siege to the strong post Ninety-Six, when, learning that reinforcements were on their way to strengthen the garrison, he attacked it, but was unsuccessful. The British, however, evacuated the place soon after, and the Americans took possession. Colonel Stewart, who had now superseded Lord Rawdon, was attacked by Greene at Eutaw Springs, September 8th. The battle began in the morning and quickly became general. The British were defeated, and the jubilant Americans began plundering their deserted camp. While they were feasting, the enemy assailed them and compelled them to retreat, but Stewart held the partisan troops around him in such fear that he withdrew towards Charleston. Greene sent detachments to pursue them a long way while he occupied the deserted field. This virtually ended Greene's campaign, which had been pushed with a skill that could not well have been surpassed. He had driven the invaders from the interior of North Carolina, South Carolina, and Georgia. Congress passed for him a vote of thanks, and presented him with a gold medal, together with a British standard captured during battle.

**Success of General Greene**

At this time the Count de Grasse was in command of the French fleet in the West Indies, and had given assurances to Washington that he would co-operate with the allied armies in a new movement against the British. Washington was at Dobbs Ferry planning a campaign against Clinton in New York, but the prospects for a time were



LORD CORNWALLIS

gloomy. Then they brightened; for on the 6th of July, the French forces from New England, under Rochambeau (*rō-shŏng-bō'*), arrived at Dobbs Ferry and joined the Americans. The two commanders held many conferences with leading members of Congress over the momentous campaign now impending. Learning that the French fleet had headed for the Chesapeake, Washington decided to abandon his intended campaign against New York, join Lafayette at the York

**Junction of the French and American Forces**

peninsula, and push Cornwallis to the wall. In his diary under date of August 14, 1781, Washington wrote:

**Plan of Washington**

"Matters having now come to a crisis, and a decided plan to be determined upon, I was obliged, from the shortness of Count de Grasse's promised stay on this coast, the apparent disinclination of their naval officers to force the harbor of New York, and the feeble compliance of the States with my requisition for men hitherto, and the little prospect of greater exertions in the future, to give up all idea of attacking New York, and instead thereof to move against Yorktown."

Washington, by many stratagems, confirmed Clinton in his belief that he intended to attack him in New York. It was not until September, a week after the allied armies had been on their march, that Clinton learned that, instead of the movement being a feint to cover a sudden descent upon the city, the armies were really marching against Cornwallis, far away in Virginia. He took some comfort in the fact that he had countermanded the order for Cornwallis to send troops to New York.

Good news came to Washington September 5th, when the allied armies had encamped at Chester, Pa. De Grasse with his ships and land troops had entered Chesapeake Bay. Three days later Washington, accompanied by Rochambeau and the Marquis de Chastellux, left Baltimore for a two days' visit to Mount Vernon, from which the commander-in-chief had been absent more than six years. The last division of the allied forces reached Williamsburg, September 25th, and preparations for the siege were at once begun. Cornwallis saw the danger closing round him, and urged Clinton to send him what aid he could, adding that, if he did not quickly do so, he must be prepared to hear the worst. On the 28th, the allied armies, twelve thousand in number, marched from Williamsburg to Yorktown, twelve miles distant. The British outposts were driven in, and possession taken of the abandoned positions. The tactical line of the co-operating allies was in the form of a horseshoe, two miles from the enemy's works. By the 30th, each line rested on the river and thus Yorktown was completely invested. The British, at Gloucester, were held powerless by the French dragoons, the Virginia militia, and a strong force of French marines. Tarleton once attempted a sortie with his cavalry, but they were routed, Tarleton narrowly escaping being made a prisoner. The siege was pressed

**Advance of the Allied Armies**

SIEGE OF YORKTOWN.

with concerted vigor, the allies pushing steadily forward, French and Americans together in friendly rivalry. On the afternoon of the 9th a cannonade was begun by the Americans on the right. It continued all night, and in the morning the French batteries on the left joined in the bombardment. That night several British vessels in the river were fired by being struck by red-hot shot.

"CORNWALLIS IS TAKEN"

**Hopeless Situation of Cornwallis**

The situation of Cornwallis grew more desperate every day and indeed almost every hour. His cavalry suffered so much because of lack of forage that many of the horses were killed and sent floating down the river. The French fleet were on the alert for reinforcements from Clinton, and the lines of the allied troops pressed closer and closer. An epidemic, meanwhile, broke out in the British camp, and two thousand of the seven thousand under Cornwallis were soon

in the hospital. The longing eyes cast southward saw no friendly sail whitening the waters, and the hopes of the British were well-nigh gone. Cornwallis, as a last recourse, determined to leave behind him his sick, his baggage, and all his impedimenta, cross the river at night to Gloucester, attack the French there, and then push northward by rapid marches through Pennsylvania and New Jersey to New York. A part of his army crossed, but a storm drove the boats down stream. It took until daylight to recover them, when the troops that had been taken over were brought back.

**Surrender of Cornwallis**

This misfortune ended all thought of resistance on the part of the British commander. He opened negotiations for surrender, and the terms of capitulation were signed October 18th. On the following afternoon, at two o'clock, the British army marched out of Yorktown, with colors cased, drums beating, and muskets at the shoulder. The French were drawn up on the left of the road, the Americans on the right, their lines extending more than a mile. With a delicacy characteristic of him, Washington ordered all mere spectators to keep away, and he suppressed every evidence of exultation. General O'Hara rode at the head of the British troops. When opposite Washington, on his white charger, he raised his hat, and apologized for the absence of Cornwallis, who, he said, was ill. Washington replied that to General Lincoln had been assigned the duty of receiving the submission of the garrison. It was he who had been compelled to surrender Charleston the previous year to Sir Henry Clinton. Lincoln conducted the troops to an open field and gave the order to "ground arms." Some of the men were so angry that they flung their muskets down with a violence that broke them—a bit of spleen perhaps justified by the humiliating occasion.*

*Lord Cornwallis [1738–1805], British general, Governor-General of India during the Mysore War, and Lord-Lieutenant of Ireland at the era of the union with Great Britain, was the son of Earl Cornwallis, whose wife was a daughter of Lord Townshend and niece of Sir Robert Walpole. He entered the army in 1756 and first saw active service at Minden and in other actions, under Ferdinand of Brunswick, the Prussian general, who commanded the allied troops against France in the Seven Years' War. On the death of his father he sat in the House of Lords as a Whig peer, and was opposed to coercive measures against the American colonies. In 1776 he came to America with reinforcements, and took a command first under Sir William Howe and afterwards under Sir Henry Clinton. His military talents were far superior to those of either of his chiefs, as is shown by his exploits in the various operations of the war, in his capture of Fort Lee and pursuit of Washington through New Jersey, in the victory on the Brandywine and the occupation of Philadelphia, and, later, in his defeat of Gates at Camden, and in the

COPYRIGHT 1898.

THE SURRENDER AT YORKTOWN

The total number of troops surrendered was about seven thousand, exclusive of two thousand sailors, nearly as many negroes, and fifteen hundred Tories. During the siege the enemy had lost five hundred and fifty in killed, wounded, and missing, that of the allies being about three hundred. With the prisoners were delivered about eight thousand muskets, seventy-five brass, one hundred and sixty iron cannon, and an immense quantity of ammunition and stores. The force which brought about this great victory included thirty-seven ships-of-the-line and seven thousand men, furnished by the French, and nine thousand troops, including five thousand five hundred regulars, provided by the Americans.

The decisive triumph secured the independence of America. On the succeeding day Washington expressed in general orders his great commendation of both armies. The next day was the Sabbath, and divine services were held throughout the camp. Lieutenant-Colonel Tighlman, one of Washington's aides, mounted a swift horse and set out with the glorious news for Philadelphia. He reached there at midnight, October 23d, and the joyful tidings quickly spread. The watchman on his rounds added to his usual cry "All's well!" the words "and Cornwallis is taken!" The old State House bell was set ringing, and nearly every one was on the streets, shaking hands, cheering, or perhaps shedding tears of joy. It was hardly light when cannon began booming. Congress met at an early hour, and the despatch from Washington was read. It was decided to go in a body, at two o'clock in the afternoon, to the Dutch Lutheran Church and there "return thanks to Almighty God for crowning the allied armies of the United States and France with victory." A few days

**The News in Philadelphia**

affair at Guilford Court-House. Hemmed in by De Grasse's French fleet and Washington's army at Yorktown—a position which he occupied by Clinton's orders and out of which his superior officer failed to relieve him—he was forced, as we have seen, to capitulate. On being released from his parole he was offered, on his return to England, the Governor-Generalship of India, but the appointment he did not accept until the offer was renewed in 1786. There he distinguished himself by many important services, civil and military. He took part in the operations against Tippoo Sahib, and was present with Sir Robert Abercromby at the storming of Seringapatam. For his services in India he was created Marquis. Returning to England in 1793, he was appointed Master of Ordnance, with a seat in the Cabinet; and, when the Irish rebellion of 1798 broke out, he was made viceroy. Under his régime, the Irish rising was humanely repressed and the Act of Union passed. In 1805, he was again nominated to the Governor-Generalship of India, where he died a few months after his arrival in the great dependency of the British Crown. Specially valuable is the "Cornwallis Correspondence," in relation alike to American, Irish, and East Indian affairs.

PERIOD III
ENGLAND AND FRANCE IN AMERICA 1758 TO 1783

later Congress voted the nation's thanks and fitting honors to Washington, Rochambeau, and De Grasse, and their officers, and resolved that a marble column should be erected at Yorktown to commemorate the event.

**The News in England**

The news reached England November 25th, and there, naturally enough, caused dismay and consternation. Lord North, the prime minister, flung up his arms and exclaimed: "O God, it is all over!" When the stubborn king had rallied from the shock, he declared that no efforts should be relaxed until the colonies were subdued. But the growing opposition to the war asserted itself in every quarter. Lord North retired from the ministry in March of the following year (1782), and the successors of himself and his associates were, happily, the friends of peace. King George stormed for a while, but in the end was compelled to yield. In May, Sir Guy Carleton arrived in New York, with proposals for reconciliation. These statements

**Peace**

will explain the inscription on the recently erected Dobbs Ferry monument, the corner-stone of which was laid June 14, 1894:

WASHINGTON'S HEADQUARTERS.

Here, August 14, 1781, Washington planned the
Yorktown campaign, which brought to
a triumphant end the War for
American Independence.
Here, May 6, 1783, Washington and Sir Guy
Carleton arranged for the evacuation of
American soil by the British.
And opposite this point, May 8, 1783, a British
sloop of war fired 17 guns in honor of the
American Commander-in-Chief, the
first salute by Great Britain
to the United States
of America.

WASHINGTON
ROCHAMBEAU

Erected
June 14, 1894,
by the
New York State Society
Sons of the American Revolution.

In relating the closing events of the war, we must not forget the further part taken by our gallant little navy. We stated in our account of Paul Jones that the capture of the *Serapis* was the last ser-

vice which he rendered to our country. From this it should not be supposed that he lost his interest in the struggle, or was not as eager as ever to strike his telling blows for the cause of American independence. He sailed from France in September, 1780, in command of the 20-gun ship *Ariel*, lent him by the king. She, however, proved unseaworthy, and was so wrenched in a storm that he had to work his way back to port, from which he sailed in December, 1780. Early in January he began an action with an English ship, which he compelled to strike her colors, but she effected her escape in the darkness and confusion. Jones was next made commander of the 74-gun ship *America*, but the war ended before she was ready for sea.

**The Fighting on the Sea**

In February, 1781, the *Alliance* left Boston for France, and on the outward voyage captured the privateer *Alert*. She sailed from L'Orient March 31st, accompanied by the French 40-gun letter of marque, *Marquis de la Fayette*. Two days later, they together captured the English 26-gun privateer *Mars*, and the *Minerva*, of ten guns. Then the *Alliance* continued her cruise alone. While drawing near two sails on the 28th of May, the wind fell to that extent that the *Alliance* lost her steerage way, but the smaller vessels, aided by sweeps, took a favorable position off the frigate's stern and quarter and opened fire. For an hour Captain Barry was obliged to hold this intolerable position, receiving the broadsides of the enemy and unable to return an effective fire. Barry was badly wounded and carried below. When on the point of surrendering, the breeze freshened, the *Alliance* ran between her two opponents, and she poured such tremendous broadsides into them that they struck. One of the prizes, while striving to run into Boston, was retaken, but the *Alliance* made port in safety.

**A Brilliant Victory**

A brilliant victory by a Pennsylvania State cruiser was gained as late as April, 1782. She was the *Hyder Ally*, a merchant ship, carrying sixteen 6-pounders, and a crew of one hundred and ten men under command of Lieut. Joshua Barney. Her duty was to convoy a fleet of merchantmen down to the Capes, after which she was to return to the State jurisdiction. Off Cape May on the 8th of April, while the merchantmen were waiting for a breeze, two English cruisers stood in towards them. Barney instantly signalled to the merchantmen to make sail up the bay while he covered their retreat. The first Englishman delivered a broadside at the *Hyder Ally* and continued her pursuit of the convoy, without receiving a reply from the American.

THE HYDER ALLY AND THE GENERAL MONK

COPYRIGHT 1896.

FROM THE ORIGINAL PAINTING BY WARREN SHEPPARD

who was waiting for the second vessel, the 20-gun sloop-of-war *General Monk*. When directly opposite, the *Hyder Ally* delivered a broadside, whereupon the *General Monk* put about with the intention of boarding, perceiving which Lieutenant Barney told his man at the wheel, when he received an order from him to do exactly the reverse of the command given him. At the moment the ships were about to foul, Barney shouted: "Hard port your helm, or you will run afoul of us!" The wheelman instantly turned the wheel hard to the starboard and brought the Englishman's jibboom afoul of their fore-rigging, the enemy, who had heard the command as it was intended he should, having no suspicion of what was really intended. As a consequence, he was instantly exposed to a raking fire from the whole American broadside, which was so destructive that the *General Monk* was speedily forced to surrender. Then Barney rejoined his convoy before another English ship could come within range.

This American victory was the more striking when all the facts are remembered. Their comparative force and estimated loss, as given by Maclay, were as follows:

| | Guns. | Lbs. | Crew. | Killed. | Wounded. | Total. |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Hyder Ally | 16 | 96 | 110 | 4 | 11 | 15 |
| General Monk | 20 | 180 | 136 | 20 | 33 | 53 |

Time of engagement, 30 minutes.

**Losses of the Patriots during the Revolution**

During the Revolution, 542 seamen of the regular navy were killed in battle, while considerably more were lost in the privateers which played so active a part in the struggle. Of the 542 killed, 311 perished when the United States 28-gun frigate *Randolph*, Captain Nicholas Biddle, was blown up by a shot from the *Yarmouth*, March 7, 1778. About the same number of soldiers were slain in the land battles, but this estimate does not include the 9,500 Americans who died in the British prison-ships in Wallabout Bay. Besides the Americans, 1,500 French sailors, who had been captured near our coast, thus died. The total number of Americans who lost their lives in the Revolutionary War was, approximately, 12,000. The total number of Continental vessels lost during the struggle by capture, wreck, and other casualty, was 24, carrying 470 guns. The loss of the British was 102 war vessels, carrying 2,622 guns, and the total number captured by American cruisers, privateers, or private enterprise, was in the neighborhood of 800.

**Financial Cost of the Revolution**

The financial cost of the Revolution cannot be exactly given. That of the United States has been estimated at 135 millions in specie. The debt of Great Britain was increased during the war over 600 million dollars. Probably at no time did the British forces in this county exceed 40,000 men. Our own armies were mainly made up of militia and minute-men, whose terms of service, as a rule, were brief.

Throughout the struggle there was naturally much resentment against the Tories. Most of the States had passed laws to confiscate the estates of persons who fought on the side of the enemy. Many of the Tories, therefore, left the country with the British troops, those from the North going to Canada and Nova Scotia, and those from the South to the West Indies. Years after, when the angry feelings were soothed, numbers came back and settled in their old homes.

More than a hundred years have now passed since Great Britain acknowledged the independence of the United States, and the question may to-day be asked: Can we not afford to do justice to the men who were known as Loyalists, or Tories, during that long and desperate struggle? Were they all scoundrels and traitors to be thought and spoken of with detestation? Probably no name has been held up to school-children as so utterly abhorrent as that of "Tory." They have been taught in their histories and readers, as well as in speeches and orations, that the one being to be scorned above all others was he who being born in this country took sides with England in the war for liberty. To some extent this feeling is natural and justifiable. Prof. Moses Coit Tyler, of Cornell University, himself a descendant of a patriot family and a gentleman of high culture, has lately published a thoughtful article on the subject in the *American Historical Review*. Quoting John Adams, he shows that New York and Pennsylvania were so evenly divided in sentiment, that if they had not been kept in line by New England on the north and by Virginia on the south, "they would have joined the British." The two parties were about equal in North Carolina; while in South Carolina the Tories were the more numerous. Georgia, as we have shown, virtually swung back to the Crown, to be regained later, but the people were about to take it out of the confederation when the decisive victory of Yorktown occurred. Lecky, the English historian, who approved the separation of the colonies from the mother-country, says

**The Tories**

that the Revolution "was the work of an energetic minority who succeeded in committing an undecided and fluctuating majority to courses for which they had little love, and leading them step by step to a position from which it was impossible to recede." John Adams, one of the most ardent of patriots, asserted that one-third of the people of the thirteen States were opposed to the Revolution from its opening to its close. The Loyalists yearned for a stable govern-

WASHINGTON'S PATRIOTISM

ment and believed that it would be best obtained under British rule. Among the latter were scholars, church-members, and affectionate fathers. Of the three hundred and ten Loyalists banished by Massachusetts alone at the close of the Revolution, many of them to meet unmurmuringly great hardships in the wildernesses of Canada, more than one-fifth were graduates of Harvard College. It should be remembered, too, that the leaders in the revolt hoped at first not for separation, but for some means of compelling England to show them

more justice and consideration. Had she done this, the Declaration of Independence, as we have stated, would have been deferred many years, and probably would never have been penned at all, since separation was sure to come, but it might better have been a peaceful and an amicable one. Yet with such vast odds against them, how much more glorious were the hardships, the sufferings, and the triumphs of the patriots under Washington and the other leaders of the young nation! That America was to be free was "writ in the book of fate."

The embers of war burned for a long time after the surrender of Yorktown. Savannah was not evacuated until July 11, 1782, and Charleston not until the 14th of the following December. At Versailles, in November, 1782, the independence of the United States was acknowledged in a provisional treaty. John Oswald was commissioner for England, while John Adams, Benjamin Franklin, John Jay, and Henry Laurens represented the United States. On the 17th of April, eight years, lacking two days, after the battle of Lexington, Washington was ordered to proclaim a cessation of hostilities and to disband the army. The final treaty was signed at Paris, September 3, 1783, and the last British troops on our soil sailed from New York on the 25th of November.

**Final Events of the War**

The lofty patriotism of Washington never shone with more splendor than in the closing days of the great struggle for independence. The country was in a deplorable condition. Commerce, trade, manufactures, and almost all kinds of business were paralyzed and all but ruined. The soldiers, believing that they were about to be disbanded and sent in many instances to desolated homes without pay, were on the verge of open revolt. They petitioned Congress, but the treasury was empty. They turned to Washington and invited him to become king, believing that in a monarchy lay their chief hope. He, however, spurned the offer. "If I am not deceived," said he, "in the knowledge of myself, you could not have found a person to whom your schemes could be more disagreeable." He begged them not to stain their splendid services by any rash proceeding. His great influence prevailed both with the army and with Congress, and the trouble was at length adjusted.

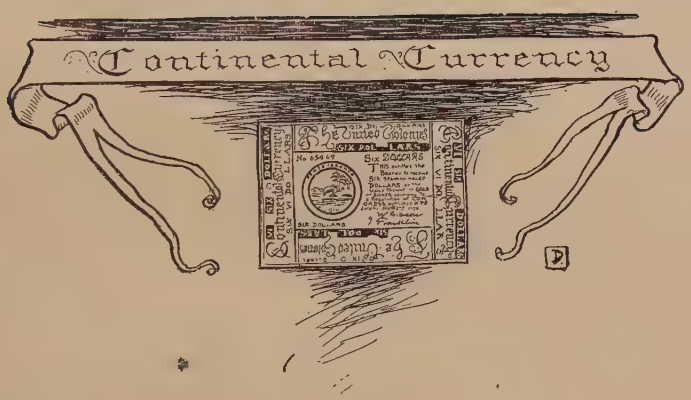
**Washington's Patriotism**

Washington bade farewell to his army in a touching address and set out for his home at Mount Vernon. Stopping at Annapolis, he on the 23d of December resigned his commission to Congress.

WASHINGTON'S FAREWELL TO HIS OFFICERS.

"You retire from the theatre of action," said the president of Congress, upon receiving the commission, "with the blessings of your fellow-citizens; but the glory of your virtues will not terminate with your military command; it will continue to animate remotest ages."

37



Y0-BNH-024